



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

TX 973.1 .A547a  
Anderson, John Jacob,  
New grammar school history of the United

Stanford University Libraries



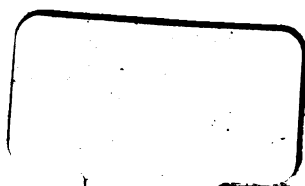
3 6105 04934 0503

HISTORICAL SERIES

NEW GRAMMAR SCHOOLS

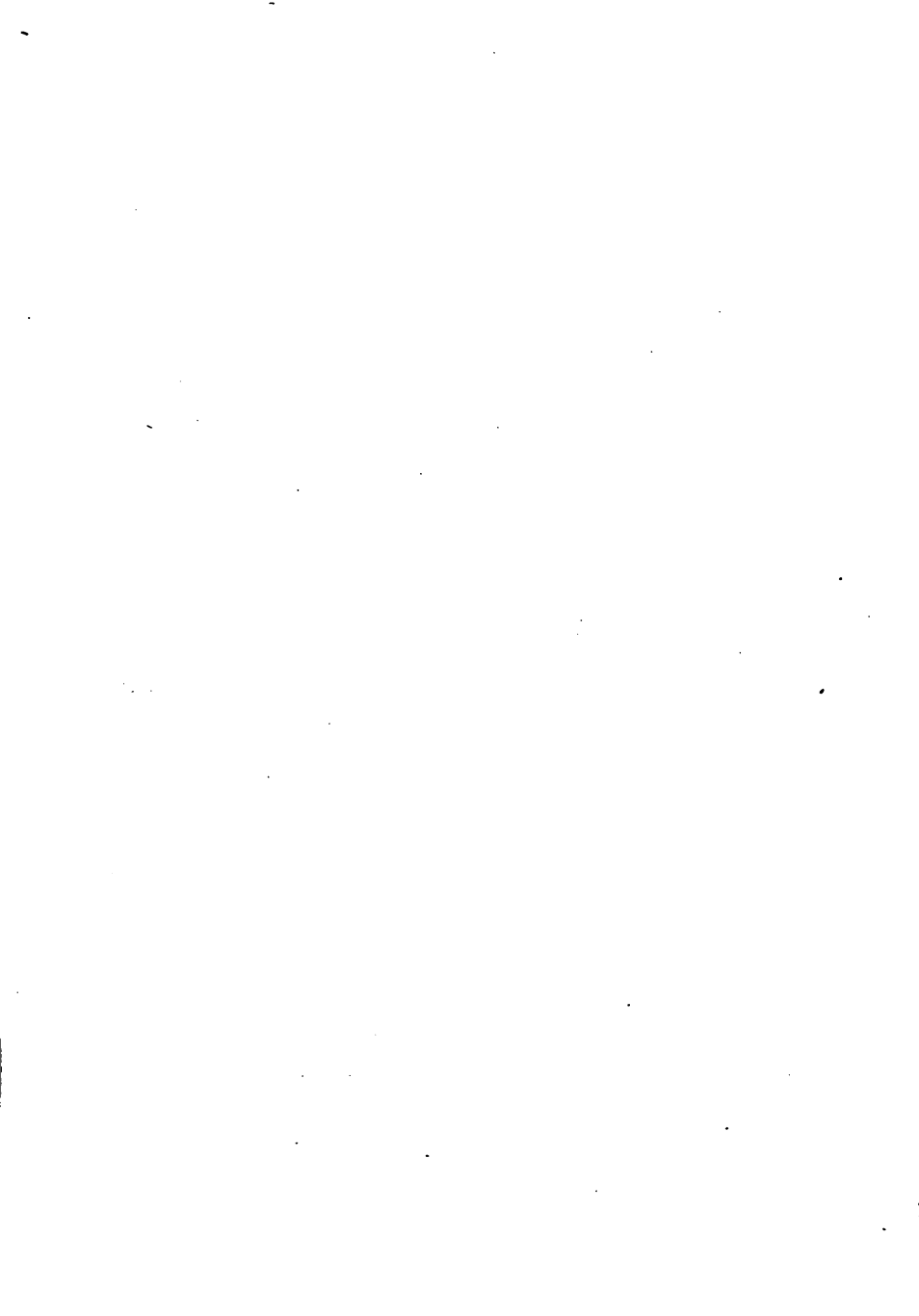


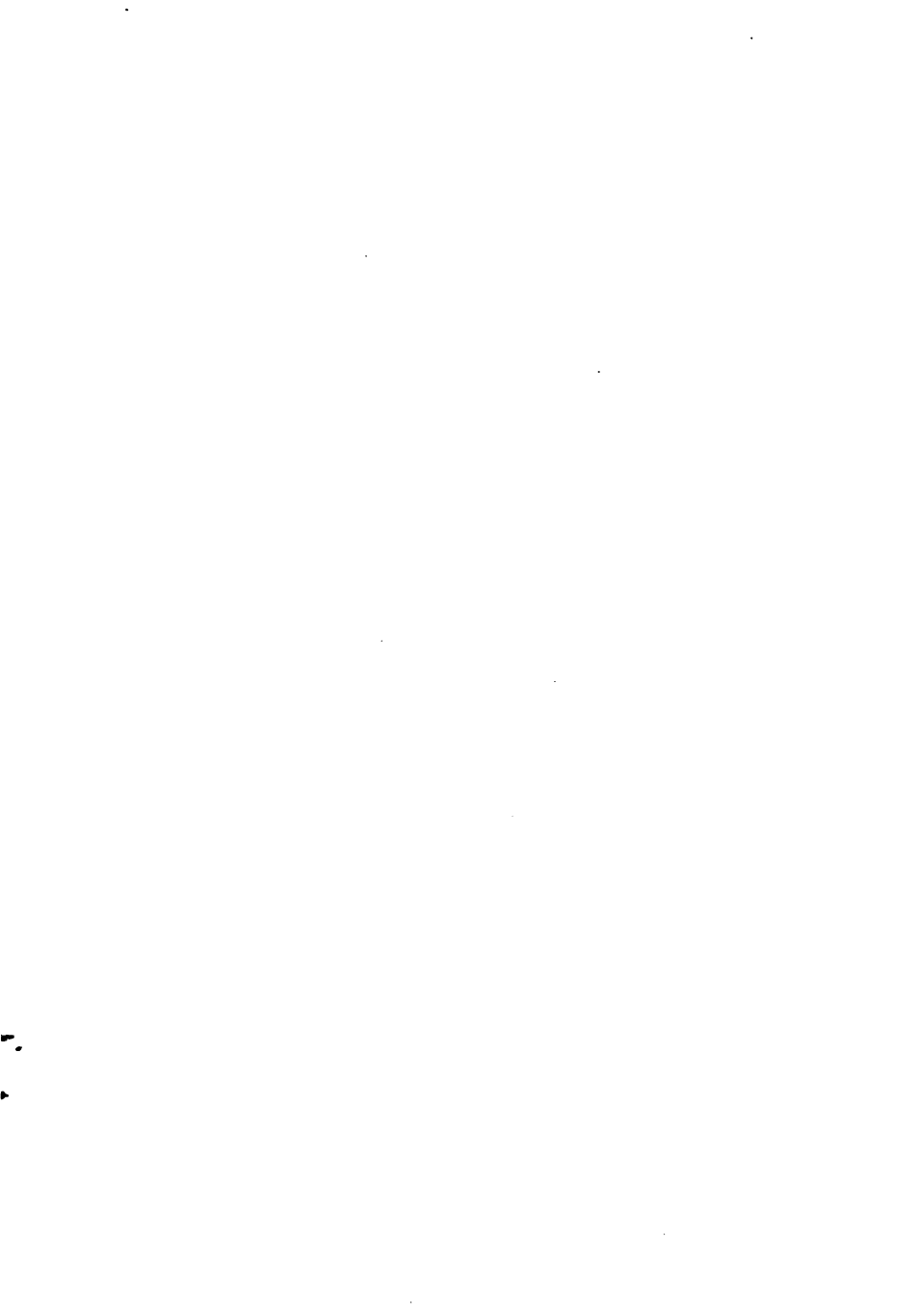
• UNITED STATES •  
HISTORY



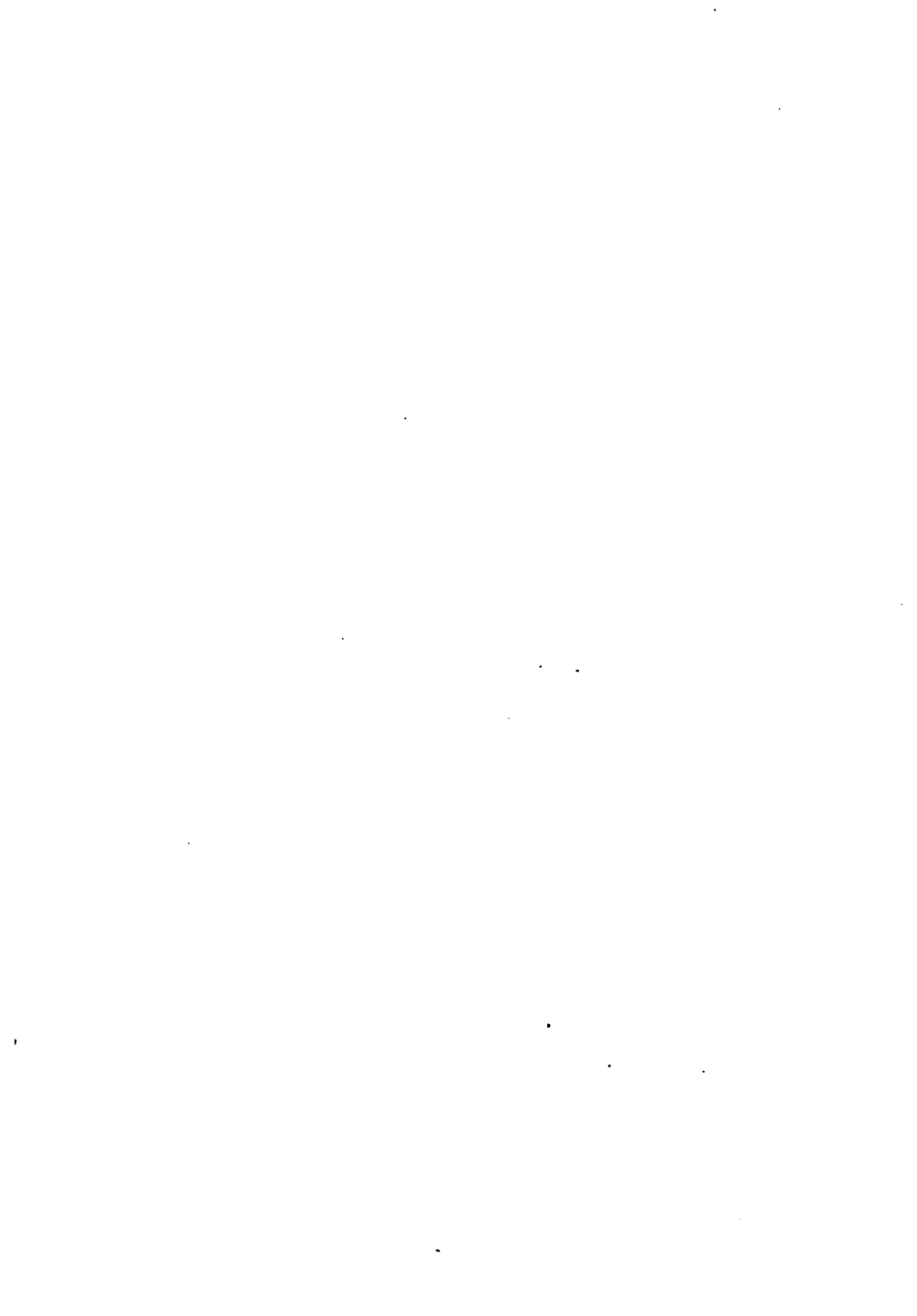


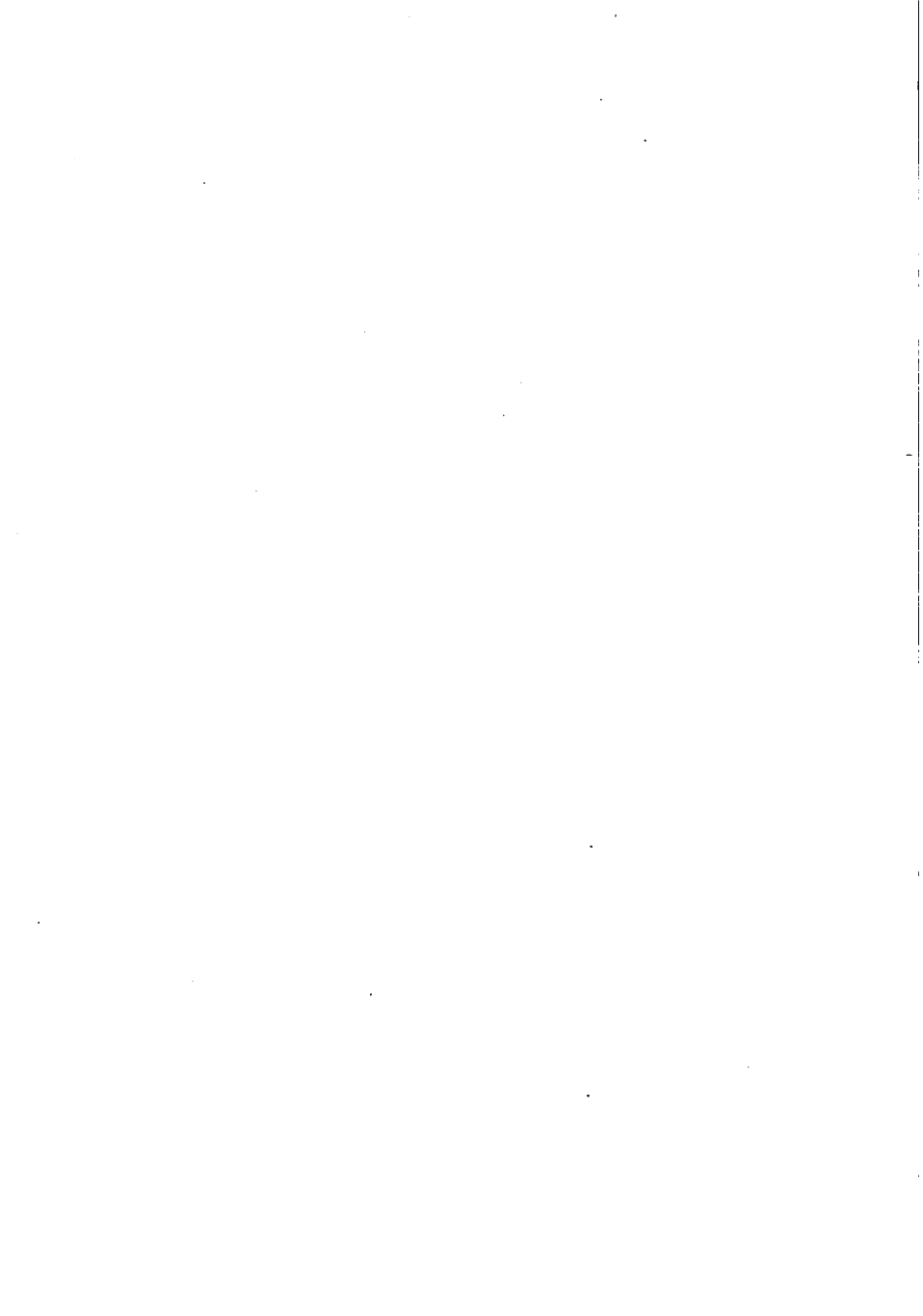
















THE ADOPTION OF THE CONSTITUTION BY THE CONVENTION, SEPTEMBER 17, 1787.

*From Painting by Skarns after Original Portraits.*

DEPARTMENT OF EDUCATION  
LELAND STANFORD JUNIOR UNIVERSITY  
NEW

# GRAMMAR SCHOOL HISTORY

OF THE

## UNITED STATES,

TO WHICH ARE ADDED

THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE AND THE  
CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES,

WITH

NOTES, QUESTIONS, AND EXPLANATIONS.

---

FULLY ILLUSTRATED WITH MAPS, PORTRAITS, AND VIEWS.

---

BY

JOHN J. ANDERSON, PH.D.,

AUTHOR OF A "POPULAR SCHOOL HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES," A NEW "MANUAL  
OF GENERAL HISTORY," A "HISTORY OF ENGLAND," A "HISTORY OF FRANCE,"  
"THE HISTORICAL READER," "THE UNITED STATES READER,"  
ETC., ETC.

---

NEW YORK

MAYNARD, MERRILL, & Co., PUBLISHERS

29, 31 & 33 EAST 19TH STREET

1898



610046

# ANDERSON'S HISTORICAL SERIES.

**A Junior Class History of the United States.** Illustrated with hundreds of portraits, views, maps, etc. 306 pages. 16mo.

**A New Grammar School History of the United States.** Supplemented by maps, engravings, chronological summaries, tabulated analyses, review questions, appendix, etc. 380 pages. 12mo.

**A Grammar School History of the United States.** Annotated; and illustrated with numerous portraits and views, and with more than forty maps, many of which are colored. 340 pages. 16mo.

**A Pictorial School History of the United States.** Fully illustrated with maps, portraits, vignettes, etc. 439 pages. 12mo.

**A Popular School History of the United States,** in which are inserted, as a part of the narrative, selections from the writings of eminent American historians, and other American writers of note. Fully illustrated with maps, colored and plain; portraits, views, etc. 381 pages. 12mo.

**A Manual of General History.** Illustrated with numerous engravings and with beautifully colored maps showing the changes in the political divisions of the world, and giving the location of important places. 500 pages. 12mo.

**A New Manual of General History,** with particular attention to Ancient and Modern Civilization. With numerous engravings and colored maps. 685 pages. 12mo. Also, in two parts. Part I. ANCIENT HISTORY: 300 pages. Part II. MODERN HISTORY: 385 pages.

**A School History of England.** Illustrated with numerous engravings and with colored maps showing the geographical changes in the country at different periods. 378 pages. 12mo.

**A Short Course in English History.** With numerous engravings and maps. 215 pages. 12mo.

**A School History of France.** Illustrated with numerous engravings, colored and uncolored maps. 373 pages. 12mo.

**A History of Rome.** Amply illustrated with maps, plans, and engravings. 554 pages. By R. F. LEIGHTON, Ph.D. (Lips.).

**A School History of Greece.** In preparation.

**Anderson's Bloss's Ancient History.** Illustrated with engravings, colored maps, and a chart. 445 pages. 12mo.

**The Historical Reader,** embracing selections in prose and verse, from standard writers of Ancient and Modern History; with a Vocabulary of Difficult Words, and Biographical and Geographical Indexes. 544 pages. 12mo.

**The United States Reader,** embracing selections from eminent American historians, orators, statesmen, and poets, with explanatory observations, notes, etc. Arranged so as to form a Class-manual of United States History. Illustrated with colored historical maps. 436 pages. 12mo.

MAYNARD, MERRILL, & CO.,

29, 31 & 33 EAST 19TH STREET.

*Copyright, 1889, 1898, by John J. Anderson.*

## PREFACE.

---

ALTHOUGH the success of the Grammar School History of the United States during the last twenty years has been unparalleled, the publishers, in order to meet the demands of the present time, have induced the author to prepare the book here offered to the public.

In examining the plan of this work, it will be observed that so much of the history as belongs to the colonial period is presented in chronological order and as related to the different English reigns. This departure from the usual arrangement seems to possess many advantages. Pupils studying the history of each colony without reference to contemporaneous circumstances and events are apt to receive the impression that the narrative covers a greater length of time than is actually the case. The events, too, in their various relations, are not clearly understood ; since their connection with other events as causes or consequences, though perhaps clearly observed by the pupil in the history of one colony, becomes obscure, or is lost sight of entirely, in the history of other colonies, owing to the different circumstances with which they are connected. The general thread of the narrative is thus broken in the mind of the pupil.

A fuller treatment has been given to the earlier than to the more recent history of our country, because, with but few exceptions, the events of the former are generally of greater interest and importance ; and, besides, having passed so far into history, they may be more readily studied without prejudice, and with a better idea of their true value and relation.

In the preparation of this book, three special objects have been constantly kept in view.

The first and most important of these is accuracy of statement. The works of Bancroft, Hildreth, Palfrey, Prescott, Sparks, Parkman, and other trustworthy historians, have been thoroughly read, and their statements and conclusions carefully compared. Whenever their accounts have been found to be at variance, the author has carried his investigations back to official reports, early letters and records, and other original sources.

The second object has been to make the narrative, though brief, well connected, symmetrical, and attractive. The truth being ever the paramount object, it has been the constant aim of the author to present it as forcibly and conspicuously as possible, and in language both simple and attractive.

The third object has been to make a *complete class-manual*. It is believed that the many helps offered in the maps, illustrations, topical questions, summaries, tabulated reviews, and appendix, will be greatly appreciated by practical teachers. History is now taught quite as widely as grammar or geography, though teachers differ considerably in their methods and requirements. While some secure the results which they require by teaching a mere outline in connection with the most important dates, others devote much time to what is understood as class-drill, believing that the subject cannot be taught definitely, thoroughly, and with permanent effect, in any other way. The latter make free use of chronological tables, maps, review outlines, and other expedients of the kind. A third class, discarding all such means, depend exclusively upon the narrative, their aim being not so much to prepare pupils for a critical examination as to implant in their minds a taste for history, as well as to induce them to read the best historical literature. The author is convinced that teachers of each class, whatever methods they may

prefer, will find this book adapted to their several views and preferences in every respect.

One of the author's earlier works has been objected to because it contained no questions at the foot of the pages. Objections may be made by some to this book for the very opposite reason; since, while some teachers find from experience that questions prepared for them are helpful, others prefer to use only those of their own construction. Such being the case, the author thinks there can be no good reason for excluding the questions, inasmuch as they may be used or entirely ignored, at the pleasure of the instructor.

Without any specification of other improvements in the work, which cannot fail to be obvious to the practical teacher in the use of it as a class-manual, the author submits it to the public, feeling confident that the more thorough and critical the examination given to it, the more assured and hearty will be the approval which it will receive.

---

#### SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS.

**Aim of the Teacher.**—A recitation or examination should have for its object, not merely to determine the amount of knowledge that has been acquired by the pupil, but also to ascertain the degree of clearness and intelligence with which it is comprehended. Thus, in a measure, it becomes an examination of the instructor as well as of the instructed. Facts, standing alone, without reference to other facts, are comparatively of little value. To show their relation or connection with one another, and thus their full value, and to do this in such a manner as to interest the learner, and create in his mind a love for the subject, should be the principal aim of the teacher. Pupils so taught may with confidence be subjected to the most rigid examination. Their answers will not be of the parrot kind. They will be alive with intelligence. This is especially requisite in history.

**Assigning the Lesson.**—Have the lesson read, care being taken that all the proper names are correctly pronounced. See that the location of all the places named is clearly known, and that the significance and relative importance of every fact mentioned are well understood. To secure

these results, make free use of large maps. When the lesson relates to early discoveries, or the war with Mexico, an outline map of North America should be kept before the class. In other cases the map of the United States should be used. Require the pupils to draw small sectional maps, showing the location of the places mentioned in the lesson. Read, or have read, extracts from the works of standard authors.

**The Recitation.**—The small maps prepared by the pupils should be carefully examined and criticised. In this duty the teacher may be aided by a system of examinations carried out by the pupils themselves, who will derive much benefit in many respects from the exercise. History and geography should be constantly associated. Without such association the facts must be vague, and will, consequently, soon slip from the mind. Why is it very difficult for some persons to remember the facts of history? Simply, because they do not locate them, or they place them so loosely as to impart no positiveness or distinctness to them. Let it be understood that no lesson is thoroughly learned that does not include in the acquisition a clear knowledge of the location of every place mentioned. Do not depend entirely, if to any great extent, upon set questions, and encourage your scholars to ask questions.

**The Review.**—This should be by topics, or occasionally by epochs. Topics are made up of facts or events, and their consequences, names, dates, and locations. All these should have been well learned in previous lessons. We then come to the time when the dates that occur in the lesson should have special attention. Take one of these as a turning-point and see how many minor events can be made to lead to it as cause-events, and how many may be made to lead from it as effect-events. The chronological tables in this book contain all the important events in the history of our country that pupils in our schools should be required to learn. If the examinations conducted by our superintendents and committees usually required fewer dates, these tables would contain a smaller number.

The author has no hesitation in saying that teachers who use this book intelligently and persistently adhere to its help-forms; its map exercises; review outlines; chronological summaries; geographical, biographical, and historical review topics, and its tabulated reviews, will be tolerably sure to achieve complete success, in not only storing, but also in disciplining the minds of their pupils, as well as in imparting a permanent taste for historical study.

# CONTENTS.

---

## SECTION I.—DISCOVERIES AND EXPLORATIONS.

First Inhabitants of America (11); The Indians (18); First Discovery of America (16); Discoveries and Explorations by the Northmen (16); by Columbus (20); by the Cabots (28); by De Leon (29); by Balboa (31); by Drake (33); by De Soto (35); by Marquette (39); by La Salle (42).

## SECTION II.—COLONIAL PERIOD.

First Attempts at Settlement (45); Florida (47); Acadia (51); Virginia (52, 86); New Netherland (New York, New Jersey, and Delaware (60, 88); New England (65, 84, 97); Maryland (81); New York and New Jersey (88); North and South Carolina (91); Pennsylvania and Delaware (93); Georgia (103); Claims to Territory (106); French and Indian War (106); What the Colonists said and did (119).

## SECTION III.—REVOLUTIONARY PERIOD.

Causes of the War (141-151); First Continental Congress (151); Lexington and Concord (152); Second Continental Congress (157); Declaration of Independence (161); Treason of Arnold (192); Surrender of Burgoyne (179); Surrender of Cornwallis (198); Adoption of the Constitution (205).

## SECTION IV.—CONSTITUTIONAL PERIOD. PART I.

Administrations of Washington (213), John Adams (225), Jefferson (231), Madison (240), Monroe (260), John Quincy Adams (265), Jackson (268), Van Buren (271), Harrison (272), Tyler (273), Polk (275), Taylor (282), Fillmore (283), Pierce (285).

## SECTION V.—CONSTITUTIONAL PERIOD. PART II.

Administrations of Buchanan (295), Lincoln (300), Johnson (327), Grant (329), Hayes (336), Garfield (339), Arthur (340), Cleveland (340), Benjamin Harrison (343), other Presidents (351- ).

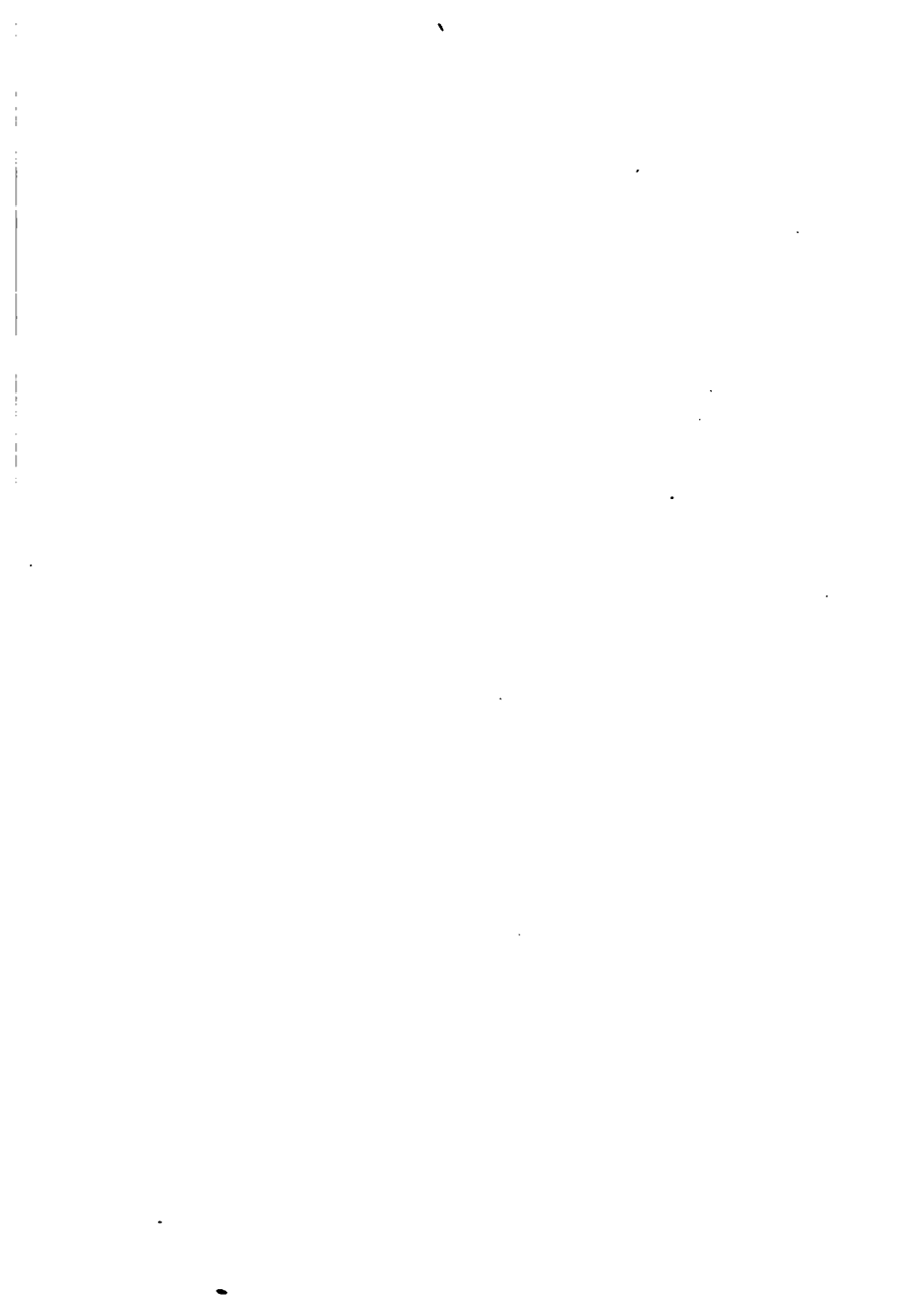
---

## APPENDIX.

The Declaration of Independence (1); The Constitution of the United States (6); The States, the Origin of their Names, and their Pet Names (34); The Presidents and Vice-Presidents (38, 39); Acquisition of Territory (40); Notes (41).

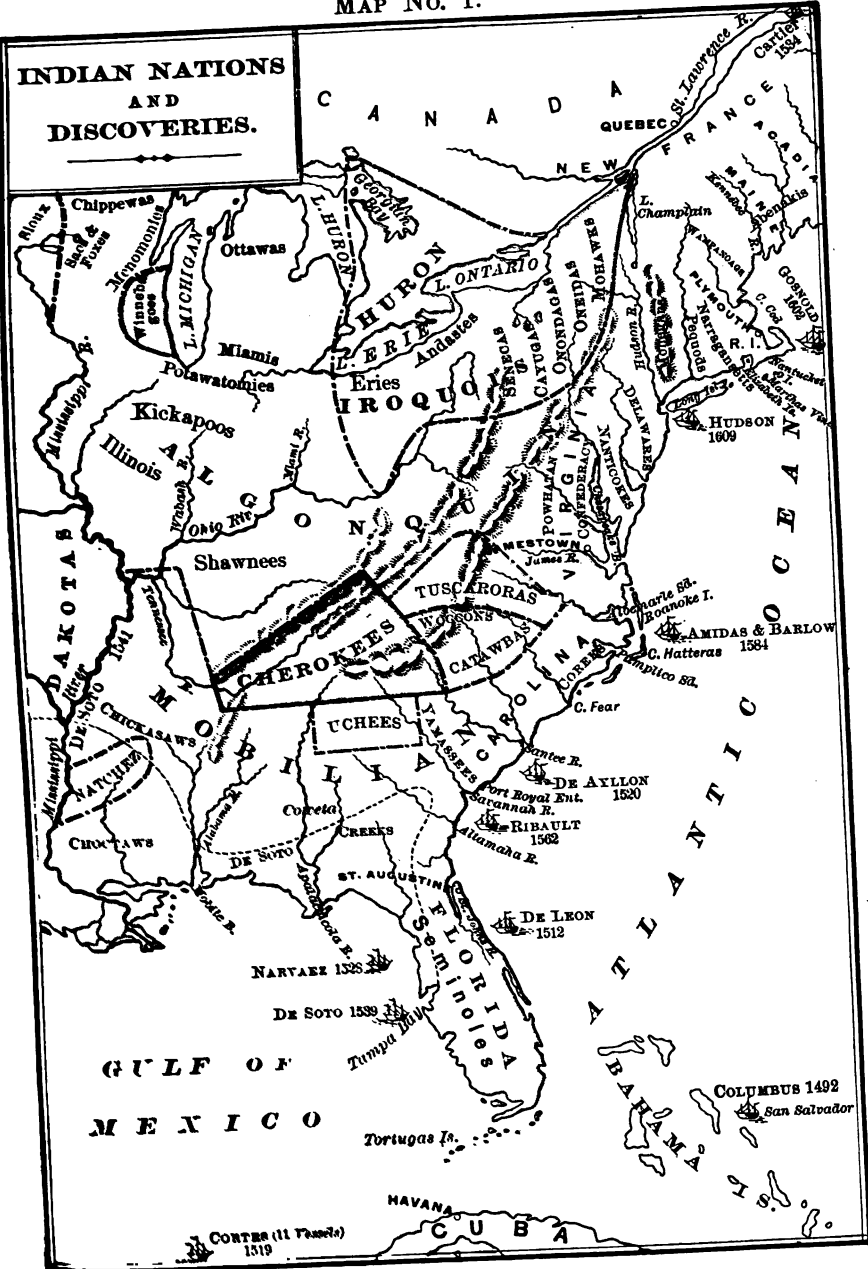
# LIST OF MAPS.

	PAGE
1. Indian nations and discoveries.....	Facing 11
2. French and Indian War and the Revolution.....	" 45
3. Jamestown and Chesapeake Bay.....	53
4. Massachusetts and Rhode Island.....	69
5. Portsmouth, N. H., and its vicinity.....	72
6. Connecticut and Long Island.....	75
7. New Jersey and part of Pennsylvania.....	90
8. North and South Carolina and Georgia.....	92
9. Maine, New Brunswick, and Nova Scotia.....	112
10. Territorial claims of the United States as based on royal grants.	
	Facing 141
11. Boston and its vicinity.....	156
12. Sorel or Richelieu River and Montreal.....	159
13. New York Bay, New York, and Brooklyn.....	164
14. Trenton, Princeton, and Monmouth.....	166
15. The Hudson River and Lake Champlain.....	174, 175
16. The Mohawk River, Oriskany, and Fort Schuyler.....	176
17. New London, Fort Trumbull, and Fort Griswold.....	198
18. Original territory of the United States.....	Facing 213
19. Detroit and western part of Lake Erie.....	250
20. Alabama and adjacent country.....	251
21. Lake Erie and Lake Ontario connected by Niagara River.....	252
22. Region west of Chesapeake Bay.....	254
23. Part of the Southern States.....	Facing 263
24. Mississippi and Alabama as ceded to them.....	263
25. Taylor's campaign in Mexico.....	277
26. Scott's campaign in Mexico.....	278
27. San Francisco and its vicinity.....	283
28. Salt Lake City and its vicinity.....	285
29. Formation of States from the acquired territory west of the Mis-	
sissippi River.....	Facing 295
30. Charleston, S. C., and its harbor.....	299
31. Part of Maryland and Virginia.....	Facing 311
32. Chattanooga and its vicinity.....	318
33. Mobile and Mobile Bay.....	323
34. Savannah and Fort McAllister.....	324
35. Part of Oregon and Washington Territory.....	330
36. Territorial growth of the United States.....	Facing 333





# INDIAN NATIONS AND DISCOVERIES.



A NEW  
GRAMMAR SCHOOL HISTORY  
OF THE  
UNITED STATES.

---

SECTION I.

DISCOVERIES AND EXPLORATIONS.

1. THIS grand division of land on which we live, known as the Western Continent, has an extent of ten thousand miles. It stretches from the regions of the north, where snow and ice forever abound, to the rocky cape in the far south that lifts its head out of the waters of the Antarctic Ocean. Millions of homes are now dotting its plains and valleys, and millions of busy men and women are living upon it, but there was a time in the remote past when not a house or a human being was on the face of all this great continent. When and how did the first man get here? Did he come from China or Japan, from Europe or Africa? Did he come of his own free will, or was his boat or raft driven or wafted hither by storms and winds? These questions have been asked a great many times, but thus far nobody has been able to answer them.

First Inhabit- ants of America.
---------------------------------------

---

1. On what grand division of land do we live? What is its extent? Name its southern cape (see a map of South America). What is said of its remote condition as regards inhabitants? What questions are asked about that?

2. Very many years ago, just how many no one among all our learned men is able to tell, there was a people, or, to be more correct, there were several peoples that lived and prospered here. We know this from numerous remains of temples, bridges, and aqueducts, built by men more skilful than the first inhabitants of the continent of whom we have any clear knowledge. Many of the ancient structures were of stone, immense blocks of which were used. One of the temples in South America, a perfect circle in form, was of brick. Carved on some of the stones, particularly on those over door-ways, are figures of men and animals as well as of fanciful objects. On these stones are beautiful mouldings, cornices, and niches. High up on the mountain tops of Peru, where neither tree nor shrub can grow, are stone wall inclosures, thousands in number, which, according to the tradition among the Peruvians, are the remains of structures that were built "before the sun shone."

3. In our own country, the United States, the evidences of a former civilization seem almost as numerous, but they differ in kind from those of South America and Mexico. Instead of great ruins in which are beautiful blocks of cut stone, we have, as a rule, mounds of earth, or of earth and rough stone. These, found mostly in the valleys of the Ohio and Mississippi, are of various sizes and shapes. Some are round, some are square, others have the form of animals. We call the people who built them Mound Builders, but of this people we know nothing whatever, except what we learn from the mounds themselves. Perhaps we may think that the mounds were made by the ancestors of the people whom we call Indians. Learned men who have carefully studied the subject, deny this. They tell us that the mounds were constructed by a people who occupied the country long before the Indians or their forefathers came

---

2. What evidences of former civilization are there in South America ?

3. What are in our own country ? What is said of the Mound Builders ?

here ; and their decision seems to be supported by the character and habits of the Indians, as well as by other facts.\*

4. As a rule the house of the Indian was a poor affair. It was not made to last long, for its owner never meant to live in one place long. It was not built of brick or stone, but commonly of young trees, bent and

The Indians.



SCENE IN A PUEBLO VILLAGE. (FROM A PHOTOGRAPH TAKEN IN 1886.)

twisted together at their tops, and covered with mats, or bark, or buffalo skins. These houses, or lodges, or wig-

\* We ought to receive the statements about the Mound Builders with considerable caution. Lewis Cass, one of America's venerated statesmen, speaking of the mounds, said : " They were no doubt erected by the forefathers of the present Indians."

" To ascribe these remains to a mythical people of a different civilization, is to reject a simple and satisfactory explanation in favor of a conclusion that is far-fetched and incomplete, and that is neither science nor logic."—*Curr's Mounds of the Mississippi Valley*. (Read note 33, Appendix, p. 53.)

4. Describe the ordinary house of the Indian. The Pueblo house. Who was Coronado ? What did he see of the Pueblos ? Describe the picture.

wams, whatever we choose to call them, had no chimneys. The fire was made on the ground in the center of the house, and the smoke escaped through an opening in the top. About the year 1530, four Spaniards, survivors of an ill-fated expedition that had Narvaez (*nar-vah'-eth*) for its leader (§ 42), wandered into the region now known as New Mexico, and found the Pueblo (*pwā'-blo*) Indians living in houses built of stone, or of sun-dried brick to which has been given the name adobe. Ten years later, Coronado, another Spaniard, at the head of an expedition of three hundred men, passed through the same region. The Pueblos were then raising grain and vegetables; also cotton, which they spun, wove, and made into garments. Large remnants of the Pueblos, probably ten thousand in all, are at the present time occupying the houses built by their ancestors. The buildings are ranged in the form of a hollow square, or are on the brow of a high bluff or mountain terrace. Not one has a door-way or other opening in its first or lower story. Access can only be gained by means of a ladder. The village is called a *pueblo*.

5. The fierce Iroquois (*ē'-ro-quah*), so named by the French, occupying what we now call Central New York, built quite large habitations, which they called "long houses." These were covered with the bark of the oak or of other trees.\* From one of Francis Parkman's charming books, *The Discovery of the Great West*, we get an excellent idea of an Indian house seen three hundred years ago among the southern tribes near the western bank of the

---

\* "The Indians east of the Mississippi may be divided into three great families. The Iroquois, the Algonquin (*al-gon'-kin*), and the Mobillian, each speaking a language of its own, varied by numerous dialectic forms. To these families must be added a few stragglers from the great western race of the Dahcotah (Dakota), besides several distinct tribes of the south."—*Parkman's Conspiracy of Pontiac*.

---

5. Who were the Iroquois? What is said of their houses? What is said of a certain Indian house west of the Mississippi?

Mississippi. It was large enough to hold twenty families. Its construction was begun by planting in a circle a number of tall, straight trees, such as grow in swamps. Their tops were then bent inward, and lashed together. The whole structure was then covered with thatch, a hole being left in the top for the escape of the smoke. Twenty apartments, like stalls for horses, separated one from another by mat partitions, but open in front, were ranged in regular order around the inside. In these the families slept.

6. The Indian's weapons, beside the bow and arrow, were the wooden spear and the tomahawk. The latter was a stick two or three feet long, with a knob, or stone hatchet, or piece of deer's horn, fastened to its end. With these weapons the Indian went forth to fight. Hunting was his daily labor, but war, it may be said, was ever his master passion. In fact, the tribes were at strife with each other so much that it is a wonder there was a single Indian alive when the "pale faces" came to take possession of his country. In the colder region and near the ocean coast, the Indian was not quite so warlike. He hunted the deer, speared the salmon, captured the cod, and trapped the beaver. In some parts of the land, the obedient and ill-treated squaws cultivated small patches of ground. "Working with hoes of wood and bone, among charred stumps, they raised corn, beans, and pumpkins." \*

7. If we are not able to say when and how this continent received its first inhabitants, we are quite certain that there was a time when the people of the eastern continent had no

---

\* "In 1696, the invading army of Count Frontenac, Governor of Canada, found the maize fields of the Iroquois extending a league from their villages. In 1779, the troops of General Sullivan were filled with amazement at their abundant stores of corn, beans, and squashes, and at the old apple orchards which grew around their settlements."—*Parkman's Conspiracy of Pontiac*.

---

6. What is said of the Indian's weapons? Of war among the Indians? Of hunting? Of work done by the Indian women?

7. What theories have been advanced as to the first discovery of America?

knowledge whatever of this our western world. They did not then even suspect, as far as we know, that there was a second continent. The question then occurs: Who, among their adventurers, was the first to learn the great fact? Or, as we are in the habit of putting it, Who first discovered America? Did some unlucky vessel, as has been surmised, sailing out of the Mediterranean into the Atlantic, long before seamen had more than the sun and stars to tell them in what direction to steer their barks, encounter storms which drove it across the ocean to the strange shore? Not many years ago a book was published to prove that in the fifth century a party of monks wandered from the southwestern part of Asia to Japan, then sailed to the northern islands of the Pacific and crossed to America. Shall we believe another story—it has been told by more than one—of a Welsh prince, who, about the year 1170, discovered this continent, and seeing the land to be fertile, left a number of his party and returned to his own country? The tradition asserts that with ten ships, he sailed again for the new land, but was never afterward heard of.

8. Shall we believe the stories told by the Sa'-ga-men? The home of these story-tellers was in Norway, the people of which country, living so far north, were called Northmen, or Norsemen. A thousand years ago the Norsemen were a bold and hardy race. They built ships in which they made voyages to distant lands. They were the dread of all western Europe, for, being strong and fearless sailors, and fierce and daring soldiers, they made many conquests. By accident they discovered Iceland, one of their famous sea-rovers having been driven upon its coast by a storm (861). By a like accident, fifteen years later, they discovered Greenland. By a third accident, not unlike the others, they discovered the main land, the

First Discovery  
of  
America.

The  
Northmen's  
Discoveries.

8. Who were the Sagamen? The Norsemen? What is said of the discovery of Iceland? Greenland? Where are these lands? Where was Vinland supposed to be?

continent itself (1001). Soon afterward they made voyages to the continent, so it is related in their sagas, or legends. At a place, supposed to be in Massachusetts, which they called Vinland, they made a settlement, but were driven from it by the Indians.

9. This name, Vinland, figures largely in the stories told by the Sagamen. Its origin is given thus: A captain by the



NORMAN SHIPS OF THE ELEVENTH CENTURY.

name of Leif (*life*), meaning the Fortunate, was in command of the settlement. One day he missed his servant, a little German. Fearing that he might be killed by Indians or by

---

9. Relate Leif's adventure with his German servant.



wild animals, Leif went with a few men to search for him. Toward evening the servant was met as he was coming back. "He was smacking his lips and talking. For some time he would do nothing but laugh, and talk German. When they got him to talk Norse, he explained that to his great joy he had found vines and grapes in great abundance." He led them to the spot, and Leif thereupon named the country Vinland.\* (Read note 34, Appendix, p. 53.)

10. Iceland, called Snowland by its discoverers, soon gained quite a number of inhabitants, for the rule of Norway's king was so hard and oppressive that many of his chiefs, with their families, fled to it. Greenland, when first seen by the Norsemen, contained not a single human being. In the course of two centuries, so many Norwegians and Danes went to it that more than a hundred villages were formed within its borders. Strange to say, all these have disappeared. Not one of those old houses remains. Did an enemy, as has been asserted, sail to Greenland, and with fire and sword lay waste the country? Or was the destruction begun by the dreadful plague, known as the "black death," and completed by fierce winds, terrible colds, and deep snows?

11. This story is strange, the more so when we learn that it slumbered hundreds of years after its alleged events took place. All knowledge of Greenland and of the Norsemen's

---

\* An "old stone mill," used by the early English settlers of Rhode Island as a grist mill, and probably built by them for that purpose, was long a puzzle. Danish writers claimed that it was erected by Northmen. Its walls, still standing, and covered with moss and ivy, present a picturesque object. Newport's summer visitors look upon it, wonder, and speculate. "The first notice of it known to exist is in the will of Governor Arnold, of Newport, dated December 20, 1677. He therein directs his body to be buried at a certain spot 'being and lying in my land near the path from my dwelling house leading to my stone-built windmill!'"—*Pulfrey's History of New England*.

discoveries south of it was entirely forgotten. When Columbus, in 1492, launched boldly upon the Atlantic, he did not know that there was any continent other than the one on which he lived. He had never heard of another. What grand idea did he cherish? He firmly believed the earth to be round—not a common belief in his day—and on this opinion he built the theory that by sailing westward he would get to India. In other words, he believed that the shortest way from Europe to India was across the Atlantic.

Theory of Columbus.
---------------------------



CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS.

12. When the people of Europe spoke of India in those days they had no clear idea of what they were talking about. They had heard the marvelous story told by Marco Polo, a Venetian, who had been in the service of the Khan of Tartary, and had visited many of the cities in eastern Asia. They had also heard the stories of travelers who had been in southern Asia. All these stories represented the far-off regions to be rich in gold, silver, precious stones, spices, and other choice objects of commerce. It may be said that India in the fifteenth century, included the southeastern part of Asia, with the islands in its vicinity.

India.
--------

13. Only two cities of Europe, Genoa (*jen'-o-ah*) and Venice, had thus far carried on any commerce with India.

12. State what you can of Marco Polo. What constituted India?

13. Where is Genoa? (See school map.) Venice? What trade did the Venetians have with India? How was the trade carried on? How, between Genoa and India?

Merchants of Venice sent mirrors, and other things made of glass for which that city was celebrated. They also sent brass and iron articles in great variety. These were shipped across the Mediterranean to Egypt, thence were carried on the backs of camels to the Red Sea, and thence were taken by ships to India. Merchants of Genoa sent their goods to eastern ports of the Mediterranean, thence overland to the Caspian Sea, and thence by sea and land to their destination.

14. Columbus, as we have stated, proposed to reach India by going in exactly the opposite direction.\* The route around the southern point of Africa was not yet known. Columbus was poor, too poor to fit out ships for the great voyage he had projected. He asked the people of his native city, Genoa, to help him. They would not. His next application was to King John, of Portugal. John listened to all Columbus said, and then referred the matter to a body of learned men. They reported that the project was foolish. Then, in an evil hour, the king, influenced by bad men, consented to do a dishonorable thing. He secretly sent out a ship, with directions to its captain to sail westward according to the plan laid down by Columbus. After sailing several days and seeing nothing but water on every side, the captain lost courage and put back. The king had expected to reap glory. He was sadly disappointed. So affected was Columbus by this treachery, that, refusing to have any further dealing with the tricky

Columbus  
and his  
Theory.

\* He had made himself familiar with all that was then known of the science of geography, and had been on several voyages, the first when he was only fourteen years of age (Note, p. 27). Two hundred years before, voyages were guided by a magnetic needle balanced upon a piece of floating cork. Afterward an improved form of this contrivance, under the name of mariner's compass, came into use. With this and the astrolabe, Columbus could now venture upon the unknown ocean and lose sight of land (Note, next page).

14. Why did not Columbus go to India by sailing round the southern cape of Africa? What was done to give greater scope and certainty to navigation (Note, next page)? What help did that instrument render? To whom did Columbus apply for aid? What aid did he need? Of what dishonesty was King John guilty?

monarch, he speedily shook the dust of Portugal from his feet.\* To Henry VII., England's king, he sent his brother for aid; but the brother fell among thieves who stripped him of his raiment, in consequence of which he did not get quick access to Henry, and nothing came of the appeal.

15. It is recorded that "Columbus had to beg his way from court to court to offer to princes the discovery of a world." Genoa was appealed to again, then the appeal was made to Venice. Not a word of encouragement came from either. Columbus next tried Spain. His theory was examined by a council of men who were supposed to be very wise about geography and navigation. The theory and its author were ridiculed. Said one of the wise men: "Is there any one so foolish as to believe that there are people living on the other side of the earth with their feet opposite to ours, people who walk with their heels upward and their heads hanging down?" His idea was that the earth was flat like a plate.

16. Can we wonder that Columbus for a long time met with no success? During seven long years, while his theory and petition were before the Spanish court, he implored and waited until, at last, when all hope had fled, and he was in the very act of leaving the country to try his fortune in France, Isabella, the queen, sent a message desiring him to

\* "Impatient of the slowness with which his discoveries advanced along the coast of Africa, the king, John II., called in the aid of science to devise some means by which greater scope and certainty might be given to navigation (1486). The result was the application of the astrolabe to navigation, enabling the seaman, by the altitude of the sun, to ascertain his distance from the equator. It is impossible to describe the effect produced upon navigation by this invention. The mariner, now, instead of coasting the shore like the ancient navigators, and, if driven from the land, groping his way back in doubt and apprehension by the uncertain guidance of the stars, might venture boldly into unknown seas, confident of being able to trace his course by means of the compass and the astrolabe."—*Irving's Life of Columbus.*

---

15. Relate the trials of Columbus before the Spanish court.

16. What turn took place in his fortunes? Who was Isabella?

return to her. She gave him a cordial reception, and becoming interested in what he said, exclaimed : "I undertake the enterprise, and will pledge my jewels to raise the necessary funds!"

17. The sacrifice was not required. Most of the money needed was advanced from the public treasury. The balance

**Columbus's  
First Voyage  
to America.**

was furnished by a family of wealthy navigators. It was agreed, on the part of Ferdinand and Isabella, king and queen of Spain, that Columbus should have the title of Admiral and be viceroy over all



COLUMBUS WITH AN ASTROLABE IN HIS HAND.  
(FROM AN OLD ENGRAVING.)

the lands discovered by him. With three small vessels he set sail from the port of Palos (*pah'-los*), Spain (Aug. 3, 1492). We wonder at his temerity. With craft so small, not one of them larger than the ordinary river sloop of our day, and only one having a complete deck, he fearlessly put out upon the unknown ocean. Men thought him crazy. So confident, however, was he of success, and just as he had planned it, that he took with him, from his royal patrons, letters for the potent ruler of the East, the Grand Khan of Tartary. The great objects before him

17. What agreement was made with Spain's king and queen ? With how many vessels did Columbus start ? From what port ? When ? What did men think of him ? What evidence is given of his confidence ? What were his three objects ?

were glory and gold, but he was zealous to carry the Gospel to the heathen of distant lands.

18. In six days the three vessels reached the Canary Islands, where, one of them needing a new rudder, they were detained a month. Again they put to sea. Soon a mutinous spirit broke out among the sailors. They fully believed



CROUCHED AT HIS FEET BEGGING PARDON.\* (NOTE NEXT PAGE.)

that they were sailing to destruction. "We must go back," they said. Not seeing any sign of compliance with their demand, they talked of throwing the admiral into the sea. He pacified them at times with gentle words and promises of re-

18. Relate what occurred on board the ships. Where are the Canary Islands?

ward. At other times he was compelled to use the stern language of authority.

19. At length his perseverance was happily rewarded. As he looked out into the darkness of night, he saw a moving light. Next morning at dawn, Friday, October 12th, 1492, land was discovered.\* It was an island, one of the group we now call the Bahamas. Its inhabitants were seen running about and flocking to the shore. The vessels were anchored, and Columbus, clad in a rich dress of scarlet cloth and holding a royal standard in his hand, was ready to land. In small boats the admiral and most of his officers were rowed to the shore. Immediately all fell upon their knees, kissed the earth, and returned thanks to God. Rising, and drawing his sword, Columbus took formal possession of the island in the name of Ferdinand and Isabella, naming it San Salvador, which means Holy Saviour.

20. The natives had fled in terror, and hid themselves in the woods. Now, seeing that no attempt was made to pursue them, their terror abated. With awe they gradually approached their strange visitors, believing that they had come from the sky in the ships, which, they thought, were great birds, the sails being wings. They touched the beards of the Spaniards, and examined their hands and faces. Columbus gave them glass beads, bells, and other trinkets, with which they were greatly pleased. The sound of the bells was a wonder to them. They had nothing to offer in return except balls of cotton yarn, and a kind of thin cake, or bread, made of roots. A few had ornaments of gold hanging from their

---

\* "The feelings of the Spaniards burst forth in the most extravagant transports. They thronged around the admiral, some embracing him, others kissing his hands. Those who had been the most mutinous and turbulent during the voyage now crouched at his feet, begging pardon for all the trouble they had caused him, and promising the blindest obedience for the future."—*Irving*.

---

19. When was America discovered by Columbus? State the events of that day.

20. Give an account of the natives found on the island, and what they did.

noses. These they gladly exchanged for beads and bells; and pointing southward, indicated to the delighted gold-seekers that in that direction was the land from which the precious metal came.

21. Leaving San Salvador, Columbus discovered other islands, the largest being Cuba. Another large island he named Hispaniola, meaning Little Spain. It is the same island afterward known as San Domingo. Its present name is Hayti (*hā'-te*). Near it one of the vessels was wrecked, and from the broken parts a fort was built. Many of the men desiring to remain on the island, about forty were left; and early in January, 1493, Columbus departed for Spain. Great was the joy of Palos on the 15th of March, as the admiral's well-known vessel was seen to enter its harbor. All business was suspended, and the church bells sent forth gladsome peals.

22. Columbus did not tarry long at Palos. He was anxious to present himself before the king and queen. Everywhere, as he passed through the country, he was joyfully greeted as a conqueror. At court he was received with distinguished honors. In the presence of a brilliant assemblage of ladies and gentlemen, he related the story of his adventures, showed several of the copper-colored men whom he had brought with him, and, giving a glowing description of the lands he had visited, declared that they were rich in gold.

23. Ferdinand at once laid claim to all the newly discovered lands, and this act was sanctioned by the Pope, Alexander VI. Columbus made three more voyages, discovered other islands, and succeeded in reaching the main land of South America; but

Why the Indians were so called.
---------------------------------------

21. What other discoveries did Columbus make? State how Cuba and Hayti are situated. (See map of the West India Islands).

22. How was Columbus treated on his return to Spain?

23. How many voyages did he afterward make, and how was he deceived? How did the Indians get their name? What else is stated about names?



never for a moment did he have the least suspicion that these lands belonged to a New World. He believed that they were islands of India, and, so believing, he called the natives Indians. When, in after years, the mistake became known, these islands were called the West Indies, and those of Asia were known as the East Indies.\*

24. It is not pleasant to be told that Columbus was not always treated with the consideration due to his rank and merit. His success created enemies, and these while he was on his third voyage, influenced the king and queen to believe that he was treating the Spanish settlers in the new lands with great injustice. A person was consequently sent to inquire into the facts. This official, moved by bad motives, went beyond the instructions given to him. He made a prisoner of Columbus, and sent his captive home in irons. When the admiral arrived in Spain, and the people saw him with iron chains fastened to his arms, they were filled with indignation. The queen was no less indignant. She ordered the chains to be removed, and to the ill-treated man who had done so much for Spain, she extended a generous reception.

Injustice  
to  
Columbus.

25. Isabella, in fact, was Columbus's best friend. Her death, which occurred a few days after the completion of his fourth voyage, was a fatal blow to his fortunes. The selfish and ungrateful Ferdinand turned a deaf ear to the appeals of the sick, needy, and aged man who had laid a new empire at

---

\* The first voyage around the southern Cape of Africa to India was made by Portugal's great sea-captain, Vasco da Gama (*gah'-mah*), in 1497-8, after his king had long urged many navigators to the task. "The mariners regarded the cape with terror. As they approached it," said fiction, "a cloud rose, darkened the air, and then disclosed a monstrous giant. Vexed by the question, 'Who art thou?' the stupendous body harshly and mournfully replied: 'I am that great Stormy Cape hitherto hidden from mankind.'"—*Helps's Spanish Conquest*.

- 
24. What indignity befell Columbus? What is said of Isabella's conduct?  
25. Give the further history of Columbus. Of the disposition of his body.

his feet. Thus neglected, Columbus died in a town of Spain (1506). His body was placed in a convent, whence, after seven years, it was removed to a monastery in another town. Twenty-three years later it was taken across the Atlantic to Hispaniola. Here, surely, it will be permitted to rest forever! Not so. In 1796, nearly three hundred years after his death, it was conveyed with imposing ceremonies to the island of Cuba; and there, in the Cathedral of Havana, it still reposes. "A world is his monument."\*

26. We see that great honors were paid to the memory of Columbus, but do we not realize that in one respect great injustice has been done to it? Are we not ready to say that our continent should be called Columbus or Columbia? Poets and song-writers echo our answer. Witness our national song with its opening words: "Hail, Columbia! happy land!" Another song says: "Columbia, Columbia, to glory arise, the queen of the world, and child of the skies." Still another says:

"And ne'er shall the sons of Columbia be slaves,

While the earth bears a plant, or the sea rolls its waves."

27. How then does it happen that the New World is called America instead of Columbia? After the death of Isabella, Columbus employed certain persons to aid him in recovering his rights as viceroy over the lands discovered by him. One of these persons was an Italian, Amerigo Vespucci (*ah-mā-re'-go ves poot'-che*). This man was among the many, who, incited by the glowing stories of the riches of

---

\* We do not know when Columbus was born. Irving thinks it was "about the year 1435." The same uncertainty existed for a time respecting the exact place of his birth. He was born in Italy. Of so much we are certain; but after his fame began to spread, as many as half a dozen places in the sunny peninsula claimed him as a native. A committee, appointed by an Italian "Academy of Science and Letters," reported in favor of Genoa.

---

26. What injustice has been done to his memory?

27. State fully how this continent came to be called America.

the New World, had hastened across the ocean for a share of the treasure. More than once he went to the southern part of the continent; and more than once did he write of what he had seen and heard. One of his letters misled a German geographer to believe that its writer was entitled to more credit than belonged to him. So thinking, the German published a book, in which he proposed that the new land should be called America.\* Though printed books were in the hands of but few persons in those days, the suggestion soon met with general favor. The name America was used in conversation and letters, was put upon maps and into books, and so came to be the only one applied to the New World.

28. Taken in connection with its far-reaching consequences, the first voyage of Columbus across the Atlantic was the most important in the history of the world. What an excitement the news of it did produce in all parts of Europe! At once a spirit of adventure was aroused.† From England went John Cab'ot and his son Sebastian, who were fortunate in reaching the main land of North America, in 1497. This was the year before Columbus set foot upon South America. The Cabots explored the shores of Labrador, thinking that they

Discoveries  
by  
the Cabots.

\* "The book was printed in 1507. It appeared under an assumed name, but Humboldt proved that its author was Martin Waldseemüller. The Spaniards carefully avoided the use of the name America in their historical and official documents, in not one of which, anterior to the middle of the last century, can the word be found."—*Greenhow's Oregon and California*.

† "The eagerness to explore the wonderful secrets of the new hemisphere became so active that the principal cities of Spain were, in a manner, depopulated, as emigrants thronged to take their chances upon the deep. They listened with attentive ears to tales of Amazons; to stories of Patagonian giants; to flaming pictures of the *El Dorado* where the sands sparkled with gems, and golden pebbles, as large as birds' eggs, were dragged in nets out of the rivers."—*Prescott's Conquest of Peru*.

28. What is said of the first voyage of Columbus and its effects? Of the two voyages made by the Cabots? How were both deceived?

were on the coast of China. Next year Sebastian Cabot crossed the ocean again, and this time sailed along the coast from Newfoundland to Chesapeake Bay.\*

29. From Spain went a valiant soldier named Ponce de Leon (*pôn'-tha dā lā oan'*). Charmed with the beauty of Porto Rico, particularly with the opportunities the place afforded for gain, he asked to be appointed governor of the island. Ferdinand granted the request. Soon De Leon was involved in trouble with the natives, many of whom he reduced to slavery, just as Columbus had done, and just as the Spaniards continued to do many years longer. At length the king, wishing to make a show of justice to the family of Columbus, removed De Leon from office (§ 17).

De Leon and his Discoveries.
------------------------------------

30. Still the old soldier clung to his island home. One day a romantic story was whispered into his ear. An Indian told him that there was a remarkable land at the northwest, where gold could be found in great quantities, and where a wonderful fountain existed. Of the fountain, he said that every old person who bathed in it immediately became young again. This story was afterward told to De Leon by other Indians, for the simple people, one and all, believed it to be true. It was told so often, and with so much sincerity, that De Leon at last had faith in it. We wonder how a sane man of ordinary intelligence could give credence to a story so silly. Our wonder is greatly increased when we learn that

\* The Italians were very fond of boasting of the achievements of the Cabots, who, they claimed, were their countrymen, Italians like themselves. One of them being in England shortly after the return of the Cabots from America, wrote thus to his brother in Venice: "John Cabot is now here with his sons and his wife, who is also a Venetian. He is called the Great Admiral. Great honor is paid him. He dresses in silk, and these English run after him like insane people, so that he can enlist as many of them as he pleases, and a number of our own rogues beside."—*August 23, 1497.*

29. What office was given to De Leon, and why was he deprived of it?

30. What romantic story did De Leon believe? Who else believed it?

were many miles away. At the head of a party of his countrymen and a few Indians, he set out. Difficulties beset him at every step. He fought Indians who were not willing to have him pass through their country; and so hot was the weather that some of his men were prostrated and could go no further. Still he persevered. Through forests and up the mountain side he trudged, till, gaining the summit, he was rewarded with the sight of the promised water—the South Sea, as he called it, now called the Pacific Ocean. Falling upon his knees, he poured out his thanks to God. A large cross was constructed, and erected with solemn ceremony. This was to indicate that all that part of the world thenceforth belonged to Spain (1513).

**36.** To descend the mountains and reach the ocean took several days. With a banner in one hand and a sword in the other, Balboa waded into the water until it reached above his knees. Then, waving the banner, he proclaimed in a loud voice, that he took possession of the sea and all that it contained for the king of Spain. After numerous perilous adventures, during which much gold and many pearls were procured, the gold-seekers returned to Darien. Their fearless leader had many enemies. These sent false reports concerning him to Spain. He was deprived of his office. Being accused of setting up a government of his own, he was unfairly tried, unjustly pronounced guilty, and cruelly beheaded. Thus perished, in the prime and vigor of his life, one of the most worthy of the Spanish discoverers.

**37.** Balboa proved that the lands discovered by Columbus were no part of India. Further proof followed seven years later. Magellan, a Portuguese navigator, sailing in the service of Spain, crossed the Atlantic, sailed through the strait which ever since has borne his name, and entered the ocean

---

**36.** What next did Balboa do? Take your map of Central America and trace his wanderings on it.

**37.** When was the first voyage made around the world? Give an account of it.

which Balboa was the first to discover. Finding the water calm, or, as he described it, pacific, he called it the Pacific Ocean. Steering boldly for India, he came to groups of islands. While on one of the islands, accompanied by about fifty of his men, he was attacked by the natives and killed. With difficulty the survivors reached their ship. Its worthy captain, Cano (*kah'-no*), Magellan's successor, sailed away, and, continuing on the western course, passed around the southern end of Africa to the Atlantic, and thence to Spain. This was the first voyage around the world (1522).

**First Voyage  
around  
the World.**

38. The second was made by an Englishman named Francis Drake. He reached the Pacific by the same route Magellan had taken more than fifty years before. Then he began a career of plunder which, for boldness and success, has never been surpassed. Spanish ships and Spanish settlements on the west coast of America were pillaged in the most heartless manner. Then, fearing that a force of the enraged people whom he had robbed was waiting at the Strait of Magellan to capture him on his return, Drake steered northward. He hoped to find an unknown passage to the Atlantic.

**Drake and his  
Voyage around  
the World.**

39. After sailing several weeks, cold winds and violent rains so discouraged him that he put back; and in San Francisco Bay, or near it, cast anchor.\* Landing, he was

\* Spaniards had been in that vicinity before. In 1542, Cabrillo (*kab-reel'-yo*) explored a long stretch of the coast, but, dying, his pilot continued the exploration to the 43d degree of latitude. Later, other Spaniards went still further north. Russian navigators explored the entire Alaska coast between the years 1740 and 1770.

38. Who made the second voyage around the world? Give an account of Drake's career of plunder. Take your map and trace his voyage on it.

39. Where, on land now belonging to our country, did he land? What ceremony took place there? What name was given to the region? What explorations had Spaniards made there before (note)? Russians? Where is San Francisco Bay (Map 8)? Describe the picture on page 34. How long had Drake been absent from England?  
*Ans.* Nearly three years.

greeted with joy by the natives, who looked upon him as a god. With them he tarried five weeks, and when he was about to depart, they begged him to remain and be their king. They desired to crown him. Permitting the childish ceremony, he accepted the region, with its buried treasures, for her majesty, Queen Elizabeth, of England, bestowing on it the name New Albion. The ancient name of England, be it known, was Albion. Leaving his strange subjects, very



DRAKE CROWNED KING OF NEW ALBION.

much to their regret, Drake sailed across the Pacific, and thence through the Indian seas and around Africa, getting back to England in November, 1580.

40. His return was greeted with a "shout of admiration that rose over the whole country." He was a hero. Elizabeth welcomed him with gracious attention, and did not hesitate to accept a generous share of the silver, gold, and precious pearls which he had stolen. She partook of a ban-

quet on board his ship, using the occasion to confer upon him the honor of knighthood. Henceforth he was Sir Francis Drake. His name does not come to us with pleasant memories; but, it may be said, he was not much worse, though more daring and successful, than other sea-rovers of his time.

41. Gold was the great object of the Spanish adventurers. For it they left their country, homes, wives, and children; crossed oceans, penetrated forests, swam rivers, climbed mountains, and fought Indians. Among the most noted of these gold hunters was Pizarro. He crossed the Isthmus of Darien, and reaching Peru, by means most cruel conquered its people, put to death its king, and gained possession of immense treasures of gold, silver, and pearls.

Pizarro
in
Peru.

42. His most able co-worker was Ferdinand de Soto. With the large share of the ill-gotten gains that fell to his lot, De Soto returned to Spain, where, making a grand display of rich dresses, spirited horses, and numerous lackeys, he won the hand of a lady of rank, to whom he was soon married. He had gold in abundance, yet he craved more. His passion was fanned by a story told by a man who had been to Florida in the unfortunate Narvaez expedition (§ 4). The story, though mostly a wild romance, found ready believers. Its assertion that Florida was the richest country in the world duped nobody more completely than De Soto.\*

De Soto's
Search for
Gold.

\* With three hundred men, Narvaez landed at Tampa Bay, Florida, his object being to explore the country and bring it under Spanish rule, all for gold (1528). Hardships, fevers, and encounters with Indians made terrible havoc with the adventurers. In five rude boats they tried to reach Mexico. One night they anchored in an outlet of the Mississippi. Storms sank three of the boats, and drove the others upon sand banks. Only four men of the party, after years of wandering, reached a Spanish settlement in Mexico (1536).

41. Given an account of Pizarro's expedition, conquest, and gain.

42. Who was De Soto? By what story was he deceived? Give an account of the Narvaez expedition (note). Take your map and trace it.



**43.** This credulous Spaniard asked his king, Charles V., for permission to conquer Florida. Coupled with the request was the offer to bring the entire region under the rule of Spain without a dollar of help from the royal treasury. Charles was further tempted by the promise of one-fifth of all the gold procured. He readily consented; and, to give his consent special force, he appointed De Soto governor of Florida and Cuba. By Florida, he meant all the southern part of North America from the Atlantic to Mexico. His ideas about its northern limits were not clear. (App., p. 42.)

**44.** When it became known that the gay and rich cavalier, De Soto, was fitting out an expedition for conquest and gold, thousands of young men besought him to let them join it. These men were not from the ranks of the poor and the outcast: they were sons of noblemen, or were soldiers who had achieved renown in war. Six hundred were selected. These, with their servants and horses, were taken on board the fleet. On the largest ship went De Soto and his wife.

**45.** The passage to Cuba was pleasant, and there a year was spent in feasting and rejoicing. Leaving his wife to govern the island, De Soto departed, and in a few days dropped anchor in a bay on the west side of the Florida peninsula (1539). The Indians, remembering the wrong that had been done by the cruel Narvaez, opposed his landing, but what could arrows of wood and stone avail against coats of brass and steel? De Soto counted himself fortunate when a Spaniard of the unfortunate Narvaez party, who had been held a captive by the Indians, succeeded in escaping to him. The man had learned the Indian language, and could consequently act as interpreter, but, to the disappointment of

---

**43.** What proposition did De Soto make to his king? What response did the king make? How large was Florida then?

**44.** What preparations were made for De Soto's expedition? How was it enlarged?  
*Ans.* About four hundred volunteers joined it in Cuba.

**45.** When and where did the Spaniards begin their march in Florida? What is said of the man who escaped to them from the Narvaez expedition?

De Soto, he knew nothing of any land of gold. He had never seen nor heard of any.

46. Lured by false stories, this roving expedition of freebooters marched several hundred miles in a northerly direction. They had brought for their support about six hundred hogs, which were driven along with them. Everywhere the Indians were hostile. They wanted De Soto to leave their country, for his men ate their corn and beans, ill-treated their wives and daughters, and compelled their young men to carry heavy burdens. Those who would not do his bidding and tried to escape, he hunted down with fierce dogs,



DE SOTO CROSSING THE MISSISSIPPI.

called blood-hounds, and either put them to death, or, what was worse, cut off their hands.

47. The second winter was spent by the unlucky Spaniards in the upper part of what is now the State of Mississippi. One dark night they were suddenly aroused from

46. How far and in what direction did they march? How did they treat the Indians? What noted provision had the Spaniards made for their own support?

47. Where did the Spaniards spend the second winter? What befell them there? What discovery did they make? How did they cross it? Describe the picture.

their slumbers by yells and whoops. They rushed out, to find their homes on fire, and themselves surrounded by thousands of savage foes. They were victorious, as usual, but at a terrible cost. Forty of their number lay dead in the smoking ashes. When the spring came, they resumed their march, and soon reached a great river, "The Father of Waters," the Mississippi, the Long River of the Indians (1541). Its waters rushed along rapidly, carrying with them immense trees. How could the Spaniards get across? The canoes of the Indians were large enough for men, but not for horses. Four barges were built, in which the entire party was conveyed to the west side of the river.

48. All the third summer and winter the gold-hunters continued their wanderings. Descending the Red River, they again came to the Mississippi. But what a change had taken place in their condition and prospects! Fevers and Indian arrows had been busy, and were still doing their deadly work. At length, the great leader, De Soto himself, began to despair. Sickness prostrated him and he died. His followers, sorely grieved, were careful to keep the knowledge of their loss from the Indians, who, it was known, were in the habit of digging up the bodies of fallen enemies, and hanging them in pieces to tall trees. It was feared, too, that the Indians, who thought that De Soto's power came from the Great Spirit, might be tempted to make a concerted attack upon the weakened force. So, secretly and with hushed ceremony, the sorrowing Spaniards buried the body of their chief, destroying, as far as possible, all trace of the grave. In some way, however, the secret, it was thought, became known, for, "whenever an Indian approached the spot, he would stop, look about on all sides, and make signs with his

---

48. Give an account of their further wanderings. Describe the Red River (map 8). State what is said of De Soto's death and burial. What effects did he leave, and what was done with them? *Ans.* He left two slaves, three horses, and a great many hogs, all of which were sold to his men by auction.

chin and eyes." It was therefore determined to give the body a more secure burial. Silently, and in the darkness of night, it was taken out of the ground, conveyed in a canoe to the deepest part of the Mississippi, and sunk to the bottom of the stream (1542).

49. Now, all the Spaniards were anxious to get back to Spain. Thinking that Mexico was not far away, they resolved to go to that country. They remembered that Cortes had conquered it about twenty years before (§ 32). They crossed rivers and prairies, lived upon herbs and roots, and fought Indians, until, getting in sight of high mountains, they lost courage, turned back, and were again on the banks of the Mississippi. They built large boats, and in these floated down the river to the Gulf of Mexico. By following the coast westward, after many days they reached a Spanish settlement, where the poor wanderers at last found rest (1543).

50. De Soto, we have seen, did not find the *El Dorado*, meaning the land of gold, but he discovered the Mississippi, and thus gave to Spain the first claim to the country through which that river flows. To France, however, belongs the credit of exploring the river and planting settlements along its course. Frenchmen discovered the St. Lawrence, peopled Nova Scotia, and founded Quebec (§ 32, p. 60). With zeal, courage, and devotion that command our highest admiration, their missionaries pushed through the forests into regions never before entered by Europeans, and established missions for the conversion of the Indians to the Catholic faith.

Marquette on the Mississippi.
-------------------------------------

---

49. Give an account of the final wanderings of the expedition.

50. What credit as explorers, settlers, and missionaries belongs to Frenchmen? When and by whom was the St. Lawrence discovered? *Ans.* In 1534, by James Cartier. When and where was Nova Scotia settled? *Ans.* In 1605, at Port Royal. Port Royal is the oldest town settled by the French in all America. What is its present name (map 2)? When and by whom was Quebec founded? *Ans.* In 1608, by Champlain.

51. Among those devoted men, there was no one of a more loving and heroic spirit than Marquette (*mar-ket'*). For five years he labored in the cold region near the outlet



MARQUETTE DESCENDING THE MISSISSIPPI.

of Lake Michigan, during which time he learned to speak

51. Who was Marquette ? What did he say of himself and Jollet ? Give an account of his expedition as far as the Mississippi.

with ease five Indian languages.\* Then, accompanied by a few Frenchmen and Indians, the most noted of his countrymen being Joliet, he departed on a long expedition. Said he: "My companion, Joliet, is an envoy of France to discover new countries, and I am an ambassador from God to enlighten them with the Gospel." In two canoes the party paddled out of the Straits of Mackinaw, along the northern and western shores of Lake Michigan, and up a river to an Indian village. Then they dragged their canoes up rapids, carried them over prairie and marsh, and launched them on the Wisconsin. Down that tranquil stream they glided till they entered the Great River, the Mississippi, "with a joy," wrote Marquette, "that could not be expressed" (1673).



LA SALLE.

52. With sails raised, they floated down the Great River into which De Soto's body had been sunk a hundred and thirty years before. At various places they stopped long enough to confer with Indian tribes. After sailing about seven hundred miles, and satisfying themselves that "The Father of Rivers" went not to the ocean on the east nor to the ocean on the west, they turned about to seek their start-

\* "Mackinaw, where they now rested, was indeed a bleak spot. It was a point of land almost encompassed by wind-tossed lakes, icy as Siberian waters. Father Marquette's first care was to raise a chapel. Rude and unshapely was this first sylvan shrine raised by Catholicity. Its sides of logs, its roof of bark, had nothing to win by a dazzling exterior the wayward child of the forest. All was as simple as the faith the devoted father taught."—*Shea's Discovery and Exploration of the Mississippi Valley.*

53. Give an account of the rest of his expedition, his death and burial.

ing place. Only a few months more remained to Marquette. Worn out by disease and care, he gently passed away, and, on the bank of the little stream that bears his name, the canoe men dug his grave.

53. A worthy successor of Marquette, also a Frenchman, though not a missionary, was the Cavalier de la Salle (*sal*).

La Salle  
and  
what he did.

He was a man of many projects, by which he hoped to gain fame and fortune. He wanted France to occupy the lands of North America before Spain or any other power could do so. With a party of about fifty persons, Frenchmen and Indians, he descended



LA SALLE TAKING POSSESSION OF LOUISIANA.

the Mississippi, and, on a spot of dry ground near its mouth, erected a cross and a column. Then, amid joyous shouts and musket volleys, he claimed for France all the valley of the

53. Who was La Salle? What explorations did he make? How did Louisiana get its name? When was that? Into what water does the Mississippi flow?

54. Give an account of La Salle's further efforts, and his death.

Great River, bestowing upon it the name of Louisiana, in honor of his king, Louis XIV. (1682).

54. Returning to France, he was welcomed with high honors. To the king he submitted a project for a fort and colony near the mouth of the Mississippi, which met with hearty favor. In a fleet of four ships, about three hundred persons departed, La Salle being of the number. The commander, conceited and obstinate, would not do as La Salle advised. By mistake he passed the mouth of the Mississippi, and refusing to go back, compelled his passengers to land in Texas. The resolute La Salle undertook to find the river by going through the wilderness, but, while engaged in this heroic task, was treacherously shot by the individual in his party to whom he had shown the most favors (1687).

---

#### REVIEW OUTLINE.

55. The discovery of America by Columbus started all western Europe into a blaze of excitement. The new lands, it was believed, were outlying islands of the rich region of India. Men and governments coveted the vast treasures of gold that were supposed to be hidden in their soil. Everybody wanted to go to the mystic region. In expeditions to discover, explore, and conquer the new lands, Spain took the lead, though English ships, commanded by the Cabots, were quick to follow Columbus, and to be the first to reach the main land of North America, and to explore a long stretch of its eastern coast (1497-8).

56. The first European to reach South America was Columbus (1498): the second was Amerigo Vespucci (1499), from whom the continent derives its name. The fountain-seeker, De Leon, was the first after the Cabots to reach North America (1513), the same year in which the gold-seeker, Balboa, looked upon the Pacific Ocean, and seven years before the first European ship sailed upon those waters. Spain and Portugal were meanwhile taking possession of the eastern part of South America and of Central America. Pizarro, Spain's most cruel conqueror, who could neither read nor write, made his way to the western part of South America, and there, in Peru, robbed the natives of their country and their gold (1524-36). Also, meanwhile, Spain's one-eyed conqueror, Cortes, reduced



the Mexicans to submission, compelled them to give up their gold, and made his king the richest monarch in Europe (1521-35).

57. From Mexico, Cortes sent expeditions by sea and by land. In an expedition led by himself, the peninsula of California was reached (1535). Other Spaniards, Coronado and Cabrillo among them, penetrated the region as far north as Kansas, and explored the Pacific coast to Oregon (1537-43). While these explorations were in progress, De Soto and his band of Spaniards were performing their celebrated march in search of gold. The region through which they wandered, north of the Gulf of Mexico, was then known as Florida. Before Drake started on his plundering expedition (1577), Spanish ships had been along the coast to the northern limits of Oregon.

58. During the reign of Queen Elizabeth (1558-1603), English ships, known as freebooters, plundered Spanish ships and Spanish towns. The first of these lawless rovers to sail to the Pacific was commanded by that greatest naval captain of the age, Francis Drake (1578). England and Spain were then at peace with each other, but that fact did not have a feather's weight of influence with Drake. In 1579 he landed on the California shore, and called the country New Albion.

59. Meanwhile the Huguenots were trying to get a foothold in Carolina and Florida, and other Frenchmen were taking possession of the Nova Scotia and St. Lawrence regions. England was tardy about sending colonies to the New World. The French displayed more activity in their inland explorations than in their ocean ventures. Their distinguished missionary, Marquette, sailed many miles on the Mississippi (1673); and their heroic La Salle made an extensive exploration of the river, and near its mouth planted the standard of France (1682).

		<i>English Kings.</i>	<i>French Kings.</i>
1492.	America was discovered by <i>Columbus</i> .	Henry VII.	Charles VIII.
1497.	<i>The Cabots</i> , for England, discovered North America, and, next year, Sebastian Cabot explored a large part of its eastern coast.	"	"
1513.	<i>De Leon</i> , for Spain, discovered Florida.	Henry VIII.	Louis XII.
1513.	<i>Balboa</i> , for Spain, discovered the Pacific Ocean.	"	"
1541.	<i>De Soto</i> , for Spain, discovered the Mississippi River.	"	Francis I.
1609.	<i>Hudson</i> , for the Dutch, discovered the Hudson River (see page 60).	James I.	Henry IV.

(For Tabulated Review see end of the History.)



**FRENCH & INDIAN  
WAR  
AND THE  
REVOLUTION.**



## SECTION II.

### COLONIAL PERIOD.

1. Now let us go back a little and see how the people from Europe began to make homes for themselves in our part of the New World.

The discoveries of the Cabots, as we have seen, gave to England a title, as land titles were acquired by European powers in those days, to a large part of North America; but, during the most of the century that followed, she seemed to be blind to the importance of this title.\* “Before the British flag floated over so much as a log fort on the continent, Spain was in possession of all Central America,” and of the adjacent regions on both sides.

First  
Settlements.

2. Many Protestants of France, known by the name of Huguenots, desired to remove their homes to the New World. Their first step toward that end was taken in 1562, when they began a settlement at Port Royal entrance, South Carolina. They built a fort, which, in honor of their king, Charles IX., they called

French Efforts  
at  
Settlement.

---

\* “It was held among the Christian states of Europe, and is still received as a principle of the law of nations, that newly-discovered countries belong to the discoverers. This title by discovery might be liable, indeed, to some exception in favor of the native inhabitants; but, in case those inhabitants were not Christians, they were looked upon as fair subjects for plunder and conquest.”—*Hildreth's United States*.

---

1. How did England get her first title to territory in North America?

2. Who were the Huguenots? Who was their leader in France? *Ans.* Gaspard de Coligny, by whom attempts were made to plant Huguenot colonies in America. When and where did they begin a settlement at the south? Who was at the head of that attempt? *Ans.* John Ribault (re-bo'). What is said of the name Carolina?

Fort Carolus, or, as we would say, Fort Charles. Carolus is the Latin for Charles. The country came to be known by this name, Carolus, and, a hundred years later, in honor of King Charles of England, as Carolina.

3. The Carolus settlers numbered less than thirty. Being soldiers and sailors who had not the knack of cultivating the soil, want soon stared them in the face. Homesickness followed. With such aid as the Indians could give, they built a brigantine "worthy of Robinson Crusoe," and in it put to



PORT SAN MARCO, NOW PORT MARION, ST. AUGUSTINE (note next page).

sea. Many days on the ocean brought famine. In their sufferings they cast lot to decide which one by his death should give the others a chance to live. Their choice was made, the unfortunate man submitted, and his flesh was portioned out. At last, an English vessel hove in sight. The most feeble of the rescued sufferers were landed on the coast of France; the rest were taken prisoners to England.

---

3. Give an account of the settlement and fate of the Carolus settlers.

4. The Huguenots tried again. On the banks of the river May, now the St. John's, Florida, they constructed a fort, and, under its protection, built homes (1564). Spain said that these settlers were intruders. Consequently a force was sent against them. The angry Spaniards entered a harbor of Florida, laid the foundation of the town of St. Augustine, and then proceeding against the feeble Huguenot settlement, cruelly destroyed it (1565). The growth of the new town, St. Augustine, was slow and uncertain. Attacks from French, Indian, and English foes were outlived, and now it enjoys the distinction of being the oldest town in the United States (§ 88).\* Santa Fé, New Mexico, claims to be older. When visited by Coronado in 1540, it was a populous Indian pueblo (§ 4, p. 14).

5. Twenty years more must pass before England's spell of inactivity can be broken. Then the enterprising Sir Humphrey Gilbert appears. Aided by his step-brother, Walter Raleigh (*raw'-le*), and encouraged by Queen Elizabeth, he crossed the Atlantic

Gilbert's Attempt at Settlement.
--

\* Its principal object of interest at the present time is its old Spanish fort with ditch, drawbridge, glacis, tower, and rampart, like the Old World fort of feudal times. It is a large mass of conglomerate sea shells, called coquina (*ko-ké'-na*), which was procured from quarries in a neighboring island. Its construction covered a period of a hundred years, during which time not less than a thousand Indian slaves were employed upon it. In a letter from St. Augustine, April, 1843, the author of *Thanatopsis* wrote: "The old fort of San Marco, now called Fort Marion, a foolish change of name, is a noble work. The shell rock of which it is built is dark with time. We saw where it had been struck with cannon balls, which, instead of splitting the rock, became imbedded and clogged among the shells."—*Wm. C. Bryant*.

4. When and where did the Huguenots try again? Who led them in this second attempt? *Ans.* Laudonniere (*lo-duh-nyair*). What was the fate of the settlement? Who commanded the Spaniards? *Ans.* Melendez. What act of revenge followed? *Ans.* Two years after, a French leader named De Gourgues (*goorg*) surprised St. Augustine and hung two hundred of its captives upon the trees. What distinction does St. Augustine enjoy? How is it located (map)? What is said of its fort (note)? What else can you state of the fort? *Ans.* It was captured by Sir Francis Drake in 1586 (§ 8).

5. Who was Sir Humphrey Gilbert? State what you can of him and his project. Where is Newfoundland?

to plant a colony in the New World. On Newfoundland he began to build, but ill-fortune attending his efforts, he determined to return to England. Of the five vessels with which he left England, only two remained to him. He went on board the smaller, *The Squirrel*, of only ten tons burden. He was advised to go by the larger vessel, but refusing, replied: "Be of good cheer, my friends; it is as near to heaven by sea as by land." One night, *The Squirrel's* lights disappeared, and nothing was ever again seen of her or her crew (1583).

6. Though Gilbert's sad fate was lamented by Raleigh, it did not discourage him. He thought that it would be easy to plant a colony in the warm latitude far south of Newfoundland. With authority from the queen, he sent out two ships. The voyagers reached the coast of North Carolina, and sailed among the



SIR WALTER RALEIGH.

islands, on one of which, Roanoke, they were generously feasted by the natives, who were found to be "gentle, loving, and faithful, void of all guile and treason, and such as lived after the manner of the golden age" (1584). So glowing were the accounts which the returned Englishmen gave of the country visited by them, that Elizabeth said it was the "Virgin

Land," and, as a memorial of her unmarried state, she named it Virginia.

---

6. Give an account of the first expedition sent by Raleigh. Of what did it consist? *Ans.* Two vessels commanded by Amidas and Barlow. What report was taken back to England of the Indians? What report was made of the country? What did the queen say and do?

7. Some of the authors of Raleigh's time, in admiration of the "Great Englishman," wrote of him as the "Shepherd of the Ocean." The queen bestowed upon him another title, when, as a reward for his valor, she made a knight of him. We remember that she had previously conferred the like honor upon Francis Drake (§ 40, p. 35). Our new hero, be it understood, is now Sir Walter Raleigh.

8. Raleigh was now ready to carry out his plan of colonization. He sent a hundred persons to Roanoke Island (1585). These, after a year of distress, were taken back to England by Drake, who, fresh from another expedition of pillage, had made the island a stopping place. Raleigh's second attempt, two years later, ended in great misfortune. A large colony, with John White as its governor, was planted on Roanoke, and hopeful plans for its future were formed. White went to England for supplies. It was at this time that Spain's hundred and fifty ships, known in history as the "Invincible Armada," were getting ready to make an attack upon the British isle. Every man in England was expected to aid in some way to defend his country from the threatened danger. Three years passed, and then, when White returned to Roanoke, not one of the persons he had left there could be found. What had become of them? Nobody knows. The mystery is as much a mystery to-day as it was then.

9. We have seen that when Queen Isabella died, Columbus lost his best friend. When Queen Elizabeth died, Raleigh lost his best friend. A false charge of treason was brought against this "warrior, courtier, and seaman," and an unjust verdict left him to languish for years in prison. Being released to find a gold mine in South America, and failing to

---

7. By what names was Raleigh known? What title did the queen confer upon him? What is said of Sir Francis Drake?

8. Give an account of Raleigh's first attempt to plant a colony in America. His second attempt. Where is the Island of Roanoke (map 1)?

9. When did Queen Elizabeth die? *Ans.* In 1603. How did her death affect Raleigh? Give his further history, and an account of his death.



fore James's two companies were ready to begin the work of colonization.

15. The London Company was the first to move, but its competitor was only three months behind. Selecting a site on the Kennebec River, Maine, the settlers of the Plymouth Company went to work (1607). Winter overtook them while they were putting up their dwellings, church, and fort. They suffered from the cold, a fire destroyed their store-house with all its contents of food, and their president died. Utterly discouraged, they returned to England, and neither they nor others of their company made another attempt to people their domain.

First Effort  
to  
Settle Maine.

#### VIRGINIA.

16. The accounts given by Raleigh's voyagers of the beauty and fertility of Roanoke decided the London Company to establish their first colony on that island, but a furious storm drove their ships into Chesapeake Bay. A river was entered whose "shores were covered with flowers of divers colors." To this stream the delighted party gave the name of their king. A low peninsula was chosen as a site for the colony, the emigrants landed, and the king was again honored. The place was called Jamestown (1607). The beginning was unfortunate. At every high tide the water covered half the peninsula.

Settlement  
of  
Jamestown.

17. The colonists numbered about one hundred, all men; and they were as unfit to lay the foundation of a new State as could be imagined. More than half called themselves "gentlemen," a gentleman in those days being an individual who could not do any work with his hands. The first duty

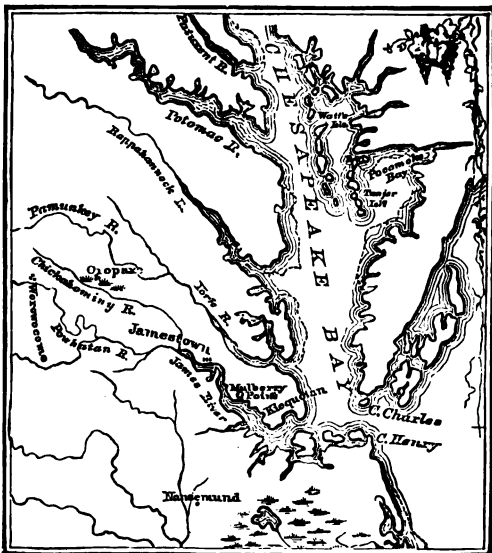
---

15. What is said of the effort and failure of the Plymouth Company?

16. Where is Jamestown (map p. 53)? Why was it so named? By whom and when was the first settlement made there?

17. Describe the characters of its first settlers. What two notable exceptions were there? What had Gosnold already done?

of these hundred men was to build houses, and yet, strange to say, there were only four carpenters of their number. Some were jewelers, others were gold refiners, one was a "perfumer." Why had they come? Many had visions of gold before their eyes, a few desired to extend the domain of their king, fewer hoped to convert the Indians to Christianity. To make matters worse, their leaders were incompetent, the only exceptions being the Captain Gosnold who had discovered Cape Cod (§ 11), and a John Smith, who was to become famous. Gosnold's death, which soon occurred, left Smith as the only man able to cope with the difficulties of the situation.



18. Smith, however, was not permitted to take the lead. The king had appointed two councils to carry out his instructions for the government of the colony. One of these had its head-quarters in England. The other, the subordinate one, consisting of seven men, held its meetings at Jamestown. The foolish king had put the names of the seven men into a tin box. Then handing the box to Captain Newport, the commander of the

18. Of what foolish measure was the king the doer ?

company's ships, he said: "This must not be opened till after your arrival in Virginia."

19. The folly bore its fruit. When the box was opened, it was discovered that Smith was a member of the council. The other members, excited by feelings of jealousy, tried to keep him out. They charged him with an intention of killing them and making himself king of Virginia. He was tried, but as no evidence could be produced against him, he was allowed to take his seat at the council board.



JOHN SMITH.

20. While the "gentlemen" colonists were searching for gold or spending their time in idleness, the others were felling trees, planting corn, and building houses. A fort and church, both rude affairs, were built. Fevers began to prostrate the colonists, the provisions ran out,

the Indians were hostile. Before the end of the summer, more than half the men who had landed from Newport's ships were in their graves. The president of the council, a dishonest man, did nothing for those under his care. He was deprived of his office, and another man was chosen in his place. This second president proving to be no better than the first, Smith, supported by the demands of the settlers, assumed control of affairs, and soon was regularly elected president.

21. The scene of misery was soon changed. Order was

---

19. What fruit did the king's folly bear? State the sequel.

20. Give an account of the doings and misdoings of the colonists during their first summer in Jamestown.

21. Repeat the story that is told of the saving of Smith's life by Pocohontas.

established, the Indians were awed, and supplies of corn were procured. Smith made boat excursions up bays and rivers, sometimes for corn, at other times for exploration.

He hoped to find a passage to the Pacific. In a book written by him, he tells a very interesting story of his capture by the Indians while he was on one of his expeditions. The savages took him to their chief, Pow-ha-tan', who ordered him to be killed. His head was placed upon a stone, and an Indian raised a club to strike it, when Po-ca-hon'-tas, a daughter of the chief, not more than thirteen years of age, rushed to the prostrate man, put her arms about his neck, and by tears and entreaties so softened the heart of her father as to induce him to set his captive free.

Smith  
and  
Pocahontas.

22. Whether this story is true or not, it is certain that Pocahontas was friendly to the colonists. She more than once carried baskets of corn to them when they were sorely in need of food; and once, stealing through the woods at night, she warned them of an attack which her people had planned against them. The colonists called her "The dear and blessed Pocahontas."

23. In the spring of the next year (1608) Newport arrived with more settlers; but these brought no joy to Virginia, for they were "chiefly vagabond gentlemen and goldsmiths." Near Jamestown they found a yellow sand, which, they said, was gold. At once a gold fever broke out, and attacked every man except Smith. He reasoned and remonstrated, but in vain. "There was no talk, no hope, no work, but to dig gold, wash gold, load gold." The deluded Newport carried to London a full cargo of the gilded sand, which, to his mortification, he was informed was nothing but worthless dirt.

The  
Gold Fever.

24. The London Company were disappointed. They had

---

22. What other service did Pocahontas render to the colonists?

23. Give an account of the gold fever in Jamestown.

24. What change of charter and ruler was made in 1609?

spent much money, but had received nothing of value in return. The king gave them another charter, which extended the limits of their territory, "northward and southward and from sea to sea," meaning from the Atlantic to the Pacific. It empowered them to appoint a governor for their colony, and Lord Delaware was accordingly chosen (1609).

Virginia  
and the  
Second Charter.

25. Before Delaware reached Virginia a serious accident occurred to Smith. While sailing down the James River, a bag of gunpowder exploded in his boat, "tearing the flesh from his body in a most pitiful manner." As there was no one in the colony skilful enough to treat his wounds, he decided to return to England for treatment. He was carried on board a ship, and, though he never saw Virginia again, his enterprising spirit was not quenched (1610). Four years later he crossed the ocean to the region belonging to the Plymouth Company, examined its shores, and made a map of his explorations (§ 49). To him we are indebted for the name, New England, by which the region is known. One of his admirers exclaims :

"I never knew a warrior like thee  
From wine, debts, and oaths so free." \*

\* The story of Smith's life, as told by himself, seems like a romance. He fought against Spaniards and Turks, slew three champions in single combat, was taken prisoner, sold as a "beast in a market place," and sent to Constantinople. There he gained the affection of his mistress, who, to secure his safety, sent him to her brother. This man, a proud pasha, suspecting his sister's feelings and intentions, determined to baffle her. He put Smith to work among half-savage serfs, and treated him cruelly in other ways. Madened by the treatment, Smith turned upon his master, beat out his brains with a flail, put on the dead man's clothes, mounted the dead man's horse, and fled from the country. After his adventures in Virginia and his explorations of the New England coast, he was captured at sea by a French war ship, but

25. Give the further history of Smith while he was in the colony. Who gave to New England its name? How was that brought about? Tell the story of Smith's life as you find it in the note.

---

**26.** Under Virginia's first governor, from whom Delaware Bay takes its name, the colony prospered. The people worked in common, that is, whatever was done was for the benefit of all. There were no small farms or little plots of cultivated land. There was one large farm, and all the corn and other things raised on it were carried to a warehouse, from which each settler drew his share. The plan was a poor one as events proved, still the governor's good management made it at first a success. Rules were laid down for each day, and these were carefully observed.

**27.** At the ringing of the church bell in the early morning of each work day, the people assembled in the little church. The governor, attended by the members of his council, and by a guard of fifty men in red cloaks, set an example of punctuality. After the service, the congregation went to the store-house, where each person received his day's allowance of food. Breakfast over, all were ready for work. The church service was after the manner established by law in England. King James was an Episcopalian, and he tried to compel his subjects in Virginia to be of the same faith.

**28.** Unfortunately for the colony, Lord Delaware did not remain long in it. A lingering sickness so discouraged him that he returned to England (1611). Fresh arrivals having increased the population of Jamestown to seven hundred men, women, and children, it was decided that some should settle elsewhere. Two "cities" were accordingly founded, one of which, says its historian, "had three streets, a church, and

---

made his escape. In England he spent the last years of his life writing a History of Virginia, and a narrative of his travels and adventures. He died in 1631.

---

**26.** What system of work did Lord Delaware plan for the colonists ?

**27.** Relate how the system, with the church observance, was carried out.

**28.** What further can you state of Lord Delaware ? Of increase in the colony's population ? Of change in the system of work ?

watch houses." They had only a brief existence. At this time a great change was effected, for which the new governor, Sir Thomas Dale, deserved thanks. Under the old system of labor, the industrious settlers practically supported the idlers. Now the working bees no longer fed the drones. Every man was put in possession of a plot of ground to cultivate for his own use. The result was seen when the next



POCAHONTAS PRESENTED TO QUEEN ANNE, WIFE OF JAMES I.

crops were gathered. Instead of a "Starving Time" which had nearly destroyed the colony (1610), there was now plenty and to spare.

29. In one direction there was prosperity, in another there was trouble. The Indians were not friendly. Captain

---

29. Relate the story of Argall's capture of Pocahontas.

Argall, "half pirate, half sailor," hit upon a plan to bring them to terms. This was to get Pocahontas on board his sloop, and take her to Jamestown as a prisoner. His idea was, that her father so loved her that he would not injure the settlers while she was in their custody. To an Indian chief and his wife Argall offered a copper kettle if they would bring the little maid to him. They consented. The unsuspecting girl, curious to see the inside of a great ship, went willingly. She no sooner reached the cabin than she was informed of her captivity. Her tears were of no avail. She was taken to Jamestown.

Pocahontas.

30. How often the unexpected happens! The pious minister in the colony at once saw his golden opportunity, and soon had the joy of receiving the Indian girl into his church. She was baptized, and a new name, Rebecca, given to her. Meanwhile, John Rolfe (*rolf*), who, we are told, was an "honest and discreet young Englishman," winning the love of the Indian captive, desired her in marriage. The governor's consent was given, and in the little church, surrounded by colonists, and the bride's dusky relatives, the lovers were married (1613). Rolfe and his wife lived in contentment on his plantation, and there was peace between her people and the colonists.

31. In a few months, the governor, Sir Thomas Dale, resolved to return to his native land, and it was decided that the young couple should go with him. In England the Indian wife was welcomed as the daughter of a king. She was presented at court and styled the Lady Rebecca. Her old friend, John Smith, was among the happy greeters. But her days were not many. She was getting ready to return to the land of her fathers, when she suddenly died (1617). She left one child, a son, who was educated in England. In Virginia he married and became a person of note.

---

30. Give an account of the marriage of Pocahontas to John Rolfe.

31. Relate the further history of Pocahontas. Describe the picture on page 58.



## NEW NETHERLAND.

(*New York, New Jersey, and Delaware.*)

32. The voyage from England to India, around the southern cape of Africa, was long. It took more than a year to go and return. The way around the southern end of South America was even longer (§ 37, p. 32). Was there not a shorter way?

Henry Hudson  
and  
his Discoveries.

Attempts were made by Dutch as well as English navigators to find one, among these bold seekers being an Englishman named Henry Hudson. Commanding a Dutch ship, the *Half-Moon*, and in the employ of a Dutch company, he made his third attempt. Reaching the American coast, he entered the harbor of New York, and ascended the beautiful river (the Hudson) that flows into it (1609). This was about three months after the Frenchman, Samuel Champlain, had sailed up the St. Lawrence, and in an expedition southward, found the lake which bears his name (note to § 116, p. 108).

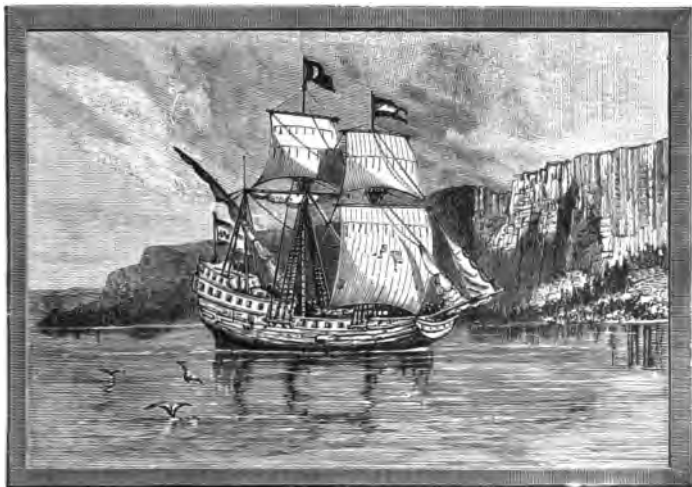
33. The natives in canoes crowded about the *Half-Moon*, bringing oysters, beans, grapes, tobacco, and beaver-skins, which they disposed of in trade for beads, knives, and hatchets. Some of the natives smoked tobacco through copper pipes. Some wore ornaments of copper around their necks. All were clad in garments made of feathers or fur. At a point about a hundred miles from the mouth of the river, Hudson went ashore, and was conducted by the Indians to a large house covered with oak bark, in which was stored their last harvest of corn and beans. A mat was spread for him to sit upon, and he was invited to partake of food from a wooden bowl. A fat dog was also killed and cooked for his repast.

---

32. What is said of the two water routes from England to India? What is said about a shorter route? Who made three attempts to find a shorter route? What discovery did he make the third time? When was that? Give the particulars. What is said of Champlain? (See also p. 39.)

33. Relate the incidents of Hudson's intercourse with the Indians.

34. Further ascending the river, the Half-Moon was brought to a stop by the shallow channel. Still hoping that he had found the passage to India's seas, Hudson sent a party in a small boat to continue the search. The report brought back left the disappointed navigator no choice.



THE HALF-MOON ASCENDING THE HUDSON.

Turning about, he descended the "Silent River of the Mountains," and steered for Europe. He stopped at England. It was a mistake. King James detained both him and his vessel, saying that the lands he had visited belonged to the English crown. Hudson contrived to send a report of his discoveries to his employers, but the Half-Moon was not permitted to leave England for several months.\*

\* It has been stated that Verrazzani (also Verrazano), an Italian navigator, while commanding a French ship in 1524, entered the harbor of New York, thus anticipating Hudson more than eighty years. The statement is now believed to be untrue. Bancroft, in the last edition of his History of the United States does not allude to Verrazzani in any way.

34. How far did he explore the river? Why did he go so far? What befell him and his vessel in England?

**35.** Would we know more of Henry Hudson? In the employ of English merchants, once more he sailed to find a northern passage to India (1610). He passed through the strait, and into the bay that now bears his name. A mutiny broke out among his crew, and he, with his son and seven others who had remained faithful to him, was put into a boat and abandoned. Those of the mutineers who lived to get back to England were hanged, or punished according to their deserts. The king sent ships to find Hudson. All efforts were fruitless. Was not the great bay the tomb of its discoverer?

**36.** Hudson, in the Half-Moon, had sailed along the coast from Cape Cod to Chesapeake Bay. On the river discovered by him, near the present city of Albany, the Dutch built a small house, protecting it with two big guns (§ 38). At the mouth of the river, on the island which the Indians called Manhattan, they put up huts to shelter the crew of one of their ships that had been destroyed by fire; and, building another vessel, a yacht of sixteen tons burden, launched her in the spring of 1614 (§ 137). They explored the shores along which Hudson had sailed, extending their excursions to many bays and rivers. They said that the country belonged to them, and that its name should be New Netherland.

**37.** Most of the early settlers from Holland came in families. Many were Walloons, Protestants who had escaped to Holland from the Spanish rule in Flanders, now Belgium. On Manhattan (New York) Island a log fort was built, and around this center, called Fort Amsterdam, were erected huts of bark with straw roofs and wooden chimneys (1623).

**35.** Tell all you know of the further history of Hudson.

**36.** What steps did the Dutch take to get and hold possession of the country that Hudson had discovered for them? What is said of their ship-building? What name did they give to their country? Can you tell why they so named it?

**37.** Who were the Walloons? What can you say of their movements? Of the first attempt to occupy Manhattan Island? How did the Dutch get to own the island?

For a time this settlement was little more than a station for collecting hides and furs. Wishing to live in peace with their neighbors, the Indians, the settlers bought the island, giving for it a few glittering trinkets valued at less than twenty-five dollars. The Indians were perfectly satisfied. They had sold twenty thousand acres of land, now the most valuable in all America, for a few beads, buttons, and other trifles. The settlement was called New Amsterdam (§ 85).

**38.** A number of families went up the Hudson, and built a fort and homes, calling the former Fort Orange, in honor of the Prince of Orange, the President of Holland. This was the beginning of the city of Albany (1623). As early as 1625 a ship sailed from this fort, carrying to Holland many hundred beaver and other skins. Several families, under the guidance of Captain May, who had left his name on the southern cape of New Jersey, made homes for themselves in the western part of New Jersey. There, also, on a creek that flows into the Delaware River, they built a fort (1623).

**39.** West of Delaware Bay a colony of Swedes found a good place for a settlement. Their first comers had been favored by their child-queen of Sweden, the little Christina (*kris-te'-nah*). They bought land of the Indians, and, on a promontory within the present city of Wilmington, built dwellings and a fort (1638). This was their town of Christina. At the end of seventeen years, the town, with its surrounding plantations, contained six hundred industrious Swedes and Finns. The country was called New Sweden. In time, after it passed into other hands, it came to be known as Delaware (§ 85, 92). (Read note 5, Appendix, p. 43.)

---

**38.** How did Albany have its beginning? Where did it get its name? How is it situated (map 2)? What took place in 1625? What did Captain May accomplish? Where is Cape May (map 2)?

**39.** State all you can of the Swedish settlement. In what year was it begun? Where is Wilmington? Where was New Sweden? Why was it so named? Who was the father of Christina? *Ans.* Gustavus Adolphus. Who were the Finns? *Ans.* People who came from Finland, a country in the western part of Russia, then under the rule of Sweden.

40. A governor was appointed for New Netherland, and liberal offers were held out in Holland to induce persons to emigrate to the colony. To every man who formed a settlement of as many as fifty persons a large tract of land was given. These great land owners were called Patroons. Still the growth of the colony was slow, and not until the arrival of its fourth governor, Peter

Governor  
Stuyvesant.



PETER STUYVESANT.

Stuyvesant (*sti'-ve-sant*), "the governor with the silver leg," did a change begin. He was a soldier, had lost a leg in battle, and was now wearing a wooden leg bound with silver bands. He came when the Indians were hostile, when the English were accusing the Dutch of intruding upon territory belonging to the British crown, when a company of Swedes, without the consent of Holland, were occupying lands within the limits of New Netherland (1647).

41. He treated the Indians with kindness, and they were turned into friends. He met the English in the disputed territory of Connecticut, and they consented to a boundary line. He went against the Swedes on the Delaware (1655), and brought them under the rule of the Dutch (§ 84).\*

\* "With a squadron of seven armed snips, Stuyvesant set sail from New Amsterdam. The vessels arrived in Delaware Bay, sailed to a Swedish fort, and anchored for the night. The fort had been abandoned two or three years before, and now presented no object of hostility. The next day Stuyvesant sailed to another fort, landed, and began to throw up a breastwork. The Swedish commander, knowing his inability to maintain the post against the powerful force before it, agreed to capitulate."—*Ferris's Delaware Settlements*.

40. Who, in succession, were the governors of New Netherland? *Ans.* Peter Minuits, Wouter Van Twiller, Sir William Kieft, and Peter Stuyvesant.

41. What is said of Stuyvesant and what he did for the colony?

## NEW ENGLAND.

42. In our country, the United States, there are many churches. If a person desires to be a Methodist, or a Baptist, or a Catholic, or an Episcopalian, or a member of any other church, he is at liberty to do so. Indeed, he may go to any church or may keep away from all churches, just as he pleases. This we call religious toleration. But toleration like this was not the state of things in England during the reign of James I. He belonged to what was, and is still, the Church of England. The laws of England were largely based upon the assumption that every Englishman belonged to the one Church in which it was declared "was the only true worship." Unlike the churches of our day and country, the Church of England was supported by taxes, very much as the army was supported. No other church received any such aid. In fact, no other church had any legal existence. If any body of persons wanted to build a church of another denomination, the laws said they must not.

Church  
Liberty.

43. At that time there was a large number of persons in England who were called Puritans. They were very strict in their religious notions and mode of living. The most of them attended church as King James and the law commanded, but they were in favor of a more simple form of worship, such a form as by its very simplicity would purify the church from, what they regarded, its follies and abuses. Hence their name, Puritans.

The  
Puritans.

44. Some Puritans went further. Believing that it was impossible to effect any change in the church, supported as it was by law, king, and a multitude of interests, they separated themselves entirely from it and set up another church,

42. What was England's condition as to church affairs in the reign of James I ?  
What is said of England's church laws ?

43. Who were the Puritans ? What did they desire ?

44. Who were the Separatists ? What move did they resolve to make ?

an independent church. Hence they called themselves Separatists or Independents. Unfortunately, they lived at a time when church persecutions were common. They could not meet, except in secret. They were looked upon as rebels. One of their congregations, consisting of about three hundred persons, having been cruelly driven from place to place, re-



PILGRIMS ESCAPING FROM ENGLAND. (FROM LEUTZE'S PICTURE.)

solved to go to Holland, where, they heard, "was freedom of religion for all men."

45. But resolutions are sometimes more easily made than executed. When the resolvers began to leave, they were seized and cast into prison. Even women and children were arrested as if they were thieves. Two years passed. What years of misery ! At last,

The  
Pilgrim  
Fathers.

45. What is said of the persecutions to which the Separatists were subjected ? Of their movement to and in Holland ? Describe the picture.

having escaped in small parties, these poor exiles were united at Amsterdam, Holland, from which city they went to Leyden (*li'-den*). Were they not Pilgrims? At Leyden, under the devoted care of their pastor, John Robinson, they lived ten years "in peace, love, and holiness."

46. Though they were kindly treated by their neighbors, they became convinced that they ought not to remain longer in Holland. They believed that elsewhere they could "act a higher part." They were English, and they wanted their children to be English. They looked toward the New World. There, on English soil and under the English flag, they proposed to establish a home in which they would be just as free as in Holland to worship God as they desired. They asked King James for a tract of his domain in America. He refused. He would not even give them permission to go to any part of it. He was, however, finally brought to say, they were told, that, if they went, he would not molest them. On this slender promise they resolved to go.

47. A ship was purchased, the *Speedwell*, and anchored in Delft Haven. As she was not large enough to take all the congregation, it was decided that the pastor should abide with those that remained. The parting took place on the deck of the *Speedwell*. "Robinson knelt down, and with him knelt his friends and companions. He stretched out his hands and cried to the Lord, and his words moved all hearts." He then returned to the shore, whence he and the many with him "watched the departing bark with streaming eyes" (July, 1620).

48. A favorable wind wafted the *Speedwell* to an English port, where the *Mayflower*, a hired ship, was waiting to join her. The two ships then sailed, but the *Speedwell* belied her

---

46. Why did the Pilgrims wish to leave Holland? What steps did they take to leave? What was the king's attitude toward them?

47. Give an account of their departure from Holland.

48. Of their experience in England and departure thence.



name. She began to leak, and both vessels put back. Again they sailed, and again, for the same reason, put back, this time to Plymouth, England. Finally, the Mayflower, crowded with about a hundred passengers, sailed alone; and, after a

tedious passage of more than two months, dropped anchor in Cape Cod Bay (November, 1620).



THE MAYFLOWER. (FROM THE MODEL IN PILGRIM HALL, PLYMOUTH, MASS.)

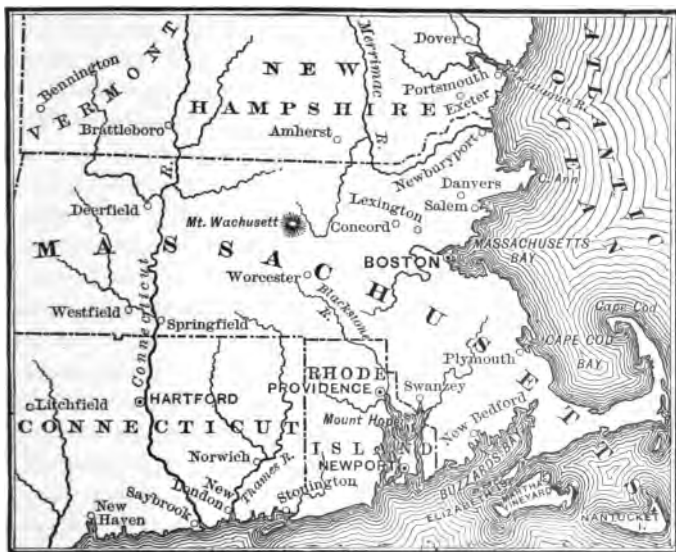
49. A month was spent in finding a good spot for their settlement. The ground was covered with snow. One day a war-whoop and a flight of arrows gave notice that the Indians were near. Before the landing of the Pilgrims, they adopted a form of govern-

ment. They agreed to obey the will of the majority. In the cabin of the Mayflower the paper was spread upon the table, and every man signed it. John Carver was elected governor for one year. From the boat which conveyed them

---

49. What is said of the arrival of the Pilgrims in America and their compact in the cabin of the Mayflower? Their landing and the name given to their new home? Where is Cape Cod (map 1)? Plymouth? What is stated in the two notes on page 69?

from the ship, they stepped upon a rock,\* and all landed (December, 1620). Remembering the kind treatment which they had received at Plymouth, their last resting place in England, they called their new home Plymouth.† For many years the landing of the Pilgrims was celebrated on



the 22d of December : now the 21st is regarded as the true Forefathers' Day. (Read note 35, Appendix, p. 53.)

50. Each head of a family built his own house, and as the

\* "Here is a stone which the feet of a few outcasts pressed for an instant, and it became famous. It is treasured by a nation. Its very dust is shared as a relic."—*De Tocqueville*.

† Six years before, as we have seen, John Smith examined the shores of New England (§ 25). Three years later he published a map showing the extent of his explorations, but it is not known that the Pilgrims ever saw the map. It is a curious fact that on this map, on the very spot chosen by the Pilgrims for their settlement, is found the name Plymouth.

50. Relate the Samoset episode. What treaty was made ?

Indians were seen hovering near, a military body was formed with Miles Standish as its leader. But the Indians made no attack. On the contrary, one of them, in the early spring, walked boldly into the village, and to the surprise and delight of its inhabitants exclaimed, "Welcome, Englishmen!" He was a petty chief, Samoset by name, who had been among the English fishermen of Maine. He soon brought other friendly Indians, and these were not long in inducing Mas-sasoit, the great chief of the Wam-pa-no'-ags, to visit the Pilgrims. Presents were exchanged, and, what was of vast importance, a treaty of friendship was "concluded in a day, and sacredly kept for more than half a century" (1621).

51. The frequent showers of sleet, snow, and rain, to which the colonists were exposed before their houses could be occupied, caused much sickness. Before the Mayflower, in April, left for England, there were not more than fifty whom death had spared. Among the fallen was Carver. His place as governor was filled by William Bradford. In the autumn other members of the Leyden congregation arrived, but Robinson was not among them. He died before arrangements were completed for conveying him and the rest of his flock to Plymouth. The Indians continued friendly. Once, Canon-icus, chief of the tribe on the west of Narragansett Bay, showed hostility. He sent some arrows in the skin of a rattlesnake. It was a message of war. Bradford sent back the skin, filled, in place of the arrows, with powder and shot. The chief's courage failed. He repented, and promised friendship.

52. King James's grants of land were made with looseness and lavishness. What he did one day he undid the next.

---

51. What is said of the sufferings of the Pilgrims? What is said of Canonicus? Of Carver and Bradford? What further can you state of Bradford? *Ans.* Every year, for thirty-one years, except five when he refused to serve, he was elected governor. He wrote a history of the colony called the History of the Plymouth Plantation.

52. What is said of Virginia's charters issued by King James? Of Virginia's popular legislature (note)? When and why was it abolished?

What he gave one day to one party he gave to another party another day. He looked upon his vast domain in America as the speculator nowadays looks upon his town lots. To the Virginians, in the course of time, he gave no less than three charters, the second widening the land limits of the first, and the third of the second. In favor of the last charter was its liberal provision permitting the freemen of the colony to elect representatives to an assembly. This body, which made laws, was the first people's legislature in America (1619).\* But this great right enjoyed by the Virginians was not enjoyed long. The king, pretending that they discussed affairs with too much freedom, in other words, that they were too democratic, revoked all his gifts to them (1624). Virginia thus again became the sole property of the Crown (§ 80).

Virginia's  
Charters.

53. In another case the king gave with a right royal generosity. To a body of forty men, called the Council of Plymouth, he granted a belt of territory north of Virginia, six hundred miles wide, from the Atlantic to the Pacific. By a stroke of the pen, a million square miles were presented to forty rich and powerful noblemen (November, 1620). No conditions were attached to the gift. Was there ever in the history of the world a present of such magnitude! Men called it the "Great Patent," meaning that it was a great monopoly, and that they did not like it. Without the consent of the Council, no man could lawfully build a house or buy a bit of fur anywhere on their vast domain. No man could catch a fish in any of its waters. While men said that the king had done

The Council  
of  
Plymouth.

\* "A perpetual interest attaches to this first elective body that ever assembled in the western world, representing the people of Virginia, and making laws for their government, a year before the Mayflower, with the Pilgrims, left England, and while Virginia was still the only British colony on the continent of America."—*Bancroft's History of the United States*.

wrong, the Pilgrims came, as we have seen, and at Plymouth, on the land just ceded to the forty men, planted their colony. The monopolists complained, but the Pilgrims remained, and, without license from the Council, fished in forbidden waters.

54. In spite of popular opposition the Council sold great tracts of their domain. In 1621, John Mason obtained a tract south of the Merrimac. Next year, he and Sir Ferdinando Gorges (*gor'-jez*) obtained jointly all the territory between the Merrimac and the Kennebec, to which they gave the name Laconia. At Portsmouth and Dover fishermen built huts (1623). Mason and

New  
Hampshire.



Gorges made a partition of their province; and a new and separate grant was given to Mason of the portion between the Merrimac and the Piscataqua (1629). This he called New Hampshire, as an expression of his good will toward Hampshire, England, where he was living.\*

55. In 1625 King James died and was succeeded by his son, the

\* "Straggling settlers were planting themselves along the coast. A party of some thirty, under Captain Wollaston, set up a plantation at a place which they called Mount Wollaston, now Quincy. This plantation presently fell under the control of one Morton, who changed its name to Merry Mount, sold powder and shot to the Indians, gave refuge to runaway servants, and set up a May Pole, upon which occasion he broached a cask of wine and a hogshead of ale, and held high revel and carousal." The people of Plymouth were requested by the other settlers to put the scandal down; "and Morton was seized by the redoubtable Miles Standish, and sent prisoner to England."—*Hildreth's History of the United States*. (Read note 7, Appendix, p. 44.)

54. How, when, and where was New Hampshire first settled? What is said of John Mason and his part in the early history of New Hampshire? Where is Portsmouth (map 2)? Dover? (See map on this page.)

55. Where is Salem (map 2)? Give its early history. What charter did the king give to Massachusetts? Why and when did he give it?

unfortunate Charles I. Charles was always in want of money, consequently, in all his dealings with the colonies, his aim was to get it. Soon after the beginning of his reign, parties of Puritans—not Separatists—settled in the eastern part of Massachusetts, some of them at Salem. Others joined them in 1628, when the town fairly began its existence. Word came to the king that the Dutch of New Netherland were buying furs of the Indians in New England. Though he did not like the Puritans any more than his father had liked them, he was quite willing to have them oppose the Dutch. For this and other reasons he readily gave them a charter, meaning a deed or grant, in the name of the “Governor and Company of Massachusetts Bay in New England” (1629). It included Salem, but not Plymouth.

Massachusetts  
Bay.

56. This charter was regarded by the Puritans as a “precious boon.” True, it said nothing about religion, but did it not, by its silence on that point, leave the colonists to set up the very church they desired? They were not long in entering the open doorway. More Puritans came to Salem, and the “tenants of its huts and cabins,” desiring, as they said, “not to separate themselves from the Church of England, but from its corruptions,” took their first step toward planting a church in the wilderness, by electing a pastor, elder, and deacon. The choice was by ballot.

57. The charter seemed to the Puritans in England “like a summons from Heaven inviting them to America.” One thousand went in the year 1630. John Winthrop was their governor. He was of “grave and benevolent aspect, dressed in a black velvet suit with a broad ruff around his neck.” With him went “ministers of the Gospel whom the English bishops had forbidden to preach, but who knew that they should have liberty both to preach and pray in the forests

56. What can you say of the charter? Of the first Salem church?

57. State what you can of Winthrop. Of the Boston settlement.

of America." A little peninsula "marked by three hills and blessed with sweet springs," pleased the governor and others, and there they built a town "which was to grow famous throughout the world." They called it Boston, after the English town of that name, where many of them had lived.



JOHN WINTHROP.

58. Every year there was an election for governor, and for such other officers as composed a court in which the affairs of the colony were settled. The electors were called freemen. They assembled in "town meeting," and in the first years voted on all questions by a show of hands. Only members of the town church were allowed to

vote. "The rock on which the State rested was religion. Religion was the life of the Puritans." They were reprovved because of their intolerance. They replied: "We left England because we were persecuted. Why should we welcome our persecutors, and give them a chance to persecute us again? We came here to enjoy religious liberty for ourselves. Let others go elsewhere. The continent is large enough."

59. The skins of beavers, and of other animals common to America, were in great demand in Europe. Fur garments were all the rage. A lady who wore one was the envy of her neighbors. Was it strange that many of the colonists were fur dealers? The Indians, skilled

Connecticut.

58. Where is Boston? Give an account of the town meetings. What is said of the religion of the Puritans? Of what were they accused? What reply did they make?

59. Where, in Connecticut, did the Puritans begin settlements? State how those places are situated (map next page). What was the cause of the contest between the Dutch and English in the Connecticut region? What is said of fur and its use?

in trapping, disposed of the skins to traders. The Plymouth settlers and the Dutch of New Netherland were specially active in contending for the trade. "Keep on crowding the Dutch," wrote an English statesman to his friends in Plymouth. Both parties built trading houses on the Connecticut (1633). These were soon followed by settlements of Puritans at Windsor, Hartford, and Wethersfield, forming the



Connecticut Colony; and by a fort at the mouth of the river, built by young Winthrop, son of the Massachusetts governor (1635). Around this fort grew the Saybrook Colony. Now there were two colonies in Connecticut (§ 68).

**60.** The most interesting emigration to the Connecticut valley was conducted by the Rev. Thomas Hooker, often

**60.** Give an account of the Hooker emigration.



styled the "Light of the Western Churches." It consisted of about a hundred persons, men of rank and fortune, with their wives and children. "In the first warm month of the New England year," they left the vicinity of Boston, and, driving their herds of cattle before them, made slow progress, hardly ten miles a day. Their course lay through a pathless forest, and they had no other guide than a little compass. At the end of about two weeks they reached the delightful banks of the Connecticut (1636).

61. They had come to a country pleasant to look upon, and of fertile soil, but troubles were before them. The Dutch called them intruders, and threatened to drive them away. Governor Stuyvesant was not yet in New Netherland. The Indians were still more to be feared. These were the Pequods, or Pequots, the most powerful tribe in New England. They could muster a thousand warriors. The first settlers found the Pequods friendly, but, in the strife for furs, small bands of Indians committed hostile acts. A force sent against them burned their wigwams, and destroyed their corn and canoes.

62. Smarting under the belief that their punishment was not deserved, the Pequods resolved upon revenge. They tried to get the Narragansetts to join them, but the good Roger Williams, who had fled to Rhode Island from Puritan persecution, at great risk to his life prevented the alliance. The infant towns on the Connecticut united for protection, but not before thirty of their inhabitants had fallen under the tomahawk. About a hundred colonists, with some friendly Indians, went against the Pequods, surprised them in the early morning, and set fire to their fort.\* Muskets, swords, and fire never before made destruction more complete. The bodies of six hundred men, women, and children were in the smoking ruins (1637).

The  
Pequod War.

61. Of the Pequods, and how the war with them was begun.

62. Give an account of the Pequod War \* Near Groton (see map p. 75).

63. The surviving Pequods hid in swamps. Being pursued and captured, the men were put to death or sent to the West Indies to be sold into slavery. The women and children not sent away were given to friendly Indians, or disposed of as slaves to the colonists. Sas'-sa-cus, the chief of the tribe, escaped, and put himself under the protection of the Mohawks, in New York ; but, influenced by the Narragansetts, the Mohawks basely killed him, and sent his scalp to Boston. The Pequod tribe was no more.

“ No more for them the wild deer bounds,  
The plough is on their hunting grounds ;  
The pale man's axe rings through their woods,  
The pale man's sail skims o'er their floods.”

64. Many years of peace followed, broken, after the death of Massasoit, by his son, called King Philip. The contest was longer, for the Indians had made progress in the art of war. Instead of bows, they had guns ; instead of tomahawks of stone, they had hatchets of iron. Philip was defeated, and hunted from place to place. His last battle was at Mount Hope, Rhode Island. Attempting to flee, he was shot by a renegade Indian of his own tribe (1676). His head was sent to Plymouth, and there exposed on a gibbet for twenty years (note to § 135).\*

King Philip's  
War.

\* “ The Indians were very anxious to find out how to make gunpowder. A white trader who sold some to an Indian told him to sow it in the ground, and it would grow like corn. The Indian was greatly elated. He went home and sowed the powder. Month after month he watched for it to sprout. Winter came before he found out the cheat that had been put upon him. Some time after, when the trader had forgotten all about his practical joke, the Indian bought a lot of goods of him on credit. When the time for payment came, the trader went to the Indian for his money. The Indian, looking him in the eye, said: ‘ Me pay you when my powder grow.’ ”—*Drake's Making of New England*.

63. What became of the surviving Pequods and their chief ?

64. Give an account of King Philip. and the war with him. (See Mount Hope, map p. 69.)

65. We have heard something of Roger Williams. What more of him interests us? He was a Puritan minister in Rhode Island. Massachusetts, but, as he differed in opinion in certain church matters from his Puritan associates, he did not meet with favor in their eyes. The Plymouth folks found no fault with him, but the people of the other towns were not so well disposed, for they believed that the country could not be safe unless all its inhabitants thought and felt alike. The town and the church, they contended, should be governed by the same rulers, and no man should vote who was not a member of their church. Though Williams was pastor of the Salem church, he was bold to say that there ought to be no such connection between church and state. "Men," he said, "ought to be punished for their crimes, not for their opinions." The power of the civil magistrates, he asserted, "rightly extends only to the bodies, goods, and outward state of man." Nor was he silent when he saw the "white men helping themselves freely to the lands of the red men, on pretense of certain titles derived from a white king on the other side of the Atlantic. He could not see how even so great a monarch as the king of England could give away what did not belong to him."

66. These sayings of the fearless pastor produced a great commotion. Representatives from the towns of Massachusetts Bay met in General Court, pronounced them full of errors, and therefore injurious to the colony. The offender, it was solemnly resolved, must be sent to England. Men were accordingly hurried off to arrest him, but they were too late. Warned by friends, he had escaped to find refuge in the country of his friend Massasoit, whom he had often met among

---

65. Who was Roger Williams? What opinions did he have? How did his opinions differ from those of the Puritans?

66. What were the consequences to him? Give an account of his flight. Where and when at last did he find a place of security? What did he call it? Where is Providence situated (map 2)?

the Pilgrims of Plymouth. "Fourteen weeks," wrote he in after years, "I was sorely tossed in a bitter season, not knowing what bread or bed did mean." Massasoit received the fugitive with open arms, and gave him of his best. At the opening of summer, Williams, joined by friends from Salem, crossed Narragansett Bay to find a good place for a settle-



THE COLONISTS MEETING WILLIAMS TO GIVE HIM A WELCOME (§ 67).

(From Grant's Painting on the Wall of the Court-house, Providence.)

ment. Selecting a spot near a spring of cold water, he called it Providence, in token of God's merciful providence to him in his distress (1636).

67. The land belonged to the Narragansetts, but they were glad to have Williams occupy it, showing their willing-

67. How did Williams get to own the land? What did he say? How were the affairs of the colony attended to? What is said of Williams's mission to England?

ness by giving him a deed of an extensive tract. "Now the soil is my own," said he, "just as truly as the coat on my back is my own." It was not his object, however, to hold it for himself. Men came from other colonies and from Europe, and "to those most in want, he gave until he gave all away." The settlers came together every month; no one asked to what, if any, Church they belonged, and at these "town meetings" the affairs of the colony were freely discussed and fully cared for. Other settlements having been made in Rhode Island, Williams went to England to have them united with his own under one charter.\* He was successful (1644). On his return, the people went across the bay in a fleet of canoes to give him a hearty welcome and escort him home.

68. The Pequod War being over, some Puritans of Massachusetts, not liking certain new opinions that were agitated among the brethren, thought it safer to build a church and home for themselves in the Connecticut region. A spot was accordingly selected, and under a wide-spreading oak, with the Rev. John Davenport as their pastor, they held their first service. Ten good coats induced the Indians to sell the tract of land, which its new owners began to lay out in squares for a city, their New Haven (1638). God's word, as found in the Bible, they declared should be their only rule. "They feared God and kept their powder dry." Theophilus Eaton, a wealthy merchant,

New Haven.

\* Like Williams, Anne Hutchinson, William Coddington, and others were forced to leave Massachusetts because their opinions and teachings were at variance with the doctrines of the Massachusetts church. Williams welcomed them to Rhode Island. Coddington bought the island of Aquidneck, afterward called Rhode Island, from the Indians, and on it made a settlement, from which sprung the towns of Newport and Portsmouth. Another settlement was made at Warwick, about ten miles from Providence. After the death of her husband, Mrs. Hutchinson removed to New Netherland. The Dutch and Indians being then at war, her house was burned by the savages, and she met death in the flames or from a tomahawk.

68. Give an account of the New Haven settlement. Where is New Haven (map. p. 76)? Who was Theophilus Eaton?

was elected governor, and annually, for twenty years, till his death, he was honored in like manner (§ 77). Now there were three colonies in Connecticut (§ 98).

### MARYLAND.

69. The Puritans were not the only persons in England who were not allowed to have churches of their own. The Roman Catholics were no better treated. We wonder that while there was so much intolerance in England the same intolerance was not extended to all England's colonies. Our wonder is not abated when we learn that King Charles agreed to transfer a large domain north of the Potomac River to the keeping of Sir George Calvert, the first Lord Baltimore, who was a distinguished Catholic. The deed, written in Latin, was ready for the king's signature, when Lord Baltimore died. It was, however, issued to his son, Cecil (*ses'-il*), who, by law and custom, inherited the property as well as the title of his father (1632). By a clause in the deed he was bound to deliver two Indian arrows every year to the king, and a fifth of all the gold and silver mined in the colony.

Maryland's  
Charter.



LORD BALTIMORE (2d).

70. Nothing was said in the deed, or charter, by which the people of one religion were to be favored more than those of another. "Christianity, as professed by the Church of England, was protected, but beyond this, silence left room for equality in religious rights not less than in civil freedom." The proprietor, it was well

69. Who was Sir George Calvert? What did King James agree to do for him? What was his object? Why did he not receive the grant? Who did receive it?

70. What is said of the charter? What name was given to the province, and why?

known, was a zealous Catholic, and it was not to be supposed that persons of the same faith would not find a welcome in the new colony. The province was called Maryland, in honor of Queen Mary, as the people called Henrietta Maria, the king's wife.

71. The young Lord Baltimore faithfully carried out the plans of his father. In two ships, the Ark and the Dove, the first party of emigrants embarked. Among them were two brothers of the proprietor, one of whom, Leonard Calvert, was to be the governor of the colony. There were several Catholic missionaries, "twenty gentlemen of good fashion, and two or three hundred laborers." In February, 1634, they arrived in Chesapeake Bay. Ascending the Potomac, they came to an Indian village, nearly opposite to what was, more than a hundred years later, the home of George Washington, Mount Vernon. There they found an English trader, who was living with the Indians and could speak their language.

Maryland's First Settlement.
------------------------------------

72. Nearer the mouth of the river they found another Indian village which its inhabitants were about to abandon because of the hostility of a neighboring tribe. This favorable state of things made it easy "by presents of cloth and axes, of hoes and knives, to purchase the Indian right to the soil." The new-comers at once occupied the village, to which, with pious ceremony, they gave the name St. Mary's. A large wigwam was assigned to the missionaries, who consecrated it as a church. Thus we see that the first chapel in Maryland was built by Indians. No person was molested on account of his religion, and all were equally protected. "The Indian women taught the wives of the new-comers to make bread of maize; and the warriors of the tribe joined the huntsmen in the chase." The deserted fields of the Indians were planted with corn, and of the abundant crop in the

---

71. Give an account of the first emigration to Maryland (map 7).

72. Of the settlement of St. Mary's. Its church. Its location.

autumn, a cargo was sent to Massachusetts to be exchanged for fish.

73. Were the settlers happy? Their beautiful country, with its mild climate and fertile soil, and the friendly disposition of the Indians, gave them much cause for contentment; but at their very door, it may be said, was an enemy that vexed and annoyed them terribly. On one of their islands in Chesapeake Bay was a man named Clayborne (*klā'-burn*), "a rebel" they called him, who was carrying on a brisk trade with the Indians. He would not acknowledge the authority of Maryland's governor, for he had come first, and in his pocket he carried a license from the king, addressed to "our truly and well-beloved William Clayborne," which made him the owner of land in Maryland and gave him permission to trade.

Troubles  
with  
Clayborne.

74. The claims of Clayborne, it was evident, conflicted with the rights of Lord Baltimore, and the rebel was ordered to leave. He refused. One of his boats being seized, a skirmish followed in which two of his men were killed. He made his escape to England, but returning at the head of "a band of rebels," he drove Governor Calvert out of Maryland. Aided by Virginia's governor, Calvert expelled the mischief-maker, and peace was restored.

75. It was a peace of short duration. The liberal offers of Lord Baltimore drew many Puritans to the colony. Instead of showing gratitude, these, incited by Clayborne, turned against their host, gained control of public affairs, and deprived the Catholics of their rights. Not a single Catholic could vote or hold an office. A civil war ensued (1654). What would it profit us to continue the unhappy story? Do we ask why the king did not put a stop to the trouble? He, unfortunately, had trouble

Civil War.

73. What rights had Clayborne. How were they procured?

74. Give an account of the war that followed.

75. Give an account of the civil war. What was the fate of Charles I.? What followed in England?



enough of his own at home. Believing that the wishes of kings are above all law, he quarrelled with his Parliaments. He was driven from his throne by the Puritans, captured, tried on a charge of treason, pronounced guilty, and beheaded (1649). The Puritans, being now masters, would not let the dead king's son, the second Charles, occupy the throne. Oliver Cromwell, with the title of Lord Protector, became the head of the government. He was not a king in name, but he had all the authority of a king.

76. This revolution in England had its effect in the colonies. Large numbers of Episcopalians flocked to Virginia, where the people, with few exceptions, were "Churchmen," like themselves, or, as they were often called, Cavaliers. The Puritans were as often called Roundheads, a name given to them in derision because of their custom of wearing their hair cropped short. The Cavaliers were true royalists. They were ever faithful alike to king and Church. Cromwell, in their eyes, as well as in the eyes of the Catholics, was a rank rebel. That sturdy ruler was wise enough to keep his hands off Virginia, but not from Maryland.\*

#### NEW ENGLAND (See § 68).

77. Upon the Puritans of New England Cromwell smiled. They were his devoted friends, believing that "his battles were the battles of the Lord." In many ways did he favor them; and, while he ruled, they were, except in name, a free and independent

Union of New England Colonies.
--------------------------------------

\* With the exceptions of brief intervals of quietness, the civil war in Maryland lasted about seven years, when the authority of Lord Baltimore was fully restored. In 1691 King William made Sir Lionel Copley governor. Maryland was then said to be a "crown colony." Finally, in 1715, King George I. returned to the fifth Lord Baltimore all the rights which had been granted by Charles I. to the head of his line eighty-three years before.

76. How did the revolution affect Virginia and Maryland?

77. How did New England fare at the hands of Cromwell? What is said of the union of New England colonies? Why was not Rhode Island included? *Ans.* Because her settlers differed in religious opinions from those of the other colonies.

people. Four of their colonies, Massachusetts, Plymouth, Connecticut, and New Haven, had formed a union for protection against their Dutch neighbors on the west, the French on the east, and the Indians in their midst (1643). What now could there be to mar their peace and happiness?

78. Alas! a trouble appeared, lasting five years, in which they were greatly to blame. It makes a doleful page in the history of the Massachusetts colony. "Twelve converts of George Fox, the first Quaker in the world, came to the colony from England." They were not wise and moderate, like the good Quaker, William Penn, of whom we shall presently hear. They did things which neither he nor the great body of Quakers could approve. "Left to themselves," says Bancroft, "they appeared like a motley tribe of persons, half frantic, half insane." No doubt they

were "impelled by an earnest love for the souls of men, and by the pure desire to make known what they considered a revelation from Heaven. They declared that they were to be governed by God's



THE PURITAN. (FROM WARD'S STATUE IN CENTRAL PARK, NEW YORK.)

Persecution  
of the  
Quakers.

law, not by man's. But the Puritan rulers looked upon them as plotting the downfall of all government and religion. They were thrown into prison; they were beaten with many stripes, women as well as men; they were driven into the wilderness, and left to the tender mercies of wild beasts and Indians." Four of their number, including a woman, were hanged. In Virginia the Quakers were denounced as "liars and enemies of society." In Maryland they were treated as "vagabonds."

79. Meanwhile important events were passing in England. In 1660, Charles II. was proclaimed king amid great rejoicings, the event being known in English history as the Restoration. "Charles had many vices, but he would not permit blood to be shed under pretence of religion in any part of his dominions; and so ended the Quaker persecution, a mournful passage in the history of our forefathers" (§ 98).\*

VIRGINIA (See § 52).

80. In one respect at least the new king resembled his grandfather, James I. All the territory in America that had been discovered or explored by Englishmen he considered just as much his own property as his house or dog. This gives us the key to his policy in disposing of it. One of his worst acts was the granting to

Two Men own Virginia.
-----------------------------

\* The judges on whose verdict Charles I. was beheaded were called regicides. Three of them, to escape the vengeance of his son, Charles II., fled to America. The following is the story that was told of one of them, William Goffe, but recent investigations prove that it is not true. "The town of Hadley, Massachusetts, was alarmed by Indians in 1675, in the time of public worship. The people were in the utmost confusion. Suddenly an elderly person appeared in the midst of them. In his mien and dress he differed from the rest of the people. He not only encouraged them to defend themselves, but he put himself at their head, led them on to encounter the enemy, who by this means were repulsed. As suddenly, the deliverer of Hadley disappeared."—*Hutchinson's Hist. of Massachusetts*.

79. What change took place, and how was it brought about?

80. What grant did Charles II. make of Virginia?

two of his favorites "all the land and water" known as Virginia, to be held by them for thirty-one years, at a yearly rent of forty shillings. By a scratch of the royal pen, Virginia, which had been faithful to Charles while he was a wanderer in Europe, was conveyed by him to two great lords (1673).

81. What an outcry this wrong did raise among the forty thousand inhabitants of the colony! Just then they were not in a humor to let it pass, for other wrongs were weighing upon them. They were not allowed to send their tobacco to the best markets of Europe.

Bacon's Rebellion.
-----------------------

The right to vote was taken from all except the few property holders. Their governor, Berkeley, would make no defence against threatened attacks from Indians. This last act, the lavish grant of the profligate king, produced great excitement in the colony.

82. The people rebelled. Twice in former years the Indians had surprised the colonists, and with tomahawk and fire had laid waste the outlying plantations (1622, 1644). The people said they would not be so caught again. The central figure of the uprising was a young man named Nathaniel Bacon. He was brave and eloquent, and soon became so popular that he was called the "Darling of the people's hopes and desires." At the head of a body of the people, he went against the Indians and defeated them with dreadful slaughter. His work was not yet done. Virginia's unjust laws, he said, must be repealed. Berkeley proclaimed him to be a rebel, and set about to collect a force to destroy him. With a rabble, consisting of servants, slaves, and sailors, Berkeley fortified himself at Jamestown, but on the approach of Bacon, his cowardly crew deserted him, and, in the darkness of night, he effected his escape. Next morn-

---

81. What troubles at that time were upon Virginians?

82. Give an account of the Bacon Rebellion. What is there now of the old Jamestown settlement (note, next page)?

ing the capital of Virginia was in the hands of the rebels. It was resolved to burn it, that it might not afford shelter to the "rogues," as Berkeley and his adherents were called. Not a house was spared, not even the little church at whose font Pocahontas had received the name Rebecca (1676).\*

83. Word came to Bacon that a force was on its way to attack him. Leaving the smoking ruins, he hastened to meet it. But there was no fighting. The loyalists deserted their commander and joined the rebels. In the midst of his success, Bacon was taken sick, and died. His followers lost heart, and many were captured and hanged. "Gibbets rose and made the wayfarer shudder." When the king heard of these vengeful doings of Berkeley, he exclaimed: "That old fool has taken away more lives in that naked country than I have for the murder of my father!" Hated in Virginia, Berkeley, by command of his royal master, returned to England. There, rebuked by people and king, he mourned, and died. Bacon's Rebellion, as history names it, had its beginning and end within about four months of 1676, just a hundred years before a greater rebellion was proclaimed in the city of Philadelphia (p. 161).

#### NEW YORK AND NEW JERSEY (See § 41).

84. Another of the king's wrong-doings was his gift of New Netherland to his brother, the Duke of York. The Dutch were in rightful possession of the country, and Holland was then at peace with England. These facts, however, had no weight with the king.

\* "Nothing remains of this famous settlement but the ruins of the church tower covered with ivy, and some old tombstones. The tower is crumbling year by year, and the roots of trees have cracked the slabs, making great rifts across the names on them. The place is desolate, with its washing waves and flitting sea-foam. The river encroaches year by year, and the ground occupied by the original huts is already submerged."—*Cooke's Hist. of the Virginia People.*

83. How was the rebellion ended? What is said of Berkeley?

84. Of what wrong was the king guilty respecting New Netherland?

He sent a fleet to take possession of the territory for his brother. The vessels arrived in the harbor of New Amsterdam; and Nicolls, the duke's agent, sent a letter to Governor Stuyvesant, demanding the surrender of all the country under his rule. (Read note 6, Appendix, p. 43.)

85. The brave old soldier, faithful to his trust, would not yield. He would stand a siege. The Dutch settlers, however, were not willing to have their houses destroyed by



NEW AMSTERDAM IN 1665.

the ships' guns. The English residents, of whom there were many, forgetting past favors, said that they would help the invaders. The sturdy governor, in his anger, tore Nicolls's letter to pieces, and threw the fragments on the floor, but he was powerless. In spite of his protest, the surrender was made. With this change of masters, New Amsterdam, in compliment to the Duke of York, was called New York; and Fort Orange was called Albany, from one of the duke's titles (1664). New York had then a population of

85. State how the wrong was carried out. What changes of names were made? When was that?

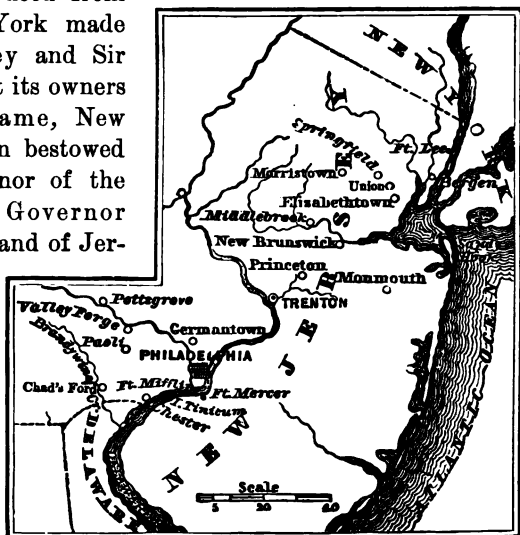
fifteen hundred persons, who spoke eighteen different languages. A few of the Dutch colonists returned to Holland.

86. In the part of the surrendered territory now New Jersey, there were few inhabitants. Less than a dozen Swedish farmers, and a small number of Dutch and Quaker families, were all. By permission of Nicolls, a body of Puritans, who had first made their home in Massachusetts and then on Long Island, began the settlement of Elizabethtown, now the city of Elizabeth (1664). New Jersey, in its colonial short clothes, often changed its guardians. A deed from the Duke of York made Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret its owners (1664). Its name, New Jersey, was then bestowed upon it in honor of the latter, who, as Governor of the little island of Jersey in the English Channel, had defended it valiantly for the king's father, Charles I., after that monarch had been driven

from his throne. Next, Berkeley sold his interest to two Quakers (1673). Again, but only for a few months, while England and Holland were at war, the Dutch were in possession of New York and New Jersey (1673-4).

86. State how, when, and where New Jersey was settled. Give the history of the several New Jersey ownerships. Where is the city of Elizabeth (map 2) ?

New Jersey's  
Ownerships.



87. English proprietors divided the Jersey region into East Jersey and West Jersey. By purchase, in 1682, William Penn and eleven other Quakers became the owners of the two Jerseys. Experience proved that there were too many masters. Difficulties arose, twenty years passed, when, there being no prospect that the trouble would cease, the proprietors surrendered their rights to the crown (1702). During the next thirty-six years the province had the same governors as New York, though it had its own assemblies. Its last governor under kingly authority was William Franklin, son of the patriot and philosopher, Benjamin Franklin (§ 101).\*

#### NORTH AND SOUTH CAROLINA.

88. King Charles's grant of New York to his brother was not the last of his wrong acts. To eight men, dukes, earls, and lords, he gave a vast belt of territory five hundred miles wide, its eastern end being washed by the Atlantic, its western by the Pacific (1663-5). Within the belt was the land now belonging to North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia. Virginia complained that a large strip of her domain by this gift was taken from her. A greater wrong was done to Spain, inas-

Grants to Clarendon and Others.
---------------------------------------

\* "In 1696, Captain Kidd, commanding an armed ship, sailed from New York in search of piratical vessels in the Indian seas. Not succeeding in taking pirate ships, he himself became a pirate, and his captures soon made his name a terror to honest merchantmen. A decoy letter induced him to visit Boston, where he was arrested."—*Schuyler's Colonial New York*.

On the narrative of Kidd's exploits are founded Poe's ingenious story of the *Gold Bug*, and the once popular song, "My name was Captain Kidd, when I sailed, when I sailed." Kidd was taken to England, and illegally tried. He declared that his men forced him to commit piracy. The verdict was against him, and he, with nine of his crew, was hanged. The wonderful tales of his treasures, hidden on the American coast, have gone from lip to lip from that day to this.

87. What division was made of New Jersey? What did William Penn have to do with New Jersey? Give the further history of the province.

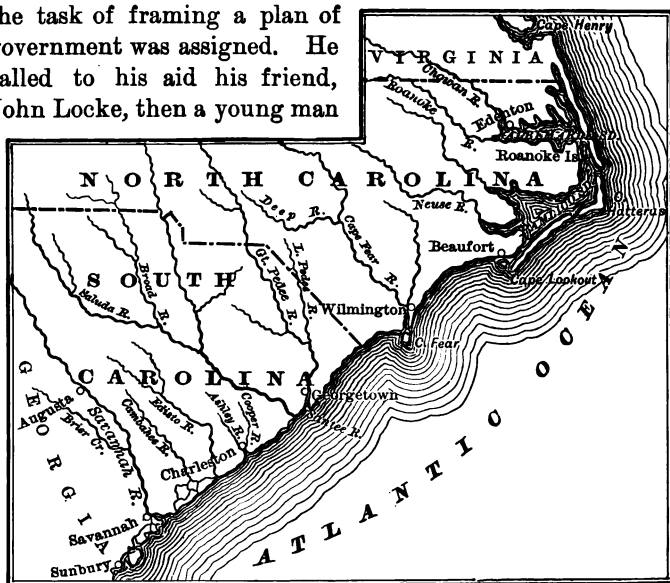
88. What grant was made to Clarendon and others? What territory was within the grant? What complaint was made? What wrong was done to Spain?



much as the grant covered half of Florida, including the town of St. Augustine. A crop of trouble with Spain was the consequence (§ 4, § 112 ; and note 4, App., p. 42).

89. Great expectations were formed for the new province. Its proprietors, one of whom was the historian Clarendon, believed that they could avoid the rocks on which most of the governments of the past had been wrecked. To one of their number, Lord Ashley Cooper, afterward celebrated as Earl of Shaftesbury, the task of framing a plan of government was assigned. He called to his aid his friend, John Locke, then a young man

The  
Grand Model.



unknown to the world, but who before long became the most eminent philosopher of his time.

90. The plan called the "Grand Model" was completed, and, though prepared by two wise men, it proved to be a

89. What did Ashley Cooper have to do with the early government for Carolina? Who was John Locke?

90. Give the history of the Grand Model. Who went to Carolina?

very unwise scheme. It was full of grand intentions, but sadly at fault in its aim to meet the wants of an infant colony. Three colonies were planted in the Carolinas. One, on the Chowan River, was the Albemarle County Colony (1663). One, near the present city of Wilmington, was the Clarendon County Colony (1665). The third, on the Ashley River, was the Carteret County Colony (1670). These were the work of Protestants from Virginia who would not obey the Church-of-England rule there (§ 27), of Presbyterians from Scotland, of Quakers from England, and of Huguenots from France. In a few years the colony on the Ashley was removed to a better place. It was the beginning of the busy city of Charleston, the metropolis of South Carolina (1680). There the first Church of the Huguenots in the province was built. "On every Lord's day, its worshippers gathered from their plantations, and, taking advantage of the ebb and flow of the tide, the parents with their children might be seen making their way in light skiffs to the flourishing village." Though at no time was it possible to put the "Grand Model" fully and fairly into effect, it continued to be the law of the land nearly a quarter of a century. North Carolina and South Carolina did not begin their separate existence before 1729. Then King George II. bought the proprietors' rights, and placed a governor over each colony.

#### PENNSYLVANIA AND DELAWARE.

91. There was one act of the king from which, though little to his credit, much good resulted. He conveyed to William Penn, whose name has already been introduced into this history, a large tract of land lying west of the Delaware River (1681). Penn's father had spent the most of his life on war ships, had fairly

Grant to William Penn.
------------------------------

---

91. What extensive grant was made to William Penn? Give the particulars.

earned the rank of admiral, and in battle had won Jamaica for his king. So, we see, he was not a Quaker. Quakers do



WILLIAM PENN.

not fight. At his death he left a claim against his government of about \$80,000. This was for services for which he had not been paid. The amount we would not consider large for a great king to pay, but it was more than the profligate Charles, ever needing money, could spare. He could pay the debt in land easier than in money, and, fortunately for him as well as America, Penn preferred the

land. We now see how the great Quaker acquired the tract to which we have alluded. As a token of his devotion to the king, Penn agreed to pay two beaver skins every year to his majesty.

92. Penn's domain being covered with forests, he decided that it should be called *Sylvania*. The king, wishing to honor the memory of his late friend, the admiral, wrote *Penn* before the word. The Quaker tried to have the name changed, even offering twenty guineas to the king's secretary to influence his master to agree to the request. He was afraid that people would think he was vain, so he said, but Charles could not be moved. About this time, as we have seen, Penn became one of the owners of New Jersey (§ 87). By conveyance from the Duke of York, he also became the owner of Delaware (1682). This latter, we remember, was a part of the king's gift to the Duke nearly twenty years before (§ 84). (Read note 8, Appendix, p. 44.)

---

92. What is said of the name given to the province? In what other territory was Penn interested as owner?

93. Besides Swedes and Dutch, there were a few English families already in Pennsylvania. To all Penn sent word that they should "live free under laws of their own making." In the summer of 1681 three ships with emigrants from England were sent to begin the colony.\* Next year twenty-three ships were sent; and when Penn landed at New Castle, Delaware, there were already more than two thousand inhabitants, other than Indians, in Pennsylvania and Delaware (1682).

Pennsylvania,  
first  
Settlement.

94. Penn loved to do good. The Quakers were oppressed in England, and he, like Fox and others, had been fined and imprisoned. They were not treated with quite so much harshness as formerly, yet they did not have the liberty to which all men are entitled. Now, here in America, there was room, not for the Quakers only, for Penn said, "Here will I build a free colony for all mankind."

95. On the west bank of the Delaware a stone monument marks the spot where, according to tradition, a famous treaty was made. Beneath the wide-spreading branches of a large elm, "with the sun, the river, and the forest for witnesses," Penn met the Indians. His message to them was of "peace and love. We meet," said he, "on the broad pathway of good faith and good will. I will not call you children, for parents sometimes chide their children too severely; nor brothers only, for brothers differ. The friendship between you and me I will not compare to a chain, for that the rain might rust, or

Treaty  
with the  
Indians.

\* "The lodgings of some of these settlers were at first in the woods. A chosen tree was frequently all the shelter they had against the inclemency of the weather. Their next coverings were either caves in the earth, or such huts as could be most expeditiously put up till better houses were built."—*Proud's Hist. of Pennsylvania.*

93. Who were in his domain before Penn went there? What word did he send to them? At what place and when did he land? How is Wilmington located (map 2)?

94. What was Penn's object in planting this colony?

95. Repeat the speech that, it is said, Penn made to the Indians.

the falling tree might break. We are the same as if one man's body were to be divided into two parts. We are all one flesh and blood."

96. To this speech, translated into their language, the Indians listened, so says the tradition, in unbroken silence.



TREATY MONUMENT.

Then, after consulting among themselves, they handed to Penn a belt of wampum, saying: "We will live in love with William Penn and his children as long as the moon and the sun shall endure." Thus, it is recorded, this wonderful treaty of peace and friendship was made. It was written only on the heart. It was never sworn to and never broken. "While

Penn lived not a drop of Quaker blood was shed by an Indian."

97. A little to the south of this cherished spot, a city was laid out, which, said Penn, "shall be called Philadelphia, a name that means brotherly love" (1682). It was the birthplace of American Independence. Emigrants flocked to it from Holland and Germany, as well as from England and Wales. Those from England being mostly Quakers, or, as they called themselves, Friends, their city of refuge became widely and happily known as the Quaker City. The first band of Germans came from the

Founding  
of  
Philadelphia.

98. Relate how the speech was received. What were the consequences of Penn's just treatment of the Indians?

99. Where is Philadelphia (map 2)? State what you can of its early history. Of Germantown. What is Germantown now?

valley of the Rhine. They established themselves on the fertile hillsides and in the valleys not far away, and thus gave birth to Germantown, now a part of Penn's great city, Philadelphia. Though Penn held a grant of the land from the king, he believed that the Indians were its true owners, and not an acre should he call his own till he had made a fair purchase of it from the natives.

### NEW ENGLAND (See § 79).

98. We have seen how New Netherland was taken from the Dutch and given to the Duke of York (§ 84). The gift included more than half of the present State of Connecticut. The king, unmindful of what he had then done, united all the towns of Connecticut under one charter (1662). This, to be sure, was what some good men had asked for, and it proved a blessing for which the people long after had reason to rejoice. To Rhode Island, also, was given a new charter, liberal like Connecticut's (1663). These two gifts must be recorded to the credit of the king, though unworthy motives were attributed to him.

New Charters for  
Connecticut  
and  
Rhode Island.

99. In 1685, Charles II. died. It cannot be said that his death was mourned, except by his court associates, who were as immoral as himself. We get an idea of his character from the remark made by a distinguished Frenchman, that "he never said a foolish thing nor ever did a wise one." He was succeeded by his brother, that Duke of York on whom he had bestowed so many favors. The reign of this new king, James II., was short, but it was long enough to send consternation into all the English colonies. His favorite, Edmund Andros, he knighted, and sent across the ocean to be governor of all New England (1686). Glittering

Andros,  
Governor of  
New England.

98. When and how were the Connecticut colonies united? How many colonies were there in Connecticut (§ 80, 68)? Name the three colonies. What is said of the Rhode Island charter?

99. Who succeeded Charles II. on the throne? What favors were extended to Andros? What was done respecting the colony charter?

in scarlet and lace, Sir Edmund arrived at Boston. "The king had given such powers to him that there was now no liberty nor law in the colonies over which he ruled." Their charters he declared void, and the people had no voice whatever in the government.\* "Deeds from Indians," said he, "are of no more value than the scratch of a bear's paw."

100. "This sort of government was no better than an absolute despotism. While these things were going on in America, James had so misgoverned the people of England that they sent over to Holland for the Prince of Orange, who had married James's daughter, and was therefore considered to have a claim to the throne. On his arrival in England, the prince was proclaimed king with the title of William III. (1689). Poor King James made his escape to France."

101. Andros, not content with ruling New England, reached out to govern New York and New Jersey, as the king had decreed. All the country from the St. Croix (*kroi*) to the Delaware, with Boston as the capital, was under his rule; but when the news of the revolution in England was received in Boston, his sway was brought to a sudden end. "The people rose in their strength, overthrew his government, and cast him into

King William's  
War.

\* In Hartford, up to 1856, stood a grand old tree known as the Charter Oak. How did it get that name? In 1687, Andros appeared before the Connecticut Assembly in that city, and demanded the colony's charter. And now again we invoke tradition: "The charter was brought in and laid upon the table. In an instant the lights were extinguished, and the room was wrapped in total darkness. Not a word was spoken. The candles were relighted, but, strange to say, the charter had disappeared. Sir Edmund looked in every nook and corner for it, but the search was in vain. Captain Wade-worth had seized the precious charter. Secretly he flew with it to the friendly tree, afterward known as the Charter Oak, and deposited it in the hollow of its trunk."—*Hollister's History of Connecticut*.

100. How was King James's rule in England brought to an end? By whom was he succeeded? When was that?

101. What further can you say of Andros? What mistake did the French king make?

prison." A great commotion followed in New York,\* and a greater one in Europe, for the French king, Louis XIV., bent upon aiding James to recover his lost throne, made war upon England (1689).

102. The contest extended to North America, where it was waged for territory and the fisheries. The northern settlements of New York and New England were sufferers. Terrible blows were inflicted upon them by bands of French and Indians from Canada. Schenectady (*ske-nek'-ta-de*), a Dutch village on the Mohawk, was one of the victims. Its cluster of homes was surrounded by a palisade, but when the attack was made, the gates were open and unguarded, and the inhabitants were in deep sleep. The invaders entered, raised the terrible war-whoop, broke open doors, set fire to houses, and as the dazed inhabitants rushed from their beds, cut them down with the merciless tomahawk. Of the villagers, sixty were massacred, some were taken prisoners, the rest, half-naked, fled through a driving snow-storm to Albany, seventeen miles away (1690). Seven years later, a band of Indians appeared before Haverhill (*hav'-er-il*), about thirty miles from Boston. "The savages raised a shout near the house of Hannah Dustin. Her husband hurried home from the field, but too late to provide for her rescue. They burned his house, and dashed his infant against a tree. After days of weary marching, Mrs. Dustin and her nurse, with a boy from Worcester (*woos'-ter*), find themselves on an island in

\* Jacob Leisler (*lee'-ler*), supported by all the inhabitants of the town, except the aristocratic class, took possession of the fort, and held it in the name of the new king, William, till the arrival of Sloughter (*slow'-ter*), with a commission as governor, to whom he at once surrendered his authority. This, however, would not satisfy Leisler's enemies. He was tried on a charge of treason, and condemned to be hanged. The profligate Sloughter, while drunk at a feast, was induced to sign the death-warrant, and next day the unjust sentence was carried out (1691).—*Hildreth*.

102. What were the objects of the war in North America? Give an account of the attack upon Schenectady. Of Mrs. Dustin's escape. Of the expedition against Nova Scotia. Result of the war.



the Merrimac, in a wigwam occupied by two Indian families. The mother plans escape. At night, while the household slumbers, the captives, two women and a boy, each with a tomahawk, strike vigorously and fleetly; and, of the twelve sleepers, ten lie dead. Of one squaw, the wound was not mortal. One child was spared. In a canoe, the three strikers for freedom descend the river to Haverhill, astonishing their friends by their escape, and filling the land with wonder at their daring deed." Massachusetts, in hearty sympathy with King William, fitted out an expedition against the French province of Acadia (§ 14). Port Royal was captured, but, at the end of the war, was returned to France (1697, § 106).

**103.** It was during the reign of this king that the witchcraft delusion had its craze in Massachusetts. The belief in witchcraft is older than the Bible. Thousands of supposed witches were put to death in the old world before Columbus discovered America. One of the most learned judges of England condemned two poor women as witches, and they were hanged. The law of Massachusetts against witchcraft was word for word like the English law. Under it, several persons were executed before 1692. That year gave to history the Salem Witchcraft. "The frenzy," said Hawthorne, "originated in the wicked acts of two children, a daughter and niece of a clergyman. They complained of being pinched, and pricked with pins, and otherwise tormented by the shapes of men and women who were supposed to have power to haunt them invisibly. Often, in the midst of friends, they would pretend to be seized with strange convulsions, when they would cry out that the witches were afflicting them."

**104.** "It had been the custom of the inhabitants in all

---

**103.** What craze broke out in Massachusetts during King William's reign? How did it begin? What can you state of the delusion in previous times?

**104.** Give the full history of the Salem Witchcraft delusion.

The Salem  
Witchcraft.

matters of doubt and difficulty to look to their ministers for counsel. So they did now. But, unfortunately, the ministers and wise men were more deluded than the illiterate people." Cotton Math'er, a very learned clergyman, was among the deceived. A number of persons were accused of the crime of witchcraft, and, to escape torture, confessed their guilt. More than fifty were in this way compelled to make such a confession; and twenty persons were put to death, many others being sent to prison. This dreadful delusion lasted more than six months; and it was not until some of the magistrates themselves, and even the governor's wife, were accused, that the people began to see how much they had been deceived. All the accused were then set at liberty, and some of the most active in bringing them to punishment confessed that they had been imposed upon or had sworn falsely.\*

105. King William was never popular with the people of

---

\* The other colonies had laws against witchcraft, but not much attention was given to them. In Virginia there was one notable case which had rather a ludicrous ending. "A judge directed that the proper tests should be applied to a certain woman to ascertain whether she was a witch or not. So the tests were duly applied by a jury of old women, and these hags, having found the ambiguous verdict that *she was not like them*, the poor woman was put into water to drown, but she disappointed them by swimming. Thereat the judge shook his wise head, and ordered her to be sent to jail."—*Cooke's People of Virginia*.

"It is well known that no exclusive reproach can with justice be cast upon any part of New England on account of a delusion which equally prevailed in the most enlightened countries of Europe, and received the countenance of the most learned and intelligent men and upright magistrates. In contemplating this sorrowful page in the history of our ancestors, we must bear in mind that, as I have already intimated, no peculiar reproach attaches to them. They acted upon principles which all professed, and in which the sincere in all parts of Christendom reposed an undoubting faith."—*Hawthorne*.

---

105. What is said of Queen Anne? Queen Anne's War? Its benefit to England? Changes in names?

England. His manner was cold and unsympathetic. He said little and had no fondness for pleasure. Nobody, however, denied him great qualities, both as a leader in war and ruler in peace. His death occurred in 1702. As his wife was already dead, her sister Anne (*an*), popularly known as Good Queen Anne, was raised to the throne. The reign of this queen was almost wholly occupied with what is known in history as the War of the Spanish Succession. The colonists called it Queen Anne's War. It was a contest in which England, Germany, and Holland united to prevent the French king, Louis XIV., from gaining control in Spain. At its close (1713), England was in possession of Gibraltar and Acadia (§ 123).

Queen Anne's  
War.

106. We see that some of the fighting was in America. The Iroquois, at peace with the French and the English, protected New York. New England, as in King William's War, suffered. The snow lay four feet deep when a war party of French and Indians, from Canada, attacked Deerfield, Massachusetts (1704). The village was set on fire, and all but the church and one dwelling was consumed. Of the inhabitants, but few escaped. Forty-seven were killed. One hundred and twelve, including the minister, Mr. Williams, and his family, were made captives. In the early morning the war party began its return to Canada. If a young child wept from fatigue, or a woman tottered from anguish, the tomahawk stilled complaint. The strength of Mrs. Williams failed. One blow ended her sorrows. In Canada, no entreaties, no offers of ransom could rescue her youngest daughter, then seven years old. She became the wife of an Indian chief. When, after long years, she visited her friends at Deerfield, she appeared in an Indian dress. A whole village assembled to pray for her deliverance, but she would make only a short sojourn. "She returned

to the fires of her wigwam, and to the love of her children." \*

### GEORGIA.

107. On the death of Queen Anne, the crown was placed upon the head of George I., whose mother was a granddaughter of James I. (1714). This king was born in Germany, was fifty-four years of age when he began to reign, and was so ignorant of the English language that he could not make known his simplest wants in it. At his death, his son, also born in Germany, a dull and conceited little despot, became king as George II. (1727).

Queen Anne's  
Successor.

108. The laws of England in those days were very severe against debtors. If a man was not able to pay his debts, he could be thrown into prison, and kept there till they were paid or till death set him free. Those of us who have read Dickens's touching story of *Little Dorrit* get a glimpse of the miseries which the unfortunate debtor suffered in the old London prison. An English writer, in alluding to the subject, said: "A more horrible system of oppression and cruelty never existed in any civilized country."

Debtor Laws  
of  
England.

109. There was one man in England, whose name, James Oglethorpe, ought to be spoken with gratitude by every hater of oppression. He dragged to the light the terrible abuses to

---

\* For about thirty years after Queen Anne's War the colonists were not disturbed by any war of European origin. In 1744, France and England went to war again, and the colonists were drawn into it. As the conflict broke out during the reign of George II., it is called King George's War. Louisburg was captured by New England troops aided by an English fleet, but was returned to the French at the close of the war (1748).

---

107. Who came to the throne next after Queen Anne? What is said of him? Who was his successor on the throne?

108. What was then England's condition respecting debtor laws?

109. Who was General Oglethorpe? What was his great work?

which the debtor laws were put; and, aided by other good men, provided a home in America where those whose only crime was poverty could be placed upon their feet, and given a chance to take care of themselves.

James  
Oglethorpe.

110. In 1732, the blessed year that gave George Washington, of Virginia, to the world, Oglethorpe and others, twenty-one in all, procured from the king a grant of the unoccupied lands south of South Carolina. The grant, as stated, was in "trust for the poor." In that sunny region, grapes for wine could be grown with little care, and silk enough could be produced to clothe all the

Settlement  
of  
Georgia.



JAMES E. OGLETHORPE.

high-born English ladies in rich dresses, so it was believed. Parliament voted £10,000 to start the good work, and men gave of their wealth. Oglethorpe, it may be said, gave himself. With more than a hundred emigrants, he led the way. On the bluff of a large river the streets for a city were carefully laid out, numerous places being left for public parks. To this refuge spot was given the name Savannah.

Upon the province was bestowed the name Georgia, in honor of the king (1733).

111. The colony increased rapidly by volunteer emigrants. There came a body of Protestants from beyond the distant Alps, and a congregation, with their pastor, from the High-

110. What grant did Oglethorpe and others receive? When was Washington born? What glowing expectations of Georgia were formed? Give the early history of Savannah. How is Savannah situated (map 2)? Why was Georgia so called?

111. What emigrants came to Georgia? What clergymen? State all you can of Whitefield. Of John and Charles Wesley.

lands of Scotland. These, and others like them, enterprising and industrious, formed villages; but no such good report could be told of those who had been taken by the hand out of the London prisons. They were lazy, and continued to depend upon Oglethorpe and his associate trustees for their daily bread. Two young clergymen, John and Charles Wesley, famous afterward as founders of the sect of Methodists, tarried two years in the colony. Soon after their departure, their friend, George Whitefield (*hwit'-feeld*), hardly less famous in the Methodist Church, made his first of seven visits to America. In 1739 he came to found a home for orphans near Savannah. He had collected money for it in Europe, and was now about to collect more for it in the colonies. During his seven visits, he made seven tours, extending his labors from Georgia to Maine. Fifty men on horses escorted him into Philadelphia. He preached in the open air, with nothing but the trees to shelter him. His friend, Benjamin Franklin, then past thirty, listened to him with admiration, for his eloquence was wonderful. Hearers flocked around him in great crowds wherever he went. One gathering on Boston Common consisted of not less than twenty thousand persons. His grave is in Massachusetts, but his monument, is it not the Orphan Asylum of Georgia?

112. It was not to be expected that the Spaniards would quietly allow the territory claimed by them to be occupied by others. Georgia, they said, was theirs. It was part of their Florida. They had driven the Huguenots away (§ 4), and now they undertook to drive Oglethorpe away, but, being a good soldier, he defeated and foiled them (1743). For twenty years the trustees of Georgia were faithful to their trust. Were their labors properly rewarded? Were the poor who had found refuge in the colony industrious and contented? It is sad to know they were not. They constantly murmured, saying they were "in exile." Weary and discour-

aged, the trustees surrendered their trust to the king, and Georgia became a royal province (1752). (Note 4, App., p. 42.)

### CLAIMS TO TERRITORY.

113. We see that Spain, France, and England were striving to occupy North America. Spain, pointing to what had been achieved by Columbus, De Leon, Balboa, Cortes, De Soto, and others who had spied out the new lands, claimed all the southern part as well as most of the region along the Pacific slope. France claimed the valleys of the St. Lawrence and Mississippi, together with the country about the Gulf of St. Lawrence, her title resting

Spanish.

not only on the discoveries and explorations of Champlain, Marquette, La Salle, and others, but also on the more important fact that she was in actual possession of what she claimed. "Not a fountain bubbled on the west of the Alleghanies but was claimed as being within the French empire. Every brook that flowed to the Ohio was French water." England's claim, based upon the discoveries and explorations of the Cabots, Gosnold, Smith, and

French.

others, included all the heart of North America from ocean to ocean. Her title to the Pacific region had little else to back it than the king-crowning farce in which Francis Drake was the central figure (p. 34). She had wiped out the Dutch claim to New Netherland, and was now in the undisputed possession of the region east of the Alleghany Mountains.

English.

### THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR.

114. While England was planting colonies on the east side of North America, France was strengthening her hold upon

113. State fully what claims to territory were made and on what grounds. Explain how one claim overlapped another. What changes in name were made? *Ans.* The part of Acadia in possession of the English was called Nova Scotia, and Port Royal was changed to Annapolis in honor of Queen Anne (map 2).

114. Describe the efforts of the French to occupy the regions claimed by them.

the interior. "Neither heat nor cold, neither ice nor snow, neither hunger nor thirst, nor the attacks of savage foes could deter the French. They penetrated forests into which the savage had never dared to go. They explored rivers down which no Indian had ever paddled. They founded missionary stations, they built churches, they laid out towns, they put up forts." They connected the two great highways, the St. Lawrence and the Mississippi, by a chain of military posts.

Enterprise  
of the  
French.

115. Where, between the claims of France and England, did the line of separation run? Where did England's territory end and France's begin? A war took place to decide the question, but it decided much more, as we shall see. Said an old Indian: "The French claim all the land on one side of the Ohio, the English claim all on the other side. Now, where is the Indian's land?" Traders from Virginia, who had ventured beyond the Alleghany Mountains, brought back favorable accounts of the country they had seen. These reports stirred a number of fur dealers and land speculators to form a partnership, called the Ohio Company, for the purpose of trading with the Indians and forming settlements in the new region. A grant of land was easily obtained from the king.

The Ohio  
Company.

116. The French complained. The land, they said, belonged to them. In reply, the English asserted that the Six Nations of Indians, the Iroquois, were the real owners (§ 5, p. 14). These fierce tribes had united under one confederacy, and, to keep their lands from the French, had placed them under the protection of the English.\* At first there were only five tribes. A sixth, the Tuscaroras, was added in 1715. The Iroquois roamed

The  
Iroquois.

\* This gave the English an excuse for laying claim as protectors to "every mountain, forest, or prairie where an Iroquois had taken a scalp."

115. What is said of the rival claims? How did the Indians state the case? Who made up the Ohio Company? What was their object?

116. Who were the Iroquois? State all you can of them. Name the six tribes or nations (map 1). Give an account of the Tuscaroras (note 9, Appendix, p. 44).



as conquerors from Massachusetts Bay to the Mississippi, from the great lakes to Georgia. The English were not so particular at other times to say that the Indians owned the land. Just now, however, it suited their purpose to say so.\*

117. Benjamin Franklin, living in Philadelphia, learned that French soldiers had captured English traders, and were building forts on the lands of the Ohio Company. He sent the information to Governor Dinwiddie, of Virginia. Like report reaching the governor from other sources, he resolved to send a letter to the nearest French post, ordering the invaders to leave the country. As bearer of this important message, he selected a young man, twenty-one years of age, a major in the militia, and a land surveyor. His name was George Washington. After a weary journey of five hundred miles, the youthful envoy reached a fort, situated a few miles south of Lake Erie. He met with a cordial reception, but, on one pretext or another, was detained several days. At length, with the French commander's letter of reply in his pack, he set out on his return homeward. His progress was slow. Snow covered the ground and the cold was intense. He determined to go faster. Leaving his tired horses in good care to follow after him, he

Washington's  
Mission.

\* In this French and Indian War and in the war of the colonists for independence, the Iroquois were the willing allies of the English. See from what a small beginning this alliance was brought about. "It was an evil hour for the French when Champlain, impelled by his own adventurous spirit, departed from the hamlet of Quebec to follow a war party of Algonquins against their hated enemy, the Iroquois (§ 32). . . . Day dawned and the fight began (1609). When Champlain stood full in sight before the Iroquois, with his strange attire, his shining breastplate and features unlike their own, when they saw the flash of his gun, and beheld two of their chiefs fall dead, they could not contain their terror, but fled for shelter in the depths of the wood. They recovered from their terror, but they never forgave the injury."—*Parkman's Conspiracy of Pontiac*.

117. What information did Franklin send to Virginia's governor? What did it prompt the governor to do? Whom did the governor send? Relate the particulars of Washington's journey.

made a new start. His pack, containing his papers and provisions, was strapped to his shoulders, a gun was in his hand, and one companion was at his side. At an Indian town a guide was engaged, who, instead of bow and arrows, carried a French gun. His intention was to kill both travelers. An opportunity, as he thought, occurring, the treacherous Indian



WASHINGTON AS A LAND SURVEYOR. (See § 117.)

fired, but neither Washington nor his companion was hurt. They seized their wily foe, took the gun from him, and humanely dismissed him.

118. The Alleghany River being reached, it was found full of floating ice. How could the two men cross? With difficulty they constructed a raft, their only tool being a hatchet. On this frail structure they shoved out into the stream. A large cake of ice coming suddenly against the pole in Washington's hand, he was jerked into the water. With the help of his companion, he succeeded in getting to an island. Here, exposed to a bitter cold, the two men spent the long night on a bed of snow. When morning dawned, the river was so frozen as to enable them to get to the desired shore, and to continue their journey homeward.

119. The reply of the French commander was evasive, evidently with the intention of gaining time for hostile preparations. To thwart the French, workmen were sent to build a fort at the junction of the Alleghany and Monongahela rivers, where the flourishing city of Pittsburgh now stands. Washington, commanding a small body of soldiers, was dispatched some days after to protect the works, but on his march was met by the workmen. They were returning from the unfinished fort, having been driven from it by French soldiers. Soon Washington was advised that a body of thirty men or more was advancing against him. He halted at a place called the Great Meadows. An Indian brought word that the hostile force was near, concealed among rocks. "By the rules of wilderness warfare, a party that skulks and hides is an enemy." It was plain to Washington that if he did not attack at once, he would himself be attacked. At the head of about forty men, including some Indians, he sallied forth. The contest was sharp and brief. Ten of the enemy were killed; the rest, except one man who escaped, were made

Washington's First Military Expedition.
---

---

118. Relate Washington's experience in getting across the Alleghany River.

119. What reply did the French commander make? What opposing measure was resolved upon? What part was assigned to Washington? Why did he not perform it? Tell all you can of Washington's first battle (see map 2).

prisoners (May 28th, 1754). "This obscure skirmish," says Parkman, "began the war that set the world on fire."

120. The French, having gained possession of the fort which the Ohio Company had begun, enlarged and completed it. In honor of their governor of Canada, the Marquis Duquesne (*dukain*), they named it Fort Duquesne. Its commander, fired with feelings of revenge, sent a large force against Washington. That youthful and fearless commander had thrown up a log defence, which, because of his great need of food during its construction, he called Fort Necessity. Here he was attacked by seven hundred French and Indians, and, during ten hours, while a fierce rain-storm prevailed, he made a brave defence. After midnight, he agreed to terms of capitulation, which allowed him to return to Virginia with his men and rifles (July 4, 1754).

121. England sent General Braddock to America. France sent the Baron Dieskau (*de-es-ko'*). Braddock was a routine soldier. He believed that well-dressed troops, who could go through all the drill-movements laid down in books, were more than a match for ten times as many "irregulars." He had a poor opinion of the courage and ability of the Virginians; nevertheless he invited Washington to join his staff, and the invitation was accepted.

Braddock's Expedition.
---------------------------

122. With twelve hundred chosen men, in full uniform and perfect order, Braddock marched against Fort Duquesne. In a valley, the woods on one side, and the Monongahela on the other, his troops were suddenly fired upon by French and Indians, and thrown into confusion. He tried to rally them, but as the Indians, behind trees and bushes, were an invis-

120. What was done as to the building of a fort? Where was it located (map 2)? What name was given to it? What city stands there now? What fort had Washington built? Where was it (map 2)? Give an account of Washington's second battle.

121. Who was Braddock? What is stated of his opinions, and his invitation to Washington? Who sent him to America? Whom did France send?

122. Describe Braddock's march, fight, and defeat. What is said of Washington in this, his third battle? By what name is that battle known? *Ans.* The Monongahela.

ible foe, the men in whom he had so much confidence broke ranks and ran, and he, brave and resolute to the last, was mortally wounded. "Nothing but the superintending care of Providence saved Washington." Four bullets passed through his coat. Two horses were shot under him. An Indian chief, expert in the use of the rifle, fired at him several times, but, to his astonishment, not one of the balls touched his body. "The Great Spirit guards his life," declared the savage (July 9, 1755).

**123.** While the English were being driven from the valley of the Ohio, the French were being expelled from Nova Scotia, their Acadia. This latter proceeding has ever since seemed so cruel as to be condemned by men and women wherever the sad story has been told. At the close of Queen Anne's War, as we have stated, the English were in possession of Acadia, the name of which they changed to Nova Scotia (§ 105). The land was



then occupied by many French families, and during the next forty years the population increased to several thousand persons. They were a people of simple habits. From the soil they drew abundant crops, and their pastures

were covered with cattle and sheep. The English wanted

**123.** Where is Nova Scotia (map 2)? What was it formerly called? Who gave it that name? Describe the Acadians. What did the English want them to do?

them to take the oath of allegiance to the British crown, but this they were not willing to do. Their heart was with France.

124. They said that they would be neutral in the war between France and England, but this did not satisfy the English; consequently a plan for kidnapping the peaceful Acadians, and sending them in ships out of the country, was secretly decided upon. "By proclamation the unsuspecting victims were ordered to assemble on a certain day in their principal villages. More than four hundred men, putting their trust in British honor, met in the church of Grand Pré (*pra*)."<sup>\*</sup> A body of soldiers surrounded the church and made them prisoners. The women and children were then collected from the houses. All were driven to the river, a mile away. "The men were put upon this vessel and that; the women and children were stowed away in other vessels."

125. In the other parts of Acadia the inhabitants were torn from their homes in like manner. Their dwellings and churches were burned, their cattle were seized as spoils, and their country was so laid waste that not a single Acadian could ever again find shelter in it. The ships, freighted with seven thousand unwilling exiles, set sail; and, at various places from New Hampshire to Georgia, discharged their living cargoes (1755). These unfortunate beings were now without food, and without money to buy it, and they spoke in a strange language.

"Friendless, homeless, hopeless, they wandered from city to city,  
From the cold lakes of the North to sultry Southern savannas,—  
From the bleak shores of the sea to the lands where the Father of Waters  
Seizes the hills in his hands, and drags them down to the ocean."<sup>\*</sup>

*Longfellow's Evangeline.*

<sup>\*</sup> Francis Parkman, in his *Montcalm and Wolfe*, says that families were not intentionally divided, and that even the inhabitants of a village were kept

124. What inhuman plan was carried out against the Acadians?

125. Give the further history of the Acadians. To what place on the Mississippi did many go? *Ans.* New Orleans. Recite the lines from Longfellow's poem.

**French Successes.**

126. In the first years of the war the English met with many disasters. They were defeated near Lake George by Dieskau, losing their brave Colonel Williams, of Massachusetts.\* But on that very day, at the south end of the lake, where Fort William Henry was afterward built, they stopped Dieskau's further movement, so badly hurting him that he could never fight again. Wounded, and leaning against the stump of a tree, Dieskau was approached by a British soldier. He felt for his watch, to insure kind treatment by delivering it up. The soldier, thinking he was drawing forth a pistol, shot him through the hips (September, 1755). His successor, the famous Marquis of Montcalm (*mont-kam'*), captured Fort Oswego (1756) and Fort William Henry (1757), and, from the ramparts of Fort Ticonderoga, repulsed an assault conducted by General Abercromby (1758). In a skirmish just before this last conflict, Lord Howe, "the soul of the enterprise," was slain.

**The War in Europe.**

127. We must not get the idea that England and France were meanwhile doing no fighting elsewhere. For more than a year before the formal declaration of war England had turned loose her armed ships to prey upon her rival's commerce. Then followed the most terrible strife of the eighteenth century. History calls it the Seven Years' War. This flame, which was kindled in

together. He thinks that the English were not much to blame for what they did. The Acadians, he asserts, were a constant menace to the English, and their promises or oaths were worthless, as was proved by repeated acts of treachery on their part.

\* Colonel Ephraim Williams left a will by which he gave a large part of his property for the support of a free school, now Williams College, Massachusetts.

126. State what took place under Dieskau's command. What further can you say of Dieskau? Who was his successor? What three successes marked Montcalm's efforts? Where was Fort Oswego (map 2)? Fort William Henry? Fort Ticonderoga? Who built Fort Ticonderoga? *Ans.* The French. What can you state of its further history? *Ans.* It was captured by the English in 1759.

127. What fighting meanwhile was going on in Europe?

the American forests (§ 119), soon raged in full blaze among the kingdoms of Europe. On England's side was Prussia. On the side of France were Austria, Russia, and other powers. England's colonies in America made a half-hearted effort to unite for protection against French and Indian invasions, but nothing came of it (see Appendix, p. 6).

128. The celebrated William Pitt, afterward Earl of Chatham, being called to the head of the British ministry, a plan was arranged for driving the French from all their possessions in North America. Their great fortress at Louisburg, on the Island of Cape Breton, regarded, because of its wonderful strength, as the "Gibraltar of America," was captured after a siege of more than forty days (1758). Of the men who distinguished themselves in pressing the siege, none did more effective service than the brave General Wolfe, who, next year, fell before Quebec in the hour of victory; and the equally brave General Montgomery, who, fifteen years later, fell near the same spot while contending for American liberties (§ 30, p. 159). Success continued with the English. Fort Duquesne, on their approach, was abandoned by its garrison of French and Indians. Its name was changed to Fort Pitt, in honor of the British statesman; and there in after years grew "The Iron City of Pittsburgh." The French were driven from the Niagara River and from the two lakes, Ontario and Champlain. New France was thus cut into two parts, but the great event of the war was Wolfe's splendid success in Canada. At first he was repulsed with heavy loss. Not disheartened, he tried again.

English Successes.
-----------------------

129. "In the darkness of night he led his soldiers up

128. Who was William Pitt? Where was the fortress of Louisburg (map 5)? What waters surround Cape Breton Island? What is said of the strength of its fort? The capture of the fort? Of Wolfe and Montgomery? Of Fort Duquesne? Other successes of the English? Where is Pittsburgh (map 2)?

129. Where is Quebec? Describe Wolfe's success before it. By what name is the battle often known? *Ans.* Plains of Abraham. Describe Wolfe's death.



the rugged precipice that rises from the shore of the St. Lawrence to the plain on which Quebec stands. At day-break tidings were carried to Montcalm that the English were waiting to give him battle on the Plains of Abraham. He immediately marched to the encounter. He marched to his own death. The battle was the most fierce and terrible that had ever been fought in America. Wolfe received a mortal wound. He reclined against a stone in the agonies



SCALING THE HEIGHTS OF ABRAHAM.

of death, but it seemed as if his spirit could not pass away while the fight raged so doubtfully. Suddenly a shout came peeling across the battle-field, 'They run! They run!' For a moment the hero lifted his languid head and asked, 'Who run?' 'The French,' replied an officer. 'Now, God be praised. I die happy,' said Wolfe, and died in the arms of victory" (September 13, 1759).

130. The death of Montcalm was also glorious, if a warrior's death in battle may be so regarded. Struck down, he was placed upon a litter and borne to the city's hospital. "How long shall I live?" he asked. "Ten or twelve hours, perhaps less," replied the surgeon. "So

130. Describe the death of Montcalm. What is said of his burial?

much the better," he replied. "I am happy that I shall not see the surrender of Quebec." He died before midnight, and was buried, as he had desired, in a cavity of the earth formed by the bursting of a bombshell.

131. "The victorious army encamped before the city, and pushed their preparations for a siege, but before a single gun was brought to bear, the white flag was hung out, and the rock-built citadel passed forever from the hands of its ancient masters" (September 18). There was another battle, brought on by the efforts of the French to recover Quebec, but Wolfe's victory may be considered not only as ending the war in America, but, adds an eminent writer, "as beginning the history of the United States. Measured by the numbers engaged in it, the battle on the Plains of Abraham was but a heavy skirmish; measured by results, it was one of the great battles of the world." While the last scenes of the war in America were drawing to a close, the contest in Europe continued with terrible earnestness. Not till 1763 did it end. Then, by the treaty of Paris, all Canada and all Acadia, in short, all the territories that France and England had been fighting about, were surrendered to the English. Did not this result determine much more than we are in the habit of seeing? If France had not lost her American possessions, would the language, habits, customs, government, and religion of the people here have been as they are now?

End  
of the War.

132. The Indians of Canada, and most of the tribes in the valley of the Ohio and along the Mississippi, had been on the side of the French in the recent war. When the forts, to which they had so long found ready entrance, were closed against them, and quietly

Pontiac's  
War.

131. When did Quebec surrender? What is said of the importance of the battle near it? What is said of the closing events of the war? Of the treaty, and what it gave to England? What speculation is indulged in?

132. Who was Pontiac? What did he do against the English? What motive prompted him?

surrendered to their late foes, they were amazed. Soon they were told by French traders that their father, the king of France, had been asleep, but was now awake and was making preparations to recover the forts. No Indian chief at that time had more influence among his people than the bold and



"THIS WAS NO CHANCE STROKE." \*

artful Pontiac. His words fired the spirit of the different tribes, and his war belt of wampum was eagerly accepted.

\* "The morning was warm and sultry. The gate of the fort (on the Strait of Mackinaw) was wide open; and soldiers, Canadians, and Indian squaws wrapped in blankets, were gathered in groups outside, watching the Indians playing a game of ball. Suddenly the ball soared into the air, and, descending in a wide curve, fell near the pickets of the fort. This was no chance stroke. As if in pursuit of the ball, the players came rushing, a maddened and tumultuous throng, toward the gate. The amazed English had no time to think or act. The shrill cries of the ball players were changed to the ferocious war-whoop. The warriors snatched from the squaws the hatchets, which the latter, with this design, had hid beneath their blankets. Some of the Indians assailed the spectators without, while others rushed into the fort. All was carnage and confusion. Men were slaughtered without mercy."—*Parkman's Conspiracy of Pontiac.*

A plot was formed by the Indians to attack all the forts on the same day, kill their occupants, and hold the places for the French. The secret was well kept, and all the forts, except three, were taken (1763).

133. Detroit, "a bit of sunny France that had been hid away in the heart of the western wilderness more than sixty years," withstood a siege of six months. At last, the Indians, baffled and discouraged, sued for peace. Pontiac, without influence and without friends, became a wanderer, and finally fell from the blow of a hatchet. This dark deed was the act of an Indian who had been incited to it by a white man's promise. The reward was a barrel of rum.

#### THE COLONISTS, AND WHAT THEY SAID AND DID.

134. Now let us take a nearer view of the people, and see how they are gaining in population and knowledge, how they live and what they are doing (1765). We confine our observations to the thirteen colonies, the 

Slavery.
----------

 roots of the thirteen States that are on the eve of cutting loose from the rule of the "mother country" and setting up a government of their own. How many inhabitants are now here we do not know. If we say upward of two millions, we are supposed to be near the truth. Of these, not fewer than four hundred thousand are negro slaves, all Africans or descendants of Africans. The negroes did not come here of their own accord. They were kidnapped, and brought by force. At first they were brought in Dutch ships, one of these beginning the cruel business by landing twenty negroes at Jamestown in 1619.

135. A few years later English ships were engaged in this

---

133. Give an account of the siege of Detroit. Pontiac's fate. Where is Detroit (map 5)? Describe the picture on page 118.

134. What was the population of the thirteen colonies in 1765? When, where, and by whom were the first negro slaves brought to this country?

135. What is said of the growth of slavery here? How was it forced upon the colonies? Give an account of the Indian slavery (note page 120).

monstrous traffic. Though the Quakers of Pennsylvania and New Jersey, as well as most of the other colonists, were decidedly opposed to slavery, there did not seem to be sufficient power, if there had been sufficient will, to stop the importation. Said Oglethorpe: "Slavery is opposed to the Gospel," and yet seven years after his first coming to Georgia, slave-ships were discharging their cargoes at Savannah. Negro slavery, law or no law, found its way into every one of the thirteen colonies. It was forced upon them by English kings, queens, dukes, and lords. These dictated laws which gave to them the monopoly of the slave-trade with British provinces, and thus filled their pockets with the ill-gotten gain. In twenty years they took from Africa about three hundred thousand negroes. Six thousand were taken to South Carolina in one year. Says Bancroft: "The sovereigns of England and Spain were the greatest slave-merchants in the world." \*

136. In New England most of the slaves were house servants. In New York they were employed on the farms as well as in the house. In Pennsylvania there were not many slaves, owing to the large supply of "indentured servants." These were white persons, mostly from England and Ireland, who, not being able to pay their passage money, were sold, with their consent, to land owners for a term of years. Such persons were also numerous in the colonies south of Pennsyl-

\* Negroes were not the only slaves. De Soto, we have seen, reduced Indians to slavery, as did all the early Spanish explorers, even Columbus himself. Captain Hunt, in charge of one of Smith's ships in 1614 (§ 25), "kidnapped a party of Indians and sold the poor innocents into slavery to the Spaniards." De Ayllon (*ile-yone*), with two ships, went from St. Domingo to Carolina for slaves to work plantations and mines (1520). The cheerful Indians, lured by the promise of a feast, crowded on board the vessels, when the treacherous Spaniard sailed away with his captives. Some Indians, survivors of the Pequods, were held as slaves in New England (§ 63). The son of the famous King Phillip was sold as a slave in Bermuda (§ 64).

136. What is said of "indentured servants"? Where did negro slavery thrive most, and why there?

vania. "Like negroes, they were purchased on shipboard as men buy horses at a fair." If one ran away, he was pursued. If captured, he was whipped. In 1670, there were as many as six thousand indented servants in Virginia alone.



WOMEN OF THE COLONIAL TIMES. (FROM MARKHAM'S *baso-relievs* ON THE MONUMENT AT SARATOGA.)

In Maryland, after five years' service, the servant, according to custom, became a free man. His former master then gave him two suits of clothing, a gun, some tools, and a hog or

two. Where tobacco was cultivated, in Maryland, Virginia, and North Carolina, negro slaves were numerous. In South Carolina, where large crops of rice were raised, there were more slaves than free persons.

137. England's laws, made more for England's benefit than for the good of the colonies, had much to do with shaping the occupations of the colonists. Agriculture was the principal employment. In the northern and middle colonies, while the men were hunting or fishing, or raising wheat, corn, and flax, or caring for sheep and cattle, the mothers and daughters were spinning flax or wool, or making garments for the family. "Do not put the seed into the ground," said the Indian to the Puritan, "before the leaves of the trees are of the size of a mouse's ears." With many families, the dog, the gun, the trap, and the fishing-line were the main dependence.\* The breeding of silk-worms in Georgia, begun in the first years of the colony, was carried on with so much success that in one season the Gerinans there produced ten thousand pounds of raw silk. When Charles II. was crowned he wore a robe of Virginia silk (1660). Indigo in small quantities was produced, both in South Carolina and Georgia; and tar, pitch, and rosin, from the immense pine forests in those regions, were then, as now, sent away in ships.

138. A great staple of South Carolina nowadays is rice. A vessel from Madagascar in distress put into Charleston

---

\* "The woods were a source of wealth. Boards, shingles, staves and hoops for barrels, and masts, all of which cost nothing but labor, were shaped and laid out in the winter season for the basis of trade in the coming summer. The pine forests offered a supply of turpentine, pitch, and tar. The fishery was counted upon as an important means of support and gain. Fishing led to ship-building. The year after Winthrop arrived (§ 57), he built a bark of thirty tons' burden, which he named the Blessing of the Bay."—*Pulfrey's History of New England*.

---

137. How did England's laws affect the employment of the colonists?

138. Give the beginning of the rice cultivation in the South.

harbor (1695). The captain, in return for kindness shown him, left a bag of seed rice. A few grains were sown in a garden, and from these came the seed for future planting. Gangs of slaves were set to work, and in a few years the marshes of South Carolina and Georgia were covered with rice plantations. As yet, in 1765, cotton was growing only in gardens among the rose bushes.

Cultivation  
of Rice.

139. Virginia and Maryland were the great tobacco-growing colonies. All other products of the soil were neglected. Every pound of tobacco not consumed at home was sent to England as England's laws demanded, where it was often called the American Silver Weed. The letters of Washington show us how the business was managed. They give us a picture of him as one of the great tobacco planters. We see him at his dock on the Potomac, watching his crops as they were put into ships for the English market.

Tobacco.

140. In Virginia tobacco was used as money. It bought lumber, bacon, and molasses. It clothed the planter as well as his wife and children. The salaries of the clergy were fixed at so many pounds of tobacco. Patrick Henry, Virginia's greatest orator, came into popular notice by a speech which he made in a case involving the question whether ministers should be paid in tobacco or in money. Tobacco procured wives for one hundred and fifty industrious settlers in Virginia. As wards of the London Company, that number of young women, "maids" they were called, went from England to be married to men who could support them. Ninety went in one ship, sixty in another. On the arrival of the first "cargo of maids," the wifeless settlers hastened to the ship to make their selections (1620). They found, somewhat to their surprise and dislike, that all the choosing was not to be on the one side. In a dozen cases, at least, the

139. What is said of tobacco in Virginia and Maryland? Of Washington's letters?

140. What things did tobacco buy? What debts did it pay? State how it procured wives for settlers.



maids were the choosers. Each man gave for his wife one hundred and twenty pounds of tobacco, that being the cost of her passage to the colony. When the second cargo arrived, wives were dearer. Not one could be procured for less than one hundred and fifty pounds of tobacco. Some brought even more.

141. Books, wines, silks, laces, costly furniture, harness, and many other things were brought from England in exchange for tobacco. Tobacco was not then made into cigars. It was put into a pipe, and lighted with a coal of fire in a pair of tongs. "To drink" tobacco was the expression. Nobody spoke of smoking it. Sir Walter Raleigh, we are informed, "drank a pipe" just before he was beheaded (§ 9).<sup>\*</sup> The "weed" had its enemies then as it has now. England's king, James I., disliked it so much that he wrote a book against its use, which he called the *Counterblast to Tobacco*. It is not recorded that the book injured the sale of the article.

142. In Maryland and North Carolina also tobacco was used as money. In New Netherland there was a queer kind

Wampum as Money.
------------------------

of money, made from sea shells, called wampum. It was an invention of the Indians. To prepare it the shells were rubbed smooth on a stone, then cut or broken into pieces, pierced with holes, and strung. When the Dutch settlers found that the Indians would receive wampum for skins and furs, they made it themselves; and it passed as money not only between the white man and the

---

<sup>\*</sup> His ships, thirty years before, were the first to carry tobacco to England; and to him belongs the name of having introduced the habit of smoking it there. It is related that "when his servant entered his room with a tankard of ale, and for the first time saw the smoke issue from his master's mouth and nostrils, he threw the ale into his face, and, terribly frightened, alarmed the household with the report that Sir Walter was on fire."

---

141. What things from England were procured in exchange for tobacco? How was tobacco used? How did England's king, James I., show his aversion to tobacco?

142. What was wampum? In how many ways was it used? Who used it? Relate the New Jersey case.

Indian, but between white man and white man. As evidence that wampum was so used quite generally, it is related that the first church in New Jersey was built and paid for from contributions of wampum, each string of shells being worth about a dollar. As this kind of money was easy to make, and, consequently, became in time of little value, the gold, silver, and copper coins of England, Spain, and Holland gradually took its place.

**143.** In New England, taxes were at first paid in grain or cattle. Debts were paid in corn, cattle, or fish. Beaver skins and musket balls were also received as money; and when the Dutch made known the use and value of wampum, that article was just as readily received. Indeed, during half a century, wampum, strung in parcels of different values, paid the grocer for pound supplies of sugar and other things, the farmer for bushels of corn, and the cobbler for small jobs.

**144.** The coins of Europe, brought by fresh arrivals of settlers and put into circulation, soon found a resting place in old stockings, to be taken out when purchases were to be made in Europe, or later, when beaver skins or wampum would not answer. To

Pine-tree  
Money.

stop the return of coin to England, a mint was established in Boston for the coinage of silver shillings, sixpences, and threepences (1652). This was called

“pine-tree money.”

Its name was given to it, because on one side of each piece was a picture of a



PINE-TREE SHILLING.

**143.** What was used as money in New England? What did the colonists there buy with wampum? In what other way did wampum answer for money?

**144.** State all you can of the pine-tree money. Its worth.

pine tree. A pine-tree shilling was worth about twenty-five cents.

**Business  
in  
Ships.**

145. In spite of English law ships were built in the northern colonies, and a hardy race of sailors, renowned for daring and courage, was reared to man them. The Boston ship yards sent out a large number of vessels, of which a hundred or more were sold every year in England or the West Indies. Before the breaking out of the French and Indian War not less than a thousand ships, not counting those employed in fishing, were owned in New England and New York. Some sailed to the West Indies for rum, sugar, and molasses. The swift-est went to France and Spain for wine and silk. Others took tobacco, rice, tar, pitch, and rosin from the ports of the southern colonies. One hundred and fifty found employment in the whale fishery. The most of this profitable business, be it understood, was done in the face of the selfish navigation laws of England, which did not give the colonists liberty to send their ships and produce to the markets of the world that offered the best prices.

**Dwellings.**

146. At first the dwelling-house was a rude affair. Before the advent of saw-mills, it was built of rough logs. Of the early Dutch houses we get many pleasing pictures. The best were of brick or stone, and were covered with pine shingles or tiles, the brick and tile having been brought from Holland. Generally they were a story and a half high, and well spread out on the ground floor. Each had its "stoop," or fixed bench, on the outside, shaded by trees; and here at evening twilight the members of the family, young and old, gathered for an hour's rest. The Swedes of Pennsylvania and Delaware, whom Penn described as "sober and industrious, who could fish, hunt, and tell the

145. What is said of ship-building? Of the first ship built by the Dutch? (§ 36). How were the ships employed? What is said of the whale fishery?

146. What is said of the Dutch houses? The Swedish houses? Of the progress of the Swedes in book learning? Of Maryland houses?

truth," had for a long time mere huts for their dwellings. Their church at Wilmington was a "block-house." During a number of years they possessed only three books, "yet these had been so carefully loaned from house to house that every child could read." In Maryland, the wealthy planters lived in houses built of brick made in the colony.

147. Two-story houses of English brick slowly took the place of the first huts and cabins in and about Philadelphia. Penn's residence, "the manor-house," as it was called, was the most imposing building. As the town grew, it drew to itself persons of wealth, whose religion, taste, and habits were unlike those of the Quaker proprietor. "Our dame of high degree has no carpet on her floors. She has but little jewelry, but she follows the reports of English fashions, curls her hair down her neck, or heaps it four feet high with oil and toupee, straw or flowers. She rides on horseback, or goes in a sedan chair to pay visits."

148. A noticeable feature in the best houses, particularly in those of the colder latitudes, is the kitchen fireplace. It is large enough for roasting a whole sheep or hog. Its back-log is two or three feet in diameter and five or six in length. Over the crackling fire, hanging on hooks and trammels, the large iron pots bubble and hiss. Here, before the glowing heat, the family spend the long winter evenings. The mother and daughter knit stockings, or spin linen or wool, or make patchwork bed-quilts. The father reads the Bible or smokes his pipe. The son, if not at college, is gathering knowledge from the few books at his command. Nuts and cider are in great demand.

149. In the southern colonies, Virginia especially, the one-story log-house gives place to the "well-to-do" manor-

---

147. What is said of Penn's house? Of the ways of the fashionable dame in Philadelphia?

148. What is said of the kitchen fireplace? The family at evening-time?

149. What is said of the Virginia manor-house? Of the uses to which forks were put? What is said of petroleum (note)?

house. In this, surrounded by his family and retainers, the planter may be compared to the patriarch of the feudal times. He opens wide his doors, entertains with generous hospitality, and, at Christmas time, holds great festivals. His house, like those of the North, has its huge log-fire in the great fireplace. "The Virginians of the early colonial period read English books, wore English clothes, ate from English plates with English knives, and followed England in all things." They had to wait some years for forks. These were hardly known in England before 1650. The first brought to America were of iron and two-tined. In New England they often did service as candlesticks at the evening church meetings, by being stuck through the lower end of the candle, and then into a block of wood nailed against the wall. The men who went to the meetings took their own candles and fork candlesticks.\*

150. The best of the furniture in the dwellings was imported from England or Holland. Every house of any pretension has a mahogany side-board in its wide hall. At the foot of the stairs, or on the first landing, or in the "family room," stands a high clock. The crockery is not abundant, most articles of table furniture being of pewter. That such articles are not regarded as of small value we have ample evidence. By the will of one of Boston's rich men, his daughter Mary fell "heir to two pewter platters and an iron pot (1662)." Tea was not much in use before 1750, nor was coffee much used before 1770. For more than a century the New Englander, instead of his morning cup of coffee, was satisfied with a bowl of boiled Indian meal and milk.

151. Some of the customs that now prevail among us had

---

\* Petroleum was known among the colonists of Pennsylvania and New York, but only as a medicine. It was collected by the Indians, and bought and sold as Seneca Oil. Not before 1859 did it begin to be used in lamps.

---

150. What is said of house furniture? Tea and coffee? What took their place?

151. What is said of the custom of making New Year's calls?

their origin with the Dutch of New Netherland. The first day of the year, New Year's Day as we call it, was the most important in their calendar. It was devoted to making and receiving visits, "calls," as we say. Every door was thrown open, and every visitor was received with hearty welcome. Old friendships were renewed, new ones formed, and differences between families were settled. Refreshments were offered to the guests. The New Year cake, with its caraway seed, here began its career.

Customs.

152. The custom of coloring "Easter eggs," and "crack-ing" them, had its origin with the Dutch. Is it not well known, too, that Santa Claus, that little old man with a pipe in his mouth and a twinkle in his eye, came with the Dutch from Holland; and in the New World first drove his rein-deers over the roofs of the houses of New Amsterdam? Christmas was the children's festival. Around the Christmas tree, whose branches bent with many presents, they danced and frolicked. For the origin of Thanksgiving Day we must go to the Pilgrims of Plymouth. Ere long the day became one of family reunion in all New England. The dinner, with its turkey and pumpkin pie, is the great feature of the occasion. As yet the reunions do not occur on the same day in all the region. A certain town takes the liberty of post-poning the celebration one month, in order to get molasses to sweeten the pies.

153. The early settlers were faithful church-goers. Those of Connecticut carried their muskets to repel attacks from the Indians. During the service a sentinel or two kept watch outside the church. In New England the church building was known as the Meeting House. The Quakers called it the Steeple House. The minister, as a rule, was the chief man in the community. He was also the most busy one. His pay was small, and did

Church  
Worship.

152. What is said of other early customs of the New York Dutch? Of Thanksgiving?  
153. What is said of church-going? Of the minister, his sermon, and pay?

not often come to him in gold or silver, but, at the South, in tobacco or rice; at the North, in wool, wheat, corn, fish, legs of mutton, pieces of beef, or loads of fire-wood. His sermon, in the Meeting House, was just an hour long. The hour-glass stood at his right hand, and when its last grain of sand had run out, three raps from the clerk brought the discourse to a close.

154. The singing was done by the entire congregation. As books were scarce, the minister read two lines of the



PURITANS GOING TO CHURCH. (FROM BOUGHTON'S CELEBRATED PICTURE.)

hymn, which were sung. Then the next two lines were read and sung, and so on through the hymn. The men sat by themselves on one side of the room, the women on the other, a place in the rear being assigned to the children. A man was appointed, called the tithing-man, to keep the children quiet and the old folks awake. "He carried a staff of office with a knob at one of its ends and a feather brush at the other end. With the knob he knocked the heads of the men

---

154. Describe the customs observed in the Meeting Houses.

who slept, and with the feathers he tickled the noses of the sleeping women."

155. It was plain to the early settlers that the most of their sufferings in the Old World had sprung from ignorance. Believing that knowledge was the great cure for a large part of such evils, they built the school-house as a companion to the church. These two were the central objects in almost every Northern village. In Massachusetts and Connecticut every father of a family was obliged by law to have his children taught to read and write. Boston's most famous schoolmaster was Ezekiel Cheever, "the founder of schools." Cotton Mather describes him as a person of venerable aspect, wearing a long white beard. After spending seventy years of his useful life in the school-room, teaching three generations of boys, he went to his long rest at the age of ninety-four years. New Amsterdam had its schools, so had Philadelphia, and steps were taken to establish schools in Maryland and South Carolina. One of Virginia's governors supported a school where more than seventy Indian children were taught to read the Bible.

Schools.

156. Still, it was the fashion to send the children of the prosperous class to England to be educated. The first college in the colonies had its origin as a public school in Newtown, about three miles from Boston. The Rev. John Harvard, a graduate of the English university of Cambridge, took a hearty interest in this school. Dying, he left to it his library and half his fortune (1638). This gift, though of only three hundred books and about four thousand dollars, was then truly magnificent. The school was raised in grade, and named Harvard College. The name of the town was changed to Cambridge. It is now the city of Cambridge. Toward the support of this school, every family in Mas-

---

155. What is said of the early school-houses and schooling?

156. Give the history of Harvard College. Where is Cambridge (p. 156)?



sachusetts, Plymouth, and Connecticut gave, once at least, twelpence, or a peck of corn, or its value in wampum.

**157.** The second college in the colonies began its existence when William and Mary, "of blessed memory," were on the throne of England (1693). "It took its name, William and Mary, from the king and queen, and for nearly two centuries was the great seminary, the true seed-bed of Virginia." Connecticut waited seven years longer before launching Yale College, "a school of the church." Yale owes its birth to ten worthy clergymen, who, in 1700, met at Branford. Each one, laying a few volumes on a table, said: "I give these books for the founding of a college in Connecticut." The leading object of these three colleges was to educate young men for the pulpit.\*

**158.** In this connection, it is proper to speak of the wonderful labors of that "morning star of missionary enterprise,"

**John Eliot.**

John Eliot, known to the world as "The Apostle to the Indians." Says Hawthorne: "I have sometimes doubted whether there was more than a single man among our forefathers who realized that an Indian possessed a mind, a heart, and an immortal spirit. That single man was John Eliot. He was full of love for the Indians, and therefore so full of faith and hope that he spent the labor of a lifetime in their behalf. He persuaded as many of them as he could to leave off their idle and wandering habits, and to build houses and cultivate the earth, as the English did. He established schools among them. He taught them to

---

\* Seven other colleges were established during the colonial period, as follows: College of New Jersey (Princeton, 1748), University of Pennsylvania (Philadelphia, 1749), King's College (now Columbia, in New York, 1754), Brown University (Providence, R. I., 1765), Dartmouth College (Hanover, N. H., 1770), Rutgers College (New Brunswick, N. J., 1771), and Hampden Sidney College (Va., 1775). In 1896 Columbia assumed the title of University, as did Princeton later the same year. (Note 36, App., p. 54.)

---

**157.** Give an account of the nine other colleges of the colonial times.

**158.** Who was John Eliot? What work did he perform among the Indians?

read, likewise to pray, hence they were called Praying Indians."

**159.** "Finally, having spent the best years of his life for the benefit of the Indians, he resolved to spend the remainder in doing them a yet greater benefit. He began a translation of the Bible into the Indian tongue. The task was to do it so carefully that not one idea throughout the book should be changed. It was a mighty work for a man now growing old, yet this was what he did, and he lived long enough to finish it." The book was printed at Cambridge, and was the first Bible published in America (1663). Copies of it are now very rare. One was sold in New York not many years ago for more than a thousand dollars, but nobody nowadays can read it.

**160.** This book was by no means the first printing done in the colonies. Printed pamphlets and sermons were already numerous. As early as 1640, only ten years after the settlement of Boston, the Psalms, translated into meter, were published at Cambridge.

Books and Newspapers.
--------------------------

Cotton Mather wrote on a multitude of subjects, and, of his books and pamphlets, numbering more than three hundred, several were issued from the Cambridge press. There was so little call for books in the early days that they were kept for sale with other things. Thus, Benedict Arnold, in his shop in New Haven, sold drugs and books. In 1704, long before Oglethorpe thought of planting a colony in America, a weekly paper was published in Boston. It was then the only newspaper published in the New World. When Braddock, with Washington at his side, was marching against Duquesne, five newspapers were issued in New York, and as many in Philadelphia.

**161.** Up to the time we have reached, the close of the

---

**159** What, as respects the Bible? What further can you say of Eliot's Bible?

**160.** What is said of the early books, pamphlets, and newspapers?

**161.** What is said of steamboats and railroads? Of the modes of travel?

French and Indian War, there is not a single railway for travel nor a steamboat in all the world. From Maine to Florida there is not a good road of any kind, nor a bridge across any of the great rivers. The streets in cities and villages are not paved, consequently mud in wet weather and dust in dry weather is the rule. Men and women go to church, to market, and to town on horseback. One horse often carries a man and his wife. If

How the  
People Travelled.



SEDAN CHAIR.

a saddle cannot be found, a sheep skin or a bear skin is used instead. Rich ladies in Philadelphia and Maryland make visits in sedan chairs. In winter the Dutch of New York go from place to place in sleighs. Packet-sloops ply to Providence, where a coach is in waiting to take passengers to Boston.

**162.** Sloops sail up the Hudson to Albany in from one to

**162.** What is said of Burr's journey to Albany? Of a New York ferry? Of the carriages? Of Washington's journey in 1783? Was he President at that time?

two weeks ; but, as late as 1788, Aaron Burr, a lawyer, who has business in Albany, wishing to perform the journey in less time, changes from sloop to wagon, from wagon to canoe, and finally from canoe to wagon. The trip across the river from New York to Brooklyn, the distance spanned in after years by a bridge, is by row-boat or flat-bottomed scow ; and the boatmen count themselves lucky if, when the tide is angry and the wind contrary, they reach the desired shore after an hour's hard pulling. Beside the heavy lumbering wagons, there are but few vehicles in all the country. Some four-wheeled carriages have been brought from England, eight of which are in Pennsylvania. Washington, in the summer of 1783, makes a tour of about eight hundred miles, the most of it on horseback.

---

#### REVIEW OUTLINE.

**163.** If Frenchmen had not tried to occupy Florida, Spaniards at that early day would not have begun the town of St. Augustine (1565). From that point in the South to Nova Scotia in the North, the Indians continued to roam without molestation during the next forty years and more. Raleigh's attempts to make settlements were failures (1584-7). Gosnold's visit to Cape Cod (1602), and the part that he and Smith performed in the history of Virginia, make creditable records. Jamestown was the first permanent English settlement in America (1607). Two years later a Dutch ship found the Hudson River ; but before the Dutch were ready to occupy their new lands, Virginians had gone through "a starving time" (1610), had married one of their planters to Pocahontas (1613), and had bought Africans to be their slaves (1619).

**164.** Dutch pioneers were meanwhile finding their way into their New Netherland ; but, not before Smith had explored the New England coast (1614), nor before the Mayflower's Pilgrims "descended upon the solitary rock of Plymouth" (1620), did Holland begin in earnest to colonize her American Netherland (1623). New Hampshire's existence began in that very year. English fishermen built homes there, and, five years later, built other homes at Salem, Massachusetts (1628). We have seen that

**Historical.**—1. The voyages made to America before the time of Columbus.—2. Columbus, his theory and discoveries.—3. How it was proved that America was no part of India.—4. The first three Spanish expeditions to Florida, stating why, when, and by whom made, and the result.—5. The names of four early Italian discoverers, with what they did.—6. The same of four English discoverers.—7. Eight Spanish discoverers.—8. Four French discoverers.—9. One Portuguese discoverer.—10. Names of eleven explorers who were in the service of Spain.—11. The claims of four European nations to territory in North America, and upon what they were based.—12. The parts of the present United States territory east of the Mississippi that in colonial times were Spanish, English, French, and Dutch territory respectively.—13. The history of each of such parts as respects ownership until it came to belong to the United States.—14. The Indian tribes, their names and location, that formerly occupied those parts (map 1).—15. The first five Indian wars in which the colonists were engaged, with cause, events, and result.—16. Efforts of the French to form settlements in North America, with dates, events, and results.—17. Grants of land made by English kings from James I. to George II., stating which extended from ocean to ocean, and how they were apportioned among the colonies, and which interfered with French, Spanish, and Dutch claims (see also map 3).—18. The European wars that affected the colonies, commonly known as the Intercolonial Wars, with dates, events, and changes resulting in the ownership of territory.—19. How such wars differed in origin and object from the French and Indian War.—20. The names, dates, names of commanders, and result of the four principal battles of the French and Indian War.—21. The result of that war and how the territory of North America was owned by European nations at its close.—22. Washington's part in the war.—23. The negro slaves, their first appearance here, how the trade in them was carried on, what they did, and who profited by their labor.—24. Tobacco, where and by whom raised, to whom sent, how consumed, and how used as money.—25. Rice, its introduction and culture.—26. Ships, ship-building, and the business done in and with ships.—27. The religious or other motives that prompted the first settlers in each of the thirteen colonies.—28. Name of the most prominent man in the history of each colony, stating in what the prominence consisted.—29. How, when, why, and by whom Virginia was settled, and what events relating to the religion, politics, and wars of the colonists took place there.—30. Same of each of the other colonies.—31. What twenty places, now large cities, are mentioned in the early history of the colonies, and why were they mentioned?—32. For what industry or production was each colony noted?

# CHRONOLOGICAL SUMMARY.

WITH THE CONTEMPORARY ENGLISH SOVEREIGNS.

## *Discoveries and Explorations.*

- |             |  |
|-------------|--|
| Henry VII.  | <p>1492. The West Indies were discovered by Columbus (§ 19).</p> <p>1497. North America was discovered by the Cabots, and, next year, its eastern coast was explored by Sebastian Cabot (§ 28).</p> <p>1498. South America was discovered by Columbus (§ 23), and, next year, was visited by Amerigo Vespucci (§ 27).</p>  |
| Henry VIII. | <p>1513. Florida was discovered by Ponce de Leon (§ 31).<br/>The Pacific Ocean was discovered by Balboa (§ 35).<br/>1520. Carolina was visited by De Ayllon (note, p. 120).<br/>1521. Mexico was conquered by Cortes (§ 32).<br/>1526. Florida was explored by Narváez (§ 42).<br/>1534. The St. Lawrence River was discovered by Cartier (note, p. 39).</p> <p>1541. The Mississippi was discovered by De Soto (§ 47).<br/>1541-43. Expeditions under Spanish commanders penetrated the western region of North America, and the coast from Mexico to and beyond the Columbia River was explored (note, p. 33).</p> |

## *Colonial Events.*

- |            |  |
|------------|--|
| Elizabeth. | <p>1562. The Huguenots began a colony in Carolina (§ 2), and, two years after, another in Florida (§ 4).</p> <p>1565. Florida, at St. Augustine, was settled by the Spaniards (§ 4).<br/>1579. Drake sailed to the Pacific and made a landing in California (p. 33).<br/>1584. The coast of North Carolina was explored by Raleigh's expedition (§ 6); and, next year, a second expedition, followed by a third, two years later, made unsuccessful attempts to establish a colony (§ 8).<br/>1602. Cape Cod was discovered by Gosnold (§ 11).<br/>1605. Port Royal, Nova Scotia, was settled by the French (§ 14).</p>  |
| James I.   | <p>1606. The English king, James I., divided his domains in America in two parts, giving one to the London Company and the other to the Plymouth Company (§ 13).</p> <p>1607. Jamestown, Va., was settled by the London Company (§ 16).<br/>The Plymouth Company's attempt to plant a colony in Maine proved a failure (§ 15).</p> <p>1609. The Hudson River was discovered by Henry Hudson (§ 32).<br/>1613. Pocahontas was married to Rolfe (§ 30).</p> <p>1614. New York was settled by the Dutch (§ 36).<br/>The New England coast was explored by Smith (§ 25).</p> <p>1619. Negro slavery was introduced into Virginia (§ 134).<br/>1620. The Council of Plymouth received a charter (§ 53).</p> <p>1620. The Pilgrims landed at Plymouth and made the first settlement in New England (§ 49).<br/>1621. The treaty with Massasoit was made (§ 50).<br/>1622. The first Indian massacre in Virginia occurred (§ 82).</p> |
| Charles I. | <p>1623. New Hampshire was settled (§ 54).<br/>The Dutch began to colonize New York (§ 36).<br/>1630. Boston was settled by the Massachusetts Bay Company (§ 57).</p> <p>1633. The first colony of Connecticut was planted at Windsor (§ 59).</p> <p>1634. Maryland was settled at St. Mary's (§ 72).<br/>1635. The second colony of Connecticut was planted at Saybrook (§ 59).</p>   |

Charles I.	1636. Roger Williams began the settlement of Rhode Island (§ 66). 1637. In the war with the Pequods the tribe was destroyed (§ 62).
	1638. Delaware was settled by the Swedes (§ 39). The third colony of Connecticut was planted at New Haven (§ 68).
	1643. Four New England colonies formed a union (§ 77). 1644. The Saybrook colony joined the Connecticut colony.
The Commonwealth.	1650. North Carolina began to be settled on the Chowan River (§ 90). 1651. Parliament, during Cromwell's supremacy, passed the first Navigation Act, which declared that the colonists should send nothing to England except in English ships (§ 145). 1655. The Swedes in Delaware were subdued by the Dutch (§ 41).
	1656. The "Quaker Persecution" in Massachusetts occurred (§ 78).
	1662. The Connecticut colonies were united under one charter (§ 98). 1663. Carolina was granted to Clarendon and others (§ 88).
Charles II.	1664. New York was surrendered to the English (§ 85). New Jersey was settled at Elizabethtown (now Elizabeth) (§ 86).
	1670. South Carolina was settled on the Ashley River (§ 90). 1673. Marquette descended the Mississippi (p. 40). 1675. King Philip's War occurred in New England (§ 64). 1676. Bacon's Rebellion occurred in Virginia (§ 82).
	1682. Pennsylvania was settled by the English (§ 93). Delaware was granted to William Penn (§ 92). La Salle descended the Mississippi (p. 41).
William III.	1689. King William's War began in America (§ 100). 1690. Port Royal, Nova Scotia, was captured by the English (§ 102). 1692. Plymouth was united with Massachusetts (§ 101), and the Salem Witchcraft delusion prevailed (§ 103). 1697. The treaty of Ryswick ended King William's War (§ 102).
	1702. Queen Anne's War began in America (§ 106). 1710. Port Royal, N. S., was captured by the English (2d time) (§ 105). 1713. The treaty of Utrecht ended Queen Anne's War (§ 105). 1729. Carolina was separated into North and South Carolina (§ 90).
	1732. Washington was born in Virginia, February 22 (§ 110).
Anne.	1733. Georgia was settled at Savannah (§ 110). 1741. New Hampshire became a separate royal province. 1744. King George's War began in America (note, p. 103). 1745. Louisburg was taken by the English (1st time). 1748. The treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle ended King George's War.
	1754. The French and Indian War began (§ 119). Washington defeated the French at the Great Meadows (§ 119), but capitulated to them at Fort Necessity (§ 120). 1755. The French were expelled from Nova Scotia (§ 123) and Braddock was defeated at the Monongahela (§ 122). 1756. Oswego was captured by the French (§ 126). 1757. Fort William Henry was surrendered to the French (§ 126). 1758. Abercromby was defeated at Ticonderoga (§ 126). Louisburg (2d time) (§ 128) and Fort Frontenac (Kingston) were taken by the English.
	1759. Fort Niagara was taken by the English; Wolfe was defeated at the battle of the Montmorenci (§ 128), but he defeating Montcalm before Quebec (§ 129), the city surrendered to the English (§ 131). 1760. Though the English were defeated in a battle near Quebec, Montreal and the rest of Canada were surrendered to them (§ 131).
George II.	1763. The treaty of Paris ending the French and Indian War, left England in possession of the region north and south of the St. Lawrence and east of the Mississippi (§ 131).

—  
66.

190.  
112.  
12.

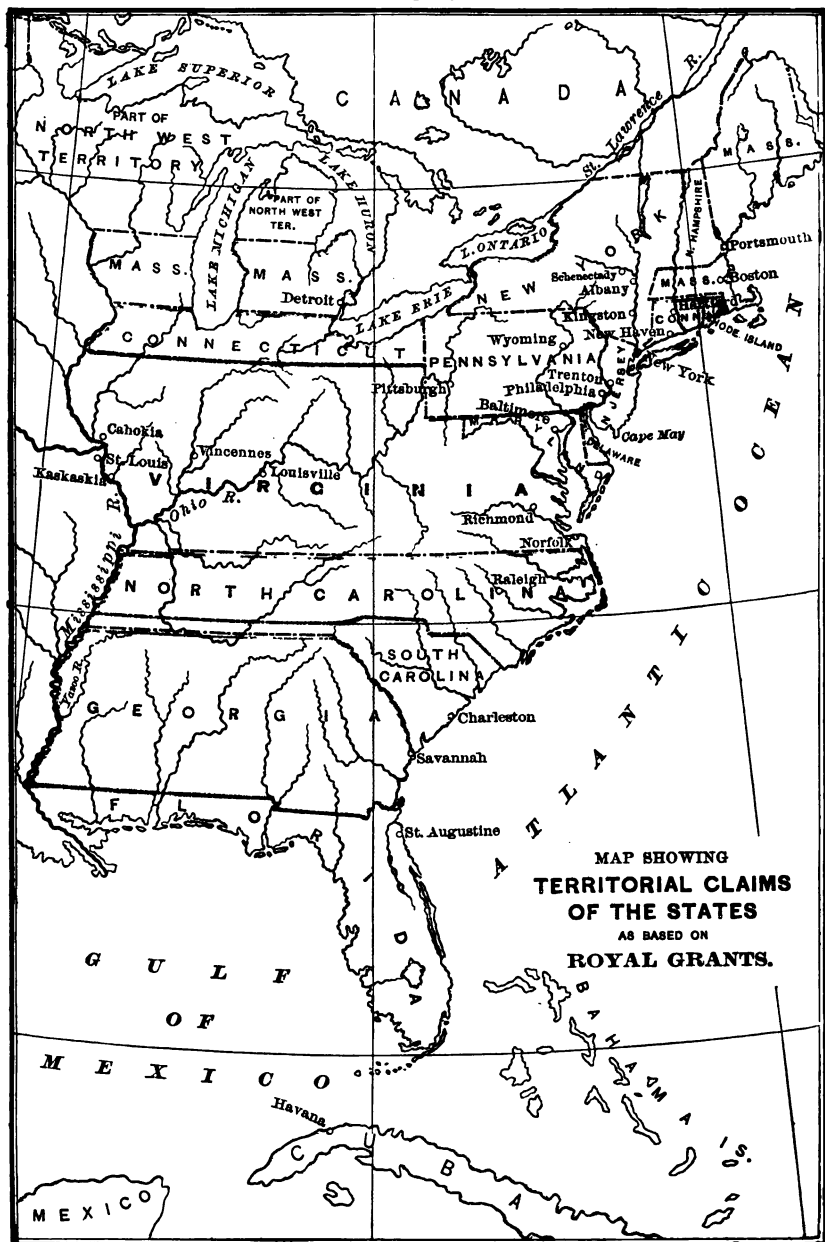
81.  
9.

30.

25



MAP NO. 3.



## SECTION III.

### REVOLUTIONARY PERIOD.

1. WE now come to the time in the history of the colonies when they begin in earnest to complain of the unjust treatment that is inflicted upon them by England's selfish laws. This kind of treatment is not new. It began when colonization began, its roots being in the notion that colonies are planted for the special benefit of the parent country. English laws forbid the tobacco of Virginia, the rice and tar of the Carolinas, the lumber of New England, and the other products of the colonies, from being sent to any ports except those of Great Britain. The colonists, thus prevented from finding the best markets for their goods, are compelled to accept whatever pay the English trader is willing to give.

Causes of the War.
--------------------------

2. Nor are the colonists allowed to set up any factories for the making of such things as are made in England. Hence, if a man in New York wants to build a house, he must send to England for the needed nails, locks, bolts, hinges, and window glass. None of these things can be legally manufactured in the colonies. Said one of England's great lords: "If the colonists are allowed to make as much as a hobnail, the consequences will be fatal to us." Even the liberty of free traffic between the colonies is taken away. Georgia cannot freely buy of New Hampshire, nor can New Jersey buy of Delaware. Commanders of the king's ships

---

1. What notion as to colonization did England have? How did England's laws affect the commerce of the colonies?

2. How did England's laws affect manufactures? Traffic between the colonies? What said one of England's lords? What said Adam Smith?

can stop merchant ships on their way to the colonies, and take possession of them, if, in their opinion, the vessels are engaged in trade contrary to law. The king's officers in the colonies can not only forcibly go into a house and search for goods, on which, they suppose, no duty has been paid, but, armed with a paper called a Writ of Assistance, they can compel any man they chance to meet to go with them and assist in making the search. Said the learned Scotchman, Adam Smith, "England has founded an empire on the other side of the Atlantic for the sole purpose of raising a people of customers for her shop-keepers."

3. These harsh and unjust laws, as we may suppose, create crimes as a consequence of dissatisfaction. It is a crime to erect a factory and make ploughs; it is a crime to build ships and sell them to England's rivals; it is a crime to exchange by direct means the tobacco of Virginia, or the whale oil procured by the fishermen of New England, for the wine and silk of France. Many persons, including John Hancock, one of Boston's honored citizens, also Governor Trumbull, of Connecticut, whom Washington at a later period delights to call "Brother Jonathan," are law-breakers. Will the colonists submit to any further wrong? They love England, and England's king. Can they turn against both if the royal foot is pressed upon them with greater weight?

4. "England was enormously in debt at the close of the French and Indian War. It was pretended that the great bulk of this debt had been contracted for the defence of the American colonies; therefore the English contended that a part of it ought to be paid by them. The colonists replied that they had also contracted a large debt in the war; that they had spent their money to get Canada for King George, and that nearly thirty thousand of their young men had laid

---

3. What were the effects in the colonies of these unjust laws?

4. State the arguments for and against taxing the colonies.

down their lives for the king's honor. But the king and his ministers would not listen to reason or good advice."

5. "In 1765 the British Parliament passed a law known as the Stamp Act. All deeds, bonds, and other papers of the same kind, were ordered by it to be marked with the king's stamp; and without this mark they were declared illegal and void. Now, in order to get a blank sheet of paper with the king's stamp upon it, people were obliged to pay threepence more than the actual value of the paper. This extra sum of threepence was a tax, and was to be paid into the king's treasury. Threepence was not worth quarrelling about, but it was not for that nor for any other *amount* of money that Americans quarrelled with England. It was for a *principle*. The colonists were determined not to be taxed except by their own representatives. They said that neither the king, nor Parliament, nor any other power on earth had a right to take their money out of their pockets unless they freely gave it."

The  
Stamp Act.

6. "It was indeed amazing and terrible to see what a change came over the aspect of the people when they heard that the English Parliament had passed the unjust act. The moment before they appeared like humble and loyal subjects of the crown, the next instant they showed the dark features of king-resisting freemen." Virginia rang the alarm bell. In her legislature, Patrick Henry, "wearing a brown wig, a peach-blossom coat, leather knee-breeches, and yarn stockings," rose to support some resolutions which he had written on a blank leaf torn from an old law-book. With fiery eloquence he denounced the injustice of England, exclaiming as he ended his speech: "Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles the First his Cromwell, and George the Third—" "Treason!"

5. When was the Stamp Act passed, and what were its provisions? What great principle was involved?

6. State the particulars of Patrick Henry's speech. What have we already heard about him (§ 140, p. 123)? Describe the picture on page 144.

cried the presiding officer. "Treason! Treason!" echoed from every part of the house. Pausing a moment, the young orator, in a firm voice, slowly pronounced the words: "May



PATRICK HENRY.

"IF THIS BE TREASON, MAKE THE  
MOST OF IT."

profit by their example. If this be treason, make the most of it."

7. No less earnest were the opposition and words of James Otis, whose eloquence gained him the title of the "Great Incendiary of New England."

With him, in the legislature of Massachusetts, originated

the idea of calling a congress of delegates from the several

7. Who was James Otis, and what did he do? Tell what you can of the Colonial Congress. Of the Liberty Tree.

colonies. The delegates met in New York, and sent a petition to the king. They also sent a memorial to Parliament, asking to have the Stamp Act repealed. "It was a most important and memorable event, this first coming together of the American people by their representatives; and if England had been wise, she would have trembled at the first word that was spoken in such an assembly (1765)." On the branches of an old elm in Boston, which became famous as the "Liberty Tree," were hung in effigy the persons who were supposed to be most favorable to the Stamp Act. One of these was Andrew Oliver, whom the king had appointed stamp-distributor. The people frightened him so by hanging him in effigy, breaking the windows of his house, and destroying his furniture, that he promised to have nothing to do with the stamps.

8. As the Royal George, the ship having on board the stamps for Philadelphia, hove in sight of the city, all the vessels in the harbor dropped their flags to half-mast, and all the bells were tolled as if for the death of Liberty. "In New York, the whole city rose up as one man in opposition to the Stamp Act." In New Jersey the stamp distributor was burned in effigy. North Carolina would neither receive a stamp man nor use a stamp. So it was in every colony. No stamps were sold; business was conducted without them. The king and Parliament seeing that nothing could be gained by the Stamp Act, it was speedily repealed (1766).

9. Great was the joy of the colonists when they heard the good news. They lighted bonfires, raised banners, fired guns, rang bells, and, in their gratitude, voted statues to England's great statesman, William Pitt, who had boldly said in Parliament that England had

The Tea Tax.
--------------

8. How did the colonies resist the execution of the Stamp Act? With what result? Tell of Franklin in England (note).

9. What did the colonists do when they heard that the Stamp Act had been repealed? In what way did Parliament and king assert their right to tax the colonies?



FRANKLIN BEFORE THE HOUSE OF COMMONS.\*

\* As early as 1757, Franklin was sent to England by Pennsylvania to protect the interests of that colony. His conduct met with so much approval by Georgia (1768), New Jersey (1769), and Massachusetts (1770), that he was chosen to be their agent there in like manner. In February, 1766, he was examined before the House of Commons, and then and there his bearing and answers made an everlasting record to the credit of his patriotic spirit and wise foresight. "There was no event in Franklin's life," says the historian, Jared Sparks, "that gave him so much celebrity as this examination before the House of Commons." He said that "America would never submit to pay the stamp duty," and the information which he gave to the Commons that day convinced them that he was right. Next month the act was repealed.

no right to tax America. Great as was the joy, it would have been far greater if king and Parliament had said that they never again would tax the colonies without their consent. But this neither would do. In fact, they made haste to say the very opposite, soon giving proof of their earnestness by laying a duty on tea and some other articles in general use (1767).

10. This being merely another form of taxation, the colonists again protested. So decided was their opposition, that the duty was taken off, except threepence a pound on tea, the king saying, "There should always be one tax at least, to keep up the right of taxing." Did the concession satisfy the colonists? Not at all. As before stated, they were contending, not against the amount of the tax, but against being taxed at all without their consent. They were not represented in the British Parliament, consequently that body had no right to tax them. A tax of threepence on a pound of tea was a small matter in itself, but it was the sign of a great wrong, as much so as if the amount had been a dollar or more. The merchants, from New Hampshire to Georgia, resolved that they would not import any tea, and the women said that they would not drink any. It did not take long for men to decide that they would eat nothing, drink nothing, and wear nothing imported from England.

11. There was so much opposition to the tax, especially among the Sons of Liberty, in Boston, that the king sent four thousand of his soldiers to that town to teach its inhabitants to be obedient. "What, pray, could an armed force find there to do? Could an army compel a man to buy a coat or drink a cup of tea? Some of the soldiers were lodged in Faneuil (*fan'-el*) Hall, which the people looked upon as a consecrated place, it having been the scene of many meetings

---

10. What concession did they make? How did the king speak of the concession? How was it regarded by the colonists? How did they show their opposition?

11. What distress did Boston's opposition bring upon that town? State what you can of Faneuil Hall.



in favor of liberty." Because of these meetings it was often called the Cradle of Liberty. It is one of the most famous spots in all America.

**The Boston Massacre.** 12. Ill feeling at once arose between the inhabitants and the "redcoats," or "lobsterbacks," as the red-coated soldiers were called by the boys in the streets. As might have been expected, affrays happened between small parties of young men and these redcoats. At first no weapons were used other than fists or cudgels, but, at last, when the soldiers had loaded muskets in their hands, they fired (March 5, 1770). "A gush of smoke overspread the scene. It rose heavily as if loth to reveal the dreadful spectacle beneath it. Eleven of the sons of New England lay stretched upon the street. Some, sorely wounded, were struggling to rise again. Others stirred not nor groaned, for they were past all pain. Blood was streaming upon the snow; and that purple stain, though it melted away in the next day's sun, was never forgotten nor forgiven by the people." Not till all the king's soldiers were sent out of the town to a fort in the harbor would the people be pacified.

**Opposition to the Tea Tax.** 13. The spirit of resistance was everywhere aroused. A British armed schooner, named the *Gaspee*, employed to aid in carrying out the hated laws of England, was captured and burned in Narragansett Bay (1772). Several ships arrived with tea. Those for Philadelphia and New York, not being allowed to land their cargoes, were compelled to return to London. The tea for Charleston was stored in damp cellars, and there it was left to spoil, for no one would buy it.

14. Three ships laden with tea arrived at Boston, and made fast to a long wharf. The people spent more than a fortnight trying to induce the three captains to take their

12. Give the particulars of the Boston massacre.

13. What is said of the schooner *Gaspee*? Of the tea sent to Philadelphia, New York, and Charleston? Where is Narragansett Bay? *Ans.* On the south of Rhode Island.

14. Give the particulars of the Boston Tea Party affair.

vessels and cargoes back. The royal governor would not give his consent to this, and the king's troops in the fort threatened to fire upon the ships if they sailed without such permission. Several thousand men, more than Faneuil Hall could hold, then met in and around the Old South Church, and declared that the tea should not be landed. In the dusk of the evening they hastened to the wharf, and a set of wild-looking figures boarded the ships. "These grim figures wore Indian dresses, and had their faces covered with red and black paint, like the Indians when they go to war. They were not Indians. They were white men in disguise. They hoisted the tea chests on the decks of the vessels, broke them open, and threw all their contents into the water. The people who looked on kept perfectly still, and after the work was done, the town became as quiet as if it had been holy time" (1773). Though this Boston Tea Party has been talked about by all the world, nobody has ever been able to tell the names of the Indian figures that made the famous cup of tea in the harbor.

15. When tidings of this bold deed were carried to England, king and Parliament became greatly enraged, and immediately passed an angry act which forbade all vessels to take in or discharge cargoes at the port of Boston. In this way, it was expected the merchants of that town would be ruined, and its people be starved. General Gage, who had marched alongside of Washington in Braddock's ill-fated expedition against Duquesne (p. 111), was appointed by the king to be governor of Massachusetts; and the hated redcoats that had been compelled to withdraw to the fort were sent back to Boston (§ 12).

Boston Port Bill.
----------------------

16. But all America felt interested in the afflicted town,

---

15. What did this affair incite king and parliament to do? What was the object of the Boston Port Bill?

16. How was sympathy shown to Boston? Who were the "Sons of Liberty?" What did they propose and with what result?

and contributions were raised for the relief of its inhabitants. From South Carolina came two hundred barrels of rice. From North Carolina came money to the amount of nearly ten thousand dollars. From a town in Massachusetts came two hundred and fifty sheep. From other places came rye, flour, peas, cattle, oil, fish, whatever the land or the hook could furnish. How could the wrongs put upon the colonies



WASHINGTON, PENDLETON, AND HENRY ON THEIR WAY TO THE CONTINENTAL CONGRESS.

be best resisted? By a union of the colonies? To that end events were fast drifting. The Sons of Liberty, of New York, proposed a general congress. The proposition was well received, and accordingly twelve of the colonies sent delegates to Philadelphia. In the plain but capacious building, Carpenters' Hall, then recently built by a company of carpenters, the delegates met; and this important gathering was the First Continental Congress (1774).

17. Peyton Randolph, of Virginia, was chosen its chairman. Among its distinguished members was Patrick Henry,

---

17. Describe the leading men in the Congress. What did they do?

who said: "I am not a Virginian, but an American." Near him sat two other Virginians, George Washington and Richard Henry Lee. There, too, was John Jay, the wise statesman from New York, and there was Samuel Adams, of Massachusetts, who, "with tongue and pen made the king tremble." He declared that "we will spend our last drop of blood before the king and Parliament shall impose upon us." His near associate was John Adams, "the equal of crowned heads." Measures for the public good were adopted, and a petition to the king and appeals to the people of England and Canada were sent.

<p>First Continental Congress.</p>
--

18. Thus far, it may be said, no one in all the colonies desired a separation from the mother country. Still, everywhere men were making preparations for defence. In Massachusetts they formed themselves into companies, and went through military training, thus preparing themselves to act at a minute's notice. Powder and shot were procured, which these "Minute Men" were ready to use, against even the king's powder and shot, for the protection of the people's rights. How did King George receive the petition sent to him? He did not receive it at all, nor would Parliament as much as listen to its reading. The faithful Franklin, to whom, with others, the petition had been intrusted, tried to convince the king and his advisers that the colonies would never submit to being taxed by Parliament. Dr. Johnson, the dictionary maker, great and wise as he was, looked upon the colonists as wicked rebels, and pointed out Franklin as the "master of mischief." More of the king's troops were sent to Boston, so that General Gage had an army of several thousand men to do his bidding.

19. His bidding soon began. On the night of the 18th of April, 1775, he sent eight hundred of his men to destroy

18. Who were the "Minute Men"? What was the fate of the petition sent to England? How did Dr. Johnson show his animosity?

19. Who was General Gage (§ 15)? How did he begin the war? Give an account of what took place at Lexington. Where is that town (map p. 75)? Where is Concord?

some flour and other supplies which the people had stored at Concord, sixteen miles from Boston. Next morning he sent Lord Percy with nine hundred more men. "The last stars were vanishing from night when the foremost party, led by Major Pitcairn, was discovered by the husbandmen of Lexington, advancing quickly and in silence. Alarm guns were fired, and drums were beat. Less than seventy obeyed the summons. The ground on which they stood was the altar of freedom, and they were to

Lexington  
and  
Concord.



RETREAT OF THE BRITISH FROM LEXINGTON.

furnish the victims. Pitcairn rode in front of his troops, and when within five or six rods of the 'Minute Men,' cried out, 'Disperse, ye villains! ye rebels, disperse! Lay down your arms! Why don't you lay down your arms and disperse?' The patriots stood motionless, witnesses against wrong; too few to resist, too brave to fly. At this, Pitcairn discharged a pistol, and, with a loud voice, cried 'Fire!' The order was followed by a deadly discharge of musketry. That fatal volley began the War of the Revolution. On the grass

lay in death the gray-haired and the young. Seven of the men of Lexington were killed, nine wounded. These were the village heroes, who were of more than noble blood" (April 19, 1775).

20. After a brief halt the British troops marched on, and at Concord destroyed all the stores they could find, but not without stout opposition. Men fell on both sides. Seeing the militia gathering in large numbers, the invaders began to retreat. Every fence, barn, and shed, every piece of wood, every rock by the wayside, had eager assailants. At Lexington the retreaters were met by Percy and his nine hundred men. These formed a square inclosing the fugitives, who lay down for rest on the ground, "their tongues hanging out of their mouths like those of dogs after a chase." Every moment made their retreat more difficult. Percy saw that he and his entire force were in danger of being surrounded and made prisoners. The retreat was speedily renewed.

"You know the rest in the books you have read,  
How the British regulars fired and fled ;  
How the farmers gave them ball for ball,  
From behind each fence and farm-yard wall,  
Chasing the redcoats down the lane,  
Then crossing the fields to emerge again  
Under the trees at the turn of the road,  
And only pausing to fire and load."—*Longfellow*.

The patriots pressed close upon the rear of the fugitives, and kept up a constant fire till, at night, the survivors found safety in Charlestown. Nearly three hundred of the king's soldiers were strewn dead or dying along the road from Concord. The dead and wounded of the patriots numbered about ninety.

21. How the news of that day's doings stirred the patriots

20. Give an account of what took place at Concord. Of the other events of that terrible day. Recite the lines from Longfellow's pen.

21. What effect did the news have? State who were in the army.

in every part of the land ! With all speed they sent sympathy and help to their brethren of Massachusetts. Men with muskets and powder-horns flocked to the vicinity of Boston to drive Gage and his troops into the sea. Of whom was this patriot army composed ? Of sons of Massachusetts—schoolmasters, neighbors, and friends—with Artemas Ward as their general ; of Rhode Island volunteers, led by the blacksmith and Quaker, Nathaniel Greene ; of a company of “ Connecticut Boys,” whose captain, Israel Putnam, sixty years of age, had left his plough in the furrow, turned loose the oxen, and hurried to the scene of war ; and of a large body of New Hampshire militia with the valiant John Stark at their head (§ 60).

**22.** While this patriot army was cooping up the British within the narrow limits of the Boston peninsula, a party of Capture  
of  
Ticonderoga. “Green Mountain Boys,” led by Ethan Allen and accompanied by Benedict Arnold, crossed Lake Champlain, and in the early morning of the 10th of May, succeeded in getting inside the works of Fort Ticonderoga (p. 114). Reaching the door of the commander’s room, Allen knocked and ordered him to come out. The surprised commander leaped out of bed, and, with his breeches in his hand, opened the door. “Deliver to me the fort instantly,” said Allen in a loud voice. “By what authority ?” asked the bewildered man. “In the name of the Great Jehovah and the Continental Congress,” shouted Allen, as he brandished his sword near the head of the frightened commander. What else could the powerless officer do ? His men were already prisoners. “Thus Ticonderoga, which cost the British nation forty millions of dollars and many lives, was won in ten minutes by a few undisciplined volunteers, without the loss of life or limb.”

**23.** General Gage, chafing under the confinement to which

---

**22.** Where is Ticonderoga (map 2) ? Give an account of its capture. How had it cost the British so much money (p. 117) ?

**23.** Give the preliminaries leading to the battle of Bunker Hill. Where is that hill ? What mistake has been made as to the name given to the battle ? Describe the picture.

he was subjected, determined to extend the lines of his encampment. This coming to the knowledge of the patriots, they arranged a plan by which his intention might be frustrated. Accordingly, in the darkness of night a thousand men, commanded by Colonel Prescott, silently marched to the Charlestown peninsula, and,

Battle  
of  
Bunker Hill.



PORTIFYING BREED'S HILL.

passing Bunker Hill, began to make a fortress of earth on the next elevation, Breed's Hill.

The bells of Boston struck twelve when the first sod was dug. Then every man plied the pickaxe or spade, and carried on the work with such expedition, that, by the dawn of day, a good breastwork was thrown up. Soon afterward a few volunteers succeeded in joining Prescott.

24. Great was the surprise of the British when they saw what had been done by the "rebels" in a single night. At once, from their ships in the river and from a battery on one



of Boston's hills, they poured a shower of shot upon the little earth fort. This failing of its object, two thousand of the king's best troops, commanded by Sir William Howe, crossed

the river, and advanced up the hill against the patriots. "Powder is scarce," said Prescott; "fire low; wait till you see the white of their eyes." The British were driven back with fearful slaughter. Meanwhile, by Howe's orders, Charlestown was fired, and while its church and homes were being consumed by the flames, his soldiers again ascended the hill to make a second attack.



Again they were repulsed.

Would they try a third time? Other troops came to their assistance. Thus encouraged, they advanced once more; but the patriots, worn down with labor and fasting, and entirely out of powder, were no longer able to resist. Prescott gave the word to retreat; and as these raw recruits slowly descended the hill, the victors took possession of the wall of earth that had been so stoutly defended (June 17, 1775).

25. The British had won the battle, but at what a terrible cost! They had lost in killed and wounded more than a thousand men, and had killed or wounded nearly half that number of their opposers. Among the patriots who fell were several of rare worth, but no one's death was more lamented than that of the wise statesman, skilful physician, and fear-

less soldier, Joseph Warren. Mrs. John Adams, in a tearful letter, wrote: "We want him in the Senate, we want him in the profession, we want him in the field." And what had the British gained? A hill—nothing more. Would the men of America now consent to pay the threepence tax on tea? Would the women drink the tea?

26. While success on Lake Champlain, and almost a victory near Boston, were attending the patriot cause, delegates from the colonies were holding the Second General Congress in Philadelphia. On the 15th of June, two days before the Charlestown battle, General Washington, by the unanimous vote of the delegates, was chosen to command all the forces raised or to be raised by the united colonies. The next day, standing by his seat among the delegates, he modestly accepted the appointment, and promised to exert all his powers for the support of the glorious cause. At the same time he declared that he would not receive any pay whatever for his services. To assist him, Congress elected as generals, Artemas Ward, Charles Lee, Philip Schuyler (*ski'-ler*), Horatio Gates, Israel Putnam, Richard Montgomery (p. 115), Nathaniel Greene, and others. Lee, a soldier of fortune, and Gates, a hater of British rule, were born in England. Montgomery, next to Washington in merit, was an Irishman by birth.

Washington in Command.
------------------------------

27. On the 21st of the month Washington left Philadelphia to take command of the army that was watching Gage. He was escorted as far as New York by Lee, Schuyler, and others, all on horseback. They had scarcely gone twenty miles when they met a courier on his way to Congress, with

26. What important action was taken by Congress? Who nominated Washington for the position? *Ans.* Thomas Johnson, of Maryland. Who had previously suggested him for the place? *Ans.* John Adams, of Massachusetts. Where did Congress then meet? What did Washington do and say when accepting the appointment? What generals were also appointed? Which of them were born in Europe?

27. Give an account of Washington's journey, with the courier incident, to take command of the army.

the news of the battle fought four days before. The courier's hurried account made Washington sad, but, upon being told that the patriots fought bravely, a weight of anxiety was lifted from his heart as he exclaimed : "The liberties of the country are safe !"

28. At Cambridge, on the morning of the 3d of July, Washington took formal command of the army. Under the wide-spreading branches of an elm near the college, he sat on his horse while the troops passed before him, and a crowd of spectators raised shouts of rejoicing. His army was composed of brave soldiers, but it was without order or discipline. The men were enlisted for only short periods. Many had no muskets. Only a few had bayonets. Heavy cannon were needed. There was but a small quantity of powder. "In spite of all these difficulties, the eyes of the whole country were confidently fixed on Washington. He was expected to undertake some great enterprise against the hostile army."

29. "One of his most invaluable characteristics was the faculty of bringing order out of confusion. It was this faculty, more than any other, that made him so fit to ride upon the storm of the Revolution, when everything was unfixed and drifting about in a troubled sea. He had not long been at the head of the army before his soldiers thought as highly of him as if he had led them to a hundred victories. They knew that he was the very man the country needed, and the only one who could bring them safely through the great contest against the might of England."

30. While Washington was making preparations to drive the British from Boston, the governor of Canada was inciting

---

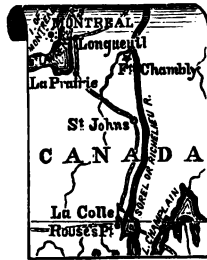
28. When and where did his formal act of assuming command take place ? In what condition was the army at that time ? Where is Cambridge ? What college is there (p. 132) ?

29. What is said of Washington's character, and how he was soon regarded by his soldiers ?

30. What measure did Congress decide upon ? What places did Montgomery take ? Where are they (map p. 159) ? Give an account of Montgomery's defeat and death. Give the further history of the defeated expedition.

the Indians to take up the hatchet against the patriots, and to join him in an attempt to recover Ticonderoga. In self-defence, Congress decided upon a plan to occupy Canada. Two forces were sent, one, under Schuyler, by way of Lake Champlain; the other, under Arnold, by the Kennebec River. Schuyler becoming sick, Montgomery succeeded to the command, and, after capturing St. John's and Montreal, proceeded against Quebec, near which he was joined by Arnold (December, 1775). In the early morning of the last day of the year, while darkness prevailed and a furious snow-storm was raging, the Americans attacked the town, but were defeated. The brave and generous Montgomery was among the slain. Daniel Morgan, of Virginia, of whom we shall hear again, was among the prisoners (§ 91). Arnold, though severely wounded, escaped, and in command of about five hundred men, formed a camp of snow ramparts, where, through the winter, he menaced Quebec.

**Expedition  
against Canada.**



31. Troops were sent to the relief of Arnold, but not for a moment was Washington diverted from the task of freeing Boston from the king's grasp. Having considered one plan after another, he thought it was possible to gain the end by means of batteries on Dorchester Heights. To occupy these, throw up breastworks, and place guns in position, was the work of a single night. The next morning, to the surprise of the British, the Americans were ready to fire upon their quarters in the town, and upon their ships in the harbor. At once General Howe, Gage's successor, made preparations to drive his enemy from

**The British  
driven  
from Boston.**

---

31. Give an account of the manner in which the British were driven from Boston. How many Tories went? Who were they? Where did they go?

the dangerous position, but delay, caused by a violent storm, gave Washington an opportunity to erect batteries so near the town that it was impossible for Howe to remain in it any longer. Consequently, his army of eight thousand men, with more than eleven hundred Tories, hastened on board the ships. The Tories were persons of American birth who adhered to the king's cause. The people of Boston, from the hills, house tops, and wharfs, saw with delight the fleet in a long line sail out of the harbor (March, 1776).

**32.** When Howe was next heard from he was in Halifax, Nova Scotia. Before leaving Boston, he had sent Sir Henry Clinton to go against the southern colonies. Clinton, being joined by a fleet and troops from England, sailed for Charleston, South Carolina.

The patriots there, by intercepted letters, had been warned of his coming, and on Sullivan's Island, at the entrance to the harbor, were busy erecting a fort of palmetto logs when the hostile ships hove in sight.

**33.** On the morning of the 28th of June, a rapid fire from the ships was opened upon the fort, which was defended by less than five hundred men commanded by Colonel Moultrie. Shot and shell made little impression upon the soft, fibrous, spongy palmetto wood. The fire from the fort was slowly delivered, and with good aim. Every one of the balls was sent on a mission of certain destruction. In the fury of the fight, the fort's flag-staff was shattered and the flag fell outside the works, on the beach near the edge of the water. Sergeant Jasper, braving the enemy's shower of shot and shell, leaped through an embrasure to the ground, picked up the flag, fastened it to a wooden gun-rod, and climbing to the top of the log wall, fixed it firmly in place. At night, after

Battle of Fort Moultrie.
--------------------------------

**32.** What movement was made by General Clinton? How were the Charleston people prepared for resistance? Where is Charleston (map 2)? Fort Moultrie?

**33.** Describe the battle of Fort Moultrie. What is said of the importance of that battle? How did the fort get its name?

losing more than two hundred men, the British gave up the contest. Leaving one of their ships fast aground and on fire, with their remaining ships terribly crippled, they withdrew beyond the range of Moultrie's guns. This splendid victory was of immense importance to the patriots of the South. It not only animated them with hope, but it compelled the British to abandon, for the time, their plans for conquest in that quarter. The Carolinas and Georgia were not molested for more than two years.

34. The appeals of America to king and Parliament proving of no avail, the colonists began to think and talk of independence. "It was discussed in every part of the country by farmers and merchants, by mechanics and planters, by the fishermen along the coast, and by the backwoodsmen of the West. It was discussed in town-meetings and from the pulpit, at social gatherings and around the camp-fires, in newspapers and in pamphlets."\* The decision was in favor of independence, and the voice of the people was soon heard in Congress. In that body, assembled in Philadelphia's Old State House, Richard Henry Lee proposed: "That these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved" (June 7, 1776).

<p>Declaration of Independence.</p>
---

35. This resolution was seconded by John Adams, the

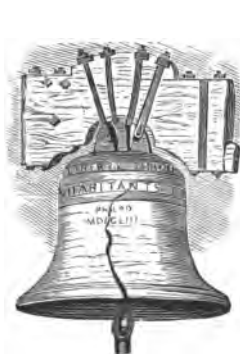
\* A pamphlet called *Common Sense* was a busy agent in bringing public opinion to favor this step. It was written by Thomas Paine, an Englishman, who had recently come to America. Another of Paine's pamphlets began with the words: "These are the times that try men's souls."

34. How did the desire for independence have its beginning? What is said of the discussion and decision? Repeat Lee's resolution. When and where was it offered? Where was Lee born (Appendix, p. 6)?

35. Give the further history of Lee's resolution. To what did it lead? Who wrote the famous paper? Who were Jefferson's associates on the committee?

"Colossus of the Debate," and next day and other days it was discussed with earnestness and ability. While the discussion was in progress, a committee, consisting of Thomas Jefferson, John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, Roger Sherman, and Robert R. Livingston, was chosen by ballot to prepare a paper that would express with fulness the meaning of the resolution. On the 2d of July, Lee's resolution was adopted. The report of the committee was next in order. It was submitted by its author, Thomas Jefferson, and, on the 4th of July, "this immortal state paper," known to us as the Declaration of Independence, was agreed to. Not a single vote was cast against it. By this act the thirteen colonies became the United States of America. Another nation was born. The people were no longer subjects of a king. They were American citizens.

36. "For the support of this Declaration," said the resolute men who thus voted for freedom, "we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor."



LIBERTY BELL.

Over their heads, on the Old State House, was the "Liberty Bell." It bore the inscription: "Proclaim liberty throughout the land unto all the inhabitants thereof." In its tower stood the bellman. At the hall door stood his little blue-eyed son. The vote declaring America free was adopted as we have stated. Instantly, as had been arranged, the little patriot-scion rushed out into the street, and looking up to his father in the open tower, clapped his hands, and shouted, "*Ring!*"

RING! RING!" The people in the street shouted for joy; and in the Quaker City that night were bonfires and illumina-

---

36. What pledge was made in the Declaration? Where was the Liberty Bell? What inscription did it bear? Relate the story. (Read note 37, Appendix, p. 54.)

tions. Would you like to read that famous Declaration ? It is in this book. You will find it in the Appendix. Study it carefully, and you will learn what bitter trials our forefathers suffered before they rebelled.

37. It had not been an easy matter to reach this bold stand, for there were many true and tried patriots who could not see how America, poor in everything except its brave hearts, could cope successfully with the strong power of Great Britain. Could the patriots maintain their Declaration ? Were they numerous enough and sufficiently united to meet the king's host that was coming against them ? We shall see. (Read note 38, Appendix, p. 55.)

38. Anticipating that the next movement of the enemy would be against New York, Washington sent his army to that city, and soon he had evidence that his suspicion was correct. On Staten Island, at the entrance to the city's harbor, Howe was gathering a large force. All his troops that had been driven out of Boston, all of Clinton's that had met defeat in Charleston harbor, these, with several regiments from Ireland, and ten thousand soldiers from the continent of Europe, reached the island, and were formed into an army pronounced "the most perfect of that day in all the world." The troops from the continent of Europe were called Hessians, because the most of them were from Hesse-Cassel, Germany. They had been forcibly taken from the plough, the workshop, and the highway, and hired by the king of England (§ 68). Looking at this great army of thirty thousand men, supported as it was by more than five hundred ships, ready to strike a blow at the feeble communities that had just resolved themselves into a family of States, we fear and tremble for the result.

<p>The British take New York.</p>
---

---

37. Why had not all the patriots favored the Declaration of Independence ?

38. Where is Staten Island (map p. 164) ? How is it separated from Long Island ? What troops were gathered by General Howe on Staten Island ? With what object ? What is said of the Hessians ? Where is Long Island (map p. 175) ?



**39.** Unable to get any information of the enemy's plan of attack, Washington divided his forces with a view to defence at several points. At length, a report reaching him that Howe's troops had crossed to Long Island, where Putnam was



in command, he hurried several regiments to oppose the invaders (map p. 175). In three divisions the enemy advanced and a great battle was fought, which ended in heavy loss and complete defeat to the patriots, who retreated to Brooklyn (Aug. 27, 1776).

**40.** Two days passed. On the night of the third, while a fog shrouded the British camp, Washington succeeded by skilful management in getting his shattered forces across the river to New York, thus accomplishing "one of the most signal achievements of the war." The British had expected to capture his army. How did they find that it had given them the slip? "Near the ferry," so says tradition, "resided a Tory lady. On seeing the embarkation of the first detachment of the American army, she sent off a black servant to inform the first British officer he could find of what was going on. The negro arrived at a Hessian outpost, where, not being able to make himself understood, he was kept under guard as a suspicious person. At daybreak an English officer visited the post, examined the negro, and was astounded by his story. An alarm was at once given, but it was too late." Washington's nine thousand men, with their provisions, military stores, and field artillery, were in the city of New York. (Read note 10, App., p. 44.)

**41.** A more disastrous blow than this on Long Island did not fall upon the patriot cause during the entire war. Coming

**39.** What is said of the battle of Long Island and retreat of the patriots?

**40.** What is said of Washington's signal achievement? Relate the tradition.

**41.** What is said of the consequences of the battle?

so soon after the Declaration of Independence, it spread discouragement in every direction. Men, losing heart, left the ranks of the patriot army and returned to their homes, while hundreds of Tories, believing that General Howe would soon put an end to the "rebellion," as they persisted in calling the war, flocked to his standard. How many calamities followed that unfortunate battle! The first and greatest was the loss of Brooklyn and New York.

42. What would be the enemy's next movement? Washington desired to procure information respecting Howe's position and probable intentions. Who would volunteer to get it? To be a spy was to be an outlaw. To be captured would be to die a felon's death. There was one brave man, not yet twenty-two years of age, who was willing to die that his country might live. He had received an education in Yale College, and been a school-teacher. He was now a captain in Washington's army. When warned of the danger of entering the enemy's lines in disguise, he replied: "I wish to be useful, and every kind of service necessary to the public good becomes honorable by being necessary."

Nathan Hale.

43. Putting on a plain suit of brown clothes, his school-master's garb, he crossed from Connecticut to Long Island, and made his way to Brooklyn. Having taken sketches of the enemy's fortifications, and written his notes in Latin, he was on the point of returning to the Connecticut shore, when he was seized as a spy. He was taken to New York, where a detachment of the invaders was already quartered. Being brought before General Howe, he frankly confessed his rank in the patriot army, also the object of his visit to the British camp. Howe, regarding him as a rebel as well as a spy, and believing that he could not be too swiftly or too severely

---

42. Who was Nathan Hale (§ 44)? What did he volunteer to do? What warning was given to him? What was his reply?

43. Give an account of his movements and capture.



to the end of the misfortunes of the Long Island battle. The thousands of patriots who were so unfortunate as to be taken prisoners in that contest, and in its train of disasters, were put on board old ships and treated with cruel neglect. A few only lived to tell of the miseries they had endured. The most notable of these decaying hulks was known as the Jersey Prison Ship. She was anchored near Brooklyn.

46. The faith and patience of the patriots during these gloomy months of 1776 were to have their reward. Cornwallis, instead of crossing the Delaware, quartered his troops in New Jersey, twelve hundred, mostly Hessians, being posted at Trenton. Here was an opportunity, Washington thought, of striking a blow that would animate his army, and revive hopeful feelings among the people.

<p>Battle of Trenton.</p>
-----------------------------------

47. Christmas night came, snow covered the ground, and ice filled the Delaware. At night, in open boats, after struggling for hours in the floating ice, twenty-four hundred strong men, with Washington as their leader, succeeded in crossing the river. Then they marched nine miles, a storm of sleet and hail beating against them at every step they

---

he planned independent movements for himself. He entered New Jersey, and took up his quarters in a tavern three miles from his troops, where General Wilkinson, a messenger from General Gates, found him. "Suddenly a party of British dragoons turned a corner of the road. 'Here, sir, are the British Cavalry!' exclaimed Wilkinson. 'Where?' asked Lee. 'Where is the guard?' The guards, alas, unwary as their general, and chilled by the air of a frosty morning, had stacked their arms, and repaired to the south side of a house to sun themselves; and were now chased by the dragoons in different directions. A voice declared: 'If the general does not surrender in five minutes, I will set fire to the house.' . . . The general, bareheaded and in his slippers, was mounted on Wilkinson's horse, which stood at the door, and the dragoons clattered off with their prisoner." (See note to § 64).—*Irving's Life of Washington*.

---

46. What bold movement did Washington now project?

47. Describe how he carried out his plan. Where is Trenton (map 2)? Princeton? What college is at Princeton (p. 133)? Describe the picture on page 168.

took. Just as the light of the new day began to appear they reached Trenton, and, with rapid movement, surprised and overpowered the hostile force there. Nearly a thousand prisoners were taken (December 26). Cornwallis's force, near Trenton, being superior to his own, Washington returned to his camp west of the Delaware. "All our hopes," wrote an English statesman, "were blasted by the unhappy affair at



WASHINGTON CROSSING THE DELAWARE. (FROM LEUTZE'S PICTURE IN THE CAPITOL, WASHINGTON.)

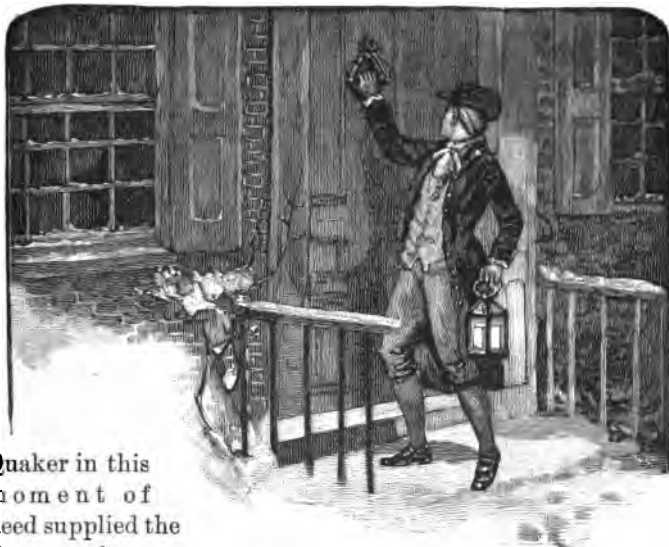
Trenton." Astonished at such a stroke from an enemy whom he had regarded as subdued, Cornwallis united his forces for safety at Princeton. Washington then recrossed the Delaware and occupied Trenton.

48. Now, at the close of the year, the term of service of many of Washington's soldiers expired. They were weary and yearned for home. Could they not be persuaded to remain six weeks longer? A bounty of ten dollars would influence

---

48. State how Robert Morris helped the patriot's cause. What further can you say of him? *Ans.* In his old age he lost his fortune and was confined in prison for debt. Describe the picture on page 169.

some, but Washington had not the money. In haste he wrote to his friend, Robert Morris, "the Financier of the Revolution," whose home was in Philadelphia, for six hundred dollars at once. Morris received the letter in the evening, but was at his wits' end to raise the sum, small as it was, for hard money was very scarce. Fortunately, a wealthy



Quaker in this moment of need supplied the sinews of war, and the money was sent. Morris then

MORRIS GOING FROM HOUSE TO HOUSE TO BORROW MONEY.

went from house to house, rousing people from their beds, to borrow more money, and before the close of the second day he sent Washington several thousand dollars additional.\*

---

\*Two years later Congress appointed Morris to be Superintendent of Finance. He established a bank, and borrowed more than a million of dollars on his own credit, to buy food and clothing for the soldiers. In 1781 he sent several thousand barrels of flour to the army. He came from England, his birthplace, when he was thirteen years of age.

**49.** Cornwallis, on hearing of Washington's return to Trenton, started with a body of his troops for that place, and at night made an attempt to cross the stream that runs through the town, but was repulsed. The patriots were now confronted by a force much larger than their own. If defeated, they would be in danger of capture, for the Delaware could not be readily crossed because of the floating ice. In this emergency Washington adopted a bold plan. Leaving his camp-fires burning to deceive the enemy, he silently withdrew his troops from their posts, and at midnight began a march by a roundabout road to attack the force which Cornwallis had left at Princeton. He had eighteen miles before him. At sunrise, just as his tired troops were entering the outskirts of the town, they met the enemy's force which was already on its way to join Cornwallis. At first the British gained an advantage, but the prompt arrival of Washington at once changed affairs, and they were completely routed. The loss of the patriots was small, but the brave General Mercer was of the number (January 3, 1777).

**Battle  
of  
Princeton.**

**50.** These two victories ruined Howe's calculations. He had supposed that the "rebels" were dispersed and thoroughly discouraged, and that, in consequence, it would be easy for him to cross the Delaware when the ice permitted, and to occupy Philadelphia. Now he did not dare to order Cornwallis to advance a single step, nor did he think it prudent to attack Washington, who, in quarters near Morristown, was protected by woods, hills, and rivers. In vain, during the spring and early summer, did he try to bring on a general engagement. Such a battle, he felt sure, would give him a chance to crush the "rebels"

**Washington's  
Fabian Policy.**

**49.** In what difficulty was Washington placed at Trenton? How did he get out of it? Describe the battle.

**50.** What effect did Washington's victories have upon the British? What pet name was applied to Washington? Why? Where is Morristown (map p. 90)?

by overwhelming numbers. Washington, seeing the trap, did not put his foot into it. Like Fabius of old contending against Hannibal to save Rome, he avoided a battle with his strong foe, hoping to wear him out by delays, by attacking his outposts, and by cutting off his supplies. Hence he has been aptly called the American Fabius.

51. Thus foiled, Howe adopted an entirely new plan. In the fleet commanded by his brother, Admiral Howe, he sailed from Staten Island, and ascended Chesapeake Bay. He landed his army, and began a march against Philadelphia. Not before Washington heard of Howe's appearance at the head of the bay did he realize how determined was that commander to possess the city. With all speed he marched to dispute Howe's progress. At Chad's Ford, Brandywine Creek, a severe battle was fought, ending in a victory for Howe (September 11).

The British  
take  
Philadelphia.

52. On the side of the patriots in this contest were two distinguished foreigners, the youthful Marquis of Lafayette and Count Pulaski. The former had left his beloved France, had evaded the British attempts to capture him, had crossed the ocean in a ship fitted out at his own expense, and had offered to serve in Washington's army without pay or other reward from Congress. In this, his first battle for freedom, he was shot through the leg, but, binding up the wound, he kept the field till the end of the action.\* Pulaski, a Polish

\* Lafayette fought in several other battles, always with courage and gallantry, and was a member of the court that tried André as a spy (§ 90). Cornwallis on one occasion tried to capture him, and was so sure of success that he wrote home: "The boy cannot escape me" (§ 94). After the war Lafayette visited the United States twice, the first time on the invitation of Washington (1784). Washington's mother was then seventy-eight years of age. Meeting her in her garden one day, Lafayette praised her son. She delighted him by making the reply: "I am not surprised about what George has done, for he was always a good boy."

51. What movements did Howe make in a new plan of action? Give an account of the battle that followed. Where is Brandywine Creek (map p. 90)?

52. What is said of Lafayette? Of Pulaski?



nobleman, was prompted by motives equally honorable ; and for his good conduct in this battle of Brandywine he received a general's commission and an important command (§ 73).

53. Washington made a second stand to oppose Howe's progress, but a violent storm prevented a battle. A detachment of his army under General Wayne being surprised and defeated at Paoli (*pā-o'-le*), the enemy at last entered Philadelphia (September 26, 1777).

54. A large part of Howe's army was quartered in Germantown (§ 97, p. 97). Washington, not disheartened by his recent reverses, determined to attack it. At sunrise he entered the village, but, owing to a fog that prevailed, his troops were thrown into confusion, and were fired upon from a stone house and other buildings. Seeing that what at first promised to be a victory was being changed to a defeat, he gave the word to retreat (October 4). This success of the British being followed by others against the forts on the Delaware, their ships ascended the river to Philadelphia.

55. Winter had now set in and Washington's troops, worn down by long and hard service, needed repose. Where could they find quarters, and, at the same time, be in a position to watch Howe's army and protect the country about it from being stripped by the enemy's foraging parties? Valley Forge, twenty miles from Philadelphia, was decided upon. There the patriots braved the winter's cold till they could cut down trees and build huts. These huts were of logs filled in with clay: their fire-places were of logs covered with plaster. The floor was the bare ground. With sufficient food and clothing the men would have been able to pass the winter in

Washington  
at  
Valley Forge.

53. What is said of Washington's further efforts to oppose Howe's march? What is said of Wayne's defeat?

54. What is said of the battle of Germantown? Where is Germantown (p. 97)?

55. Where is Valley Forge (map 2)? Give an account of the sufferings of Washington's army there.

comfort, though snow-storms and cold blasts were frequent. But they were without blankets, and so badly off for shoes that the footsteps of many might be traced in blood. Food, too, was scarce. During a period of three days there was not a particle of bread in the camp.

56. Washington did his best to supply the needs of his men. He faithfully performed his own duty, and urged the



VALLEY FORGE.

agents of Congress to perform theirs. He was sorely concerned from several causes. He had sent his best troops to oppose an invasion from Canada conducted by General Burgoyne (*bur-goin'*). His remaining troops with him at Valley Forge were suffering, and he was required to be on the alert

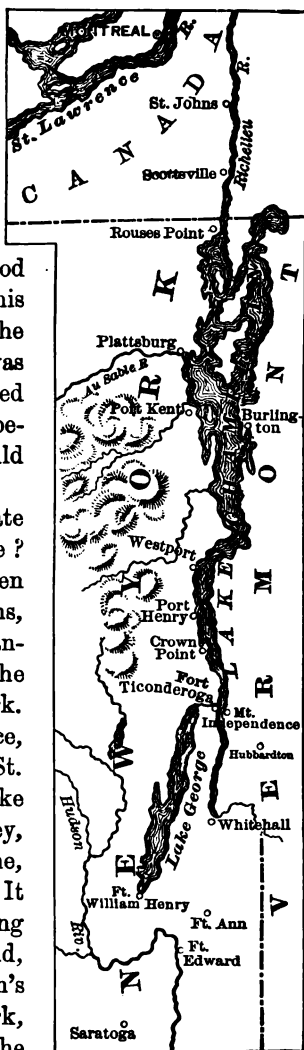
56. By what difficulties and plottings was the character of Washington tested? Who was the leader of the plot against Washington? *Ans.* General Conway, a French officer of Irish descent; hence the plot was known as the Conway Cabal. What did Conway try to accomplish? *Ans.* He wanted to have the chief command taken from Washington and given to Gates. What was the Fabian policy (§ 50)?

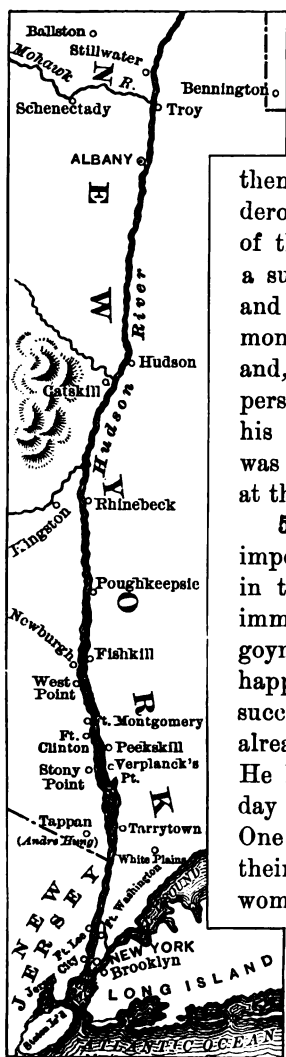
night and day to thwart Howe's movements. In the midst of all this, he was informed that a cabal, incited by certain foreign-born officers in the army, was secretly trying to depose him with a view to the elevation of one of its number to the chief command. Yet, in no other period of the war did the greatness of his character shine more brightly. The cause in which he was engaged was dear to him; and he firmly adhered to his Fabian policy, which he believed was the only one that could lead to success.

57. Was Washington fortunate in his plans to defeat Burgoyne? In June, of 1777, an army of ten thousand men, British, Canadians, and Germans, left Canada, and invaded the State of New York.

**Burgoyne's  
Invasion.**

The route for a part of this force, under the command of Colonel St. Leger (*lej'er*), was by way of Lake Ontario and the Mohawk Valley, but the main body, under Burgoyne, proceeded up Lake Champlain. It was the design of this invading army to advance upon Albany, and, with the co-operation of Clinton's troops from the city of New York, to get possession of the posts on the





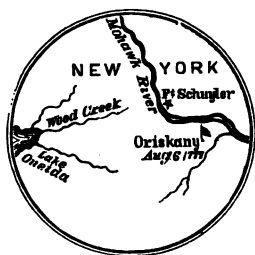
Hudson River, and thus cut off New England from the other “rebellious colonies.” Near Crown Point, Burgoyne was joined by several hundred Indian warriors, and thence he advanced to attack Fort Ticonderoga. General St. Clair, in command of the fort, seeing no chance of making a successful defence, evacuated the fort and retreated. At Hubbardton, Vermont, some of his troops were overtaken, and, after a spirited action, were dispersed (July 7); but the larger part of his force joined General Schuyler, who was in command of the American army at the North. (Note 39, Appendix, p. 55.)

58. After various delays, caused by impediments which Schuyler had placed in the way of the invaders, by felling immense trees across the roads, Burgoyne reached the Hudson, and was happy in the fancied prospect of a great success before him. But causes were already working a change in his dream. He had let loose the Indians, and every day they brought scalps to his camp. One day they brought twenty. Among their trophies was the scalp of a young woman, Jane McCrea, who was engaged to be married to one of Burgoyne’s officers. These barbarous acts aroused a terrible feeling of resentment among the inhabitants, hundreds of whom flocked to

58. Who was Schuyler (§ 26)? How did he retard Burgoyne’s march? What is

Schuyler's standard. Being life-long hunters they were ready-made riflemen. They brought their own guns and in cow horns carried their powder.

59. Another cloud in Burgoyne's sky came from the Mohawk Valley. There his detachment of regulars and a thousand Indians, under St. Leger, laid siege to Fort Schuyler, where the city of Rome now stands. At O-ris'-ka-ny, they attacked a body of patriots who were marching to the relief of the fort. They were repulsed, though the heroic leader of the patriots, General Herkimer, was mortally wounded (August 6). Arnold offered to go against the besiegers, and



General Schuyler, accepting the offer, detached three regiments for the expedition. Knowing that this force was too small to overthrow the enemy, Arnold cunningly contrived to send emissaries into St. Leger's camp to report that a large army was marching to capture the besiegers. The stratagem worked like a charm.

The Indians had been expecting easy times, little fighting, many scalps, and much plunder. Now, fickle as the wind, they began to desert. They robbed the British officers of their clothes, and made off with the booty, and, though Arnold was not within forty miles of the fort, the frightened St. Leger in the darkness of night hurried after the fugitives. His artillery, ammunition, tents, and stores fell into the hands of the Americans (August 23).

said of the atrocities of the Indians? Did the Indians kill Jane McCrea? *Ans.* The exact manner of her death was not ascertained. The Indians asserted that they were pursued and fired upon by a party of Americans, and that one of the shots intended for them killed the lady. Where is Crown Point (map p. 174)? Fort Ticonderoga?

59. Give an account of Arnold's cunning stratagem. Where is Oriskany (see map)? Where is Fort Schuyler (map 2)? By what name was it previously known? *Ans.* Fort Stanwix. What city is there now? Who commanded the fort during the siege? *Ans.* Colonel Gansevoort. While the battle was raging at Oriskany, Colonel Willett sallied from the fort and captured the baggage, flags, and stores of the besiegers. (App., p. 45.)



RALLY OF THE PEOPLE. (FROM MARKHAM'S *basso-reliefs* ON THE MONUMENT AT SARATOGA.)

60. A still larger cloud in Burgoyne's sky came from another quarter. Needing supplies, he sent eight hundred men under Colonel Baum (*boum*) to seize some that were in Ben-

60. Give an account of the two battles of Bennington. Were they fought in Vermont or New York? *Ans.* New York. Where is Bennington (map p. 175)? Where did we meet Stark before (p. 154)? Where is Hubbardton (map p. 174)?

nington. It so happened that just then a body of New Hampshire militia, commanded by John Stark (§ 21), then a colonel, afterward a general, arrived at that town. Joined by recruits from Vermont and Massachusetts, Stark sallied forth, and, coming in sight of the enemy, mounted a rail fence, and, addressing his soldiers, said: "Now, my men, there are the Redcoats and Tories. Before night they must be ours or Molly Stark will be a widow." \* Throwing their knapsacks and jackets in heaps upon the ground, the patriots with a cheer advanced to the attack. In two hours not a Redcoat or Tory was to be seen, except about six hundred who were being marched to Bennington as prisoners of war. Toward evening a body of Hessians, sent to the aid of Baum, appeared in sight. Fortunately Seth Warner, with a regiment of "Green Mountain Boys," at that moment reached Stark's side, and the second battle of the day ended as the first (August 16).

61. Truly, Burgoyne's sky had become very dark. His Indian allies deserted him. Provisions came in too slowly. The promised aid from Clinton could not be sent, owing to Washington's movements against Howe (§ 50). The patriots, greatly elated, rallied to the support of Schuyler, and, under his directions, were preparing to capture or destroy the entire invading army under Burgoyne, when General Gates, by appointment from Congress, was placed in command of the American forces at the North.

---

\* Some knowing one has discovered at this late day that when Stark's wife in infancy was christened, she received the name Elizabeth, hence that he could not have spoken of her as Molly: he must have said Betty. Edward Everett, in his *Life of Stark*, Halleck, Irving, Lossing, and a score more like them, testify that Stark spoke of his wife as Molly on the memorable occasion alluded to. Did Stark really make that famous speech? His grandson, Caleb Stark, in a memoir of the general, is inclined to treat it as a legend.

---

61. What clouds darkened Burgoyne's prospects? Who succeeded General Schuyler in the command of the northern army? Who put Gates into that place? Who was Gates (§ 26)?

**62.** Just a month later the armies of Gates and Burgoyne met near Stillwater. The battle is known as the first of Stillwater, also as the battle of Bem's Heights. Man fought against man, regiment against regiment. Night ended the contest (September 19). It could not be said that the result was a victory to Burgoyne, for he had lost six hundred men, his march toward Albany had been stopped, and an opposing army, strong in number and in excellent spirits, was ready to check his slightest movement. He waited for reinforcements from Clinton: he waited in vain. In despair he again offered battle, hoping to cut his way through the American lines. This brought on the second battle of Stillwater, otherwise called the battle of Saratoga (October 7). Burgoyne was no more fortunate than before; and, ten days later, surrendered (October 17). A body of Americans marched to the tune of Yankee Doodle into the quarters of the British, while the British troops marched out and laid down their arms.\*

**63.** The joy of the patriots in every part of the land was unbounded. A royal army, well equipped and commanded by one of the king's ablest generals, had been defeated and captured. Says a distinguished writer: "It was one of the decisive battles of the world." How it changed the character of the war! How it secured the French alliance for the United States! In England, the news produced dismay. In

---

\* On the side of the Americans in these two battles was Kosciuszko, a Polish patriot, distinguished for nobleness of soul, courage, and skill in war. A monument to his memory adorns the grounds of West Point, he having been the chief engineer in constructing the works of that strong fortress. In Europe, after the American war, he fought against Russia, his country's oppressor; was defeated, and, covered with wounds, was captured. During two years he was confined in a Russian prison. His death, which occurred in Switzerland, in 1817, was caused by a fall from his horse over a precipice.

---

**62.** Give an account of the two great battles that followed. When did Burgoyne surrender? Where is Saratoga (map p. 174)? Repeat what is said of Kosciuszko (note).

**63.** What was the effect of Burgoyne's surrender in America? In England? In France? What came of Franklin's efforts? Where did we meet Franklin before (pp. 108, 146)? When was the treaty with France made?



France, where Dr. Franklin, philosopher and statesman, was representing the American Congress, it had a very different effect. "All Paris was thrown into transports of joy." In response to Franklin's efforts, money, clothing, and ammunition were secretly sent to America, and the government acknowledging the independence of the United States, agreed to a treaty of friendship and alliance (February, 1778).

64. The year 1777, as we have seen, was a busy one. While important deeds were being enacted on the battle-

Doings  
of  
Congress.

field, \* Congress, or its committees, held meetings nearly every day. When Cornwallis was on the eve of crossing the Delaware (§ 45), Congress adjourned to Baltimore, but soon returned to Philadelphia. On the approach of Howe, it went at first to Lancaster, Pa., and then to York, a few miles further away. One of its most important acts was the formation of Articles of Confederation for the better Union of the States. These, however, did not go into effect at once. They had to be adopted first by the legislatures of the States (§ 103).

Another important act was the adoption of the national flag, which consisted of "thirteen



\* "Prescott, the commander of the British forces on Rhode Island, had his quarters at a lonely farm-house. Hearing of this, William Barton, a colonel in the American army, embarked a party at Providence in two whale-boats, and at night, after the young moon had gone down, crossed to the island. Coming across fields, the party surrounded Prescott's house, burst open the doors, took him out of his bed, hurried him off without giving him time to put on his clothes, and carried him to Providence. The rank of Prescott was equal to that of Lee, and Washington promptly effected an exchange."—*Bancroft's History of the United States.*

64. What was done by Congress in 1777? At what places did Congress meet? Describe the first national flag. When was it adopted? Describe Barton's exploit. What exchange was made? How had Lee been captured (note to § 45)?

stripes, alternating red and white, and thirteen stars, white in a blue field" (June, 1777). Arranged in a circle, the stars represent the union of the States. (Note 13, App., p. 46.)

65. In the British Parliament, Lord Chatham said: "We cannot conquer America. In three campaigns we have done nothing. We may traffic and barter with every little German prince that sells his subjects; our efforts are forever vain. If I were an American, as I am an Englishman, while a foreign troop was landed in my country I never would lay down my arms; never, never, never." Lord North, the head of the ministry, on hearing of Burgoyne's surrender, "was so agitated that he could neither eat nor sleep." King George was so angry and stubborn that, rather than permit Lord Chatham to act as a peacemaker, he declared: "If the nation will not stand by me, they shall have another king."

King and  
Parliament.

66. With France on the side of America, the British feared that a French fleet would ascend the Delaware, and, by co-operating with Washington, would capture their forces in Philadelphia. Orders were hastily sent to General Clinton, Howe's successor, to evacuate the city without delay. Accordingly, with his army of seventeen thousand men, around whom crowded hundreds of disappointed Tories, Clinton crossed the Delaware, his intention being to find safety in New York. Washington followed, and, overtaking the retreating army as it was leaving Monmouth, sent word to General Lee to begin the attack. Instead of obeying, Lee made a disgraceful retreat, and, being met by Washington, was reproved in very severe terms. Washington then continued the pursuit, and, ably supported by Wayne, Greene, and Lafayette, made a

The British  
Leave  
Philadelphia.

65. What bold statement did Lord Chatham make? Where did we meet Chatham before (§ 128, p. 115). How did Lord North act? How did the king act?

66. Why did the British army leave Philadelphia? Give an account of the battle that followed. What is said of the colored troops? Where is Monmouth (map 2)?

gallant fight, winning the thanks of Congress for his "good conduct and victory." The day was one of the hottest of that hot summer. Many poor soldiers were sun-struck and fell dead. "Of the patriots who on that day periled life for their country, more than seven hundred black Americans fought side by side with the white" (June 28, 1778).\*

67. Lee, irritated by Washington's reproof on the battlefield, sent two angry letters to Washington. He was tried for disobedience and for disrespect to his superior officer, and, being pronounced guilty, was sentenced to be suspended from command for one year. But he was never permitted to join the army again. An impertinent letter which he sent to Congress provoked that body to dismiss him from the service. Then, with abusive tongue against Congress, Washington, and the patriot cause, he found companionship among the enemies of liberty. Before the end of the war his earthly career was closed. "He died as he had lived, loving neither God nor man."

68. The patriots were beset by many foes, the king's soldiers from Great Britain being but a small number comparatively. Thousands of kidnapped Germans, as we have seen, were sent against them (§ 38). Almost every family in Hesse mourned for one of its members. How many Indians took up the tomahawk

<p>The Tories and their Deeds.</p>
--

\* Washington's army was then in a good state of discipline, owing in large part to the efforts of General Steuben, a German baron. "Steuben began with one hundred and twenty men. These he drilled twice a day. He took the musket into his own hands, and showed the men how he wished them to handle it. The only use which the few soldiers who were provided with bayonets had hitherto made of them had been as forks on which to roast their meat. Within less than four months these same soldiers took Stony Point at the point of the bayonet, without firing a gun. If we class men according to their services in the war, no one after Washington and Greene stands so high as Steuben" (§ 73).—*Greene's German Element in the War.*

67. What is said about Lee? Give his previous history (§§ 26, 45).

68. What four peoples were fighting against the patriots? What is said of the Hessians? Of the Tories? Who were the Tories (§ 31)?

and scalping-knife on the same side is not known. But the worst enemies of the patriots were their neighbors, the Tories. These were numerous. Some took no part in the war further than in words to condemn the course of the patriots. Others, to the number of several thousand, entered the ranks of the royal army, and fought against country and kindred. It was no uncommon thing for a father to be on one side in the contest and his sons on the other, or for brother to war against brother (§ 73).

69. Many of the Tories were moved by the most malevolent feelings. By promises of scalps and plunder they induced bands of Indians to join them. Then, taking advantage of the absence of the patriots from their families—patriots fighting for liberty in Washington's army—they fell upon the defenseless homes and committed the most cruel outrages. Their invasion of the beautiful valley of Wy-o'-ming, in Pennsylvania, has few parallels in history for spiteful cruelty. Their leader boasted that he and his party had burned a thousand houses (July, 1778). The poet Campbell, in his *Gertrude of Wyoming*, feelingly describes some of the incidents in this "massacre of Wyoming." About four months later bands of Tories and Indians entered Cherry Valley, New York, and murdered and scalped women and children. General Sullivan went against these merciless Indian foes, and in battle near the Chemung (*shemung*) River, New York, taught them a lesson which they never forgot, enforcing it by burning their villages and destroying their growing crops of corn (1779).

70. The vast region north of the Ohio was, during the

69. What is said of the doings of the Tories and Indians at Wyoming? Cherry Valley? How were the Indians chastised? Where is Wyoming (map 2)? Cherry Valley? The Chemung River? What city now covers the Chemung battle-ground? *Ans.* Elmira, formerly the village of Newtown.

70. What region at the West was held by the British? Who was Hamilton? Where were his headquarters? What inhuman policy did he pursue? What expedition did he plan? How was the plan frustrated? Where is Kaskaskia (map 4)? What is said of its age?

first years of the war, in the undisputed possession of the English. Its governor, General Hamilton, from his headquarters at Detroit, offered rewards for scalps, but not for prisoners. Thus incited, the savages scoured the country in every direction to murder its unprotected settlers. No person was spared, for the scalp of a woman or child brought as big a reward as that of a man. Having made bargains with various tribes of Indians, Hamilton planned an expedition against what was then the western part of Virginia

The  
Northwest  
Saved.



CLARK CROSSING THE DROWNED LANDS OF THE WABASH (§ 71).

and known as the County of Kentucky. Before, however, he could put his plan into execution, Colonel Clark, a backwoodsman of the county, was leading a party of volunteers to frustrate him. On rafts and flatboats the Kentuckians floated down the Ohio, and, when within a few miles of its mouth, landed, and, marching northward, captured Kaskaskia, the oldest town in Illinois. Other captures were also made (1778).

71. On hearing of these events, Hamilton left Detroit

71. Give the particulars of Clark's final success. What is said of its importance? Of the age of Vincennes? Where is Vincennes (map 4)? Detroit?

and began a march toward Kaskaskia. It took him more than a month to get to Vincennes (*vin-senz'*), the oldest town in Indiana, and, as has been supposed, "the seat of empire of the mysterious race known as Mound Builders" (p. 12). Though the middle of winter had come, and there were many miles between the two commanders, Clark resolved to seek his enemy. After a toiling march of sixteen days, five of them in crossing the "drowned lands of the Wabash," his men often wading up to their breasts in water and holding their rifles and powder-horns above their heads, he appeared before Vincennes. "The hair-buyer," as Hamilton was called, made a stubborn defense, but in vain. He and his troops became prisoners of war (February, 1779). It has been said that, "except for George Rogers Clark and his victories, the Northwest would to-day be a British Canadian province."

72. Ten days after Clinton had evacuated Philadelphia, a French fleet, commanded by the Count D'Estaing (*des-tang*), anchored in Delaware Bay, but the British fleet and army were already safe at New York. After making a futile attempt to co-operate with an American force for the capture of a large garrison of the enemy stationed near Newport, on Rhode Island, D'Estaing sailed for Boston to repair his ships, they having been disabled near the island in a furious storm (1778).

French  
Ships Arrive.

73. The close of the year saw Savannah in the hands of the British, it having been captured after a feeble defense by a force sent from New York (December 29, 1778). A few days later, Sunbury and Augusta, towns of Georgia, also fell into their hands. Thus encouraged, the southern Tories formed themselves into

War  
at the South.

72. What aid came to the Americans? What movement did D'Estaing make?

73. State what you can of the attempt to recover Savannah. When had Savannah fallen into the hands of the British? What other places fell into their hands? State how Sunbury and Savannah are situated (map p. 92). What success did Colonel Pickens achieve? State all you can of Pulaski.

bands for the purpose of laying waste the plantations of their patriotic neighbors and for plunder. One of these bands, seven hundred strong, was pursued by Colonel Pickens, at the head of a body of Carolinians, and completely routed (see table p. 212). During this year reverse oftener than success attended the movements of the Americans at the South, the failure of General Lincoln and D'Estaing to recover Savannah being the most disastrous (October 9). (See table p. 212.) In this failure before Savannah, Pulaski, while leading an attack, was mortally wounded (§ 52).

74. At the North, the British gained possession of two forts on the Hudson River, one at Stony Point, a rocky hill on the west side of the river, the other on an eminence on the east side. These, being directly opposite each other, formed what our Washington Irving was pleased to call, "The miniature pillars of Hercules of which Stony Point was the Gibraltar." Believing that the further object of the British was to gain West Point, the guardian fortress of the river, the capture of these two gate forts being merely steps to that end, Washington arranged a plan for the recovery of Stony Point. The place was defended by heavy guns and a garrison of six hundred men. General Wayne, "Mad Anthony," as he was called because of his daring valor, was chosen to lead the enterprise, which was to be conducted at night with the utmost secrecy. Accordingly, on the 16th of July, just after midnight, his troops approached the Point. "Not a dog barked, for every one in the neighborhood had been privately destroyed beforehand." Guided by a negro, who had been in the habit of selling fruit to the garrison, the Americans reached the causeway which crossed the morass at the foot of the hill. Quickly the British sentinels there were seized,

Storming  
Stony Point.

74. What losses befell the Americans at the North? What plan did Washington arrange? Describe how it was carried out. Where is Stony Point (map p. 175)? How did Irving regard it? (For commanders, etc., of principal battles, see table page 212.)

and gagged to prevent them from giving an alarm. In two columns the troops advanced from opposite sides of the hill, "and so well had the whole affair been conducted, that they were close upon the outworks before they were discovered." On they pressed, and, heedless of grapeshot and musketry, the two columns gained the center of the works nearly at the same moment. The victory was complete. Not a gun had been fired by the assailants. The bayonet had done its silent, deadly work. No event of the war stands out with a more brilliant light.\*

75. Our attention has been directed to events on the land, but there were occurrences on the ocean, which, if not as important, were numerous, and far-reaching in their effects. In the year 1776 alone, American privateers captured about three hundred and fifty vessels, several of them laden with powder and other supplies intended for the British army. The victory gained at a later period by John Paul Jones, a Scotchman by birth, stands out as the most interesting naval event of the war. In command of a government ship of eighteen guns, he crossed the Atlantic, made numerous prizes in the English Channel, and sailed along the coast of Scotland and around Ireland, producing alarm in every direction. He ended the cruise by putting into a French port. Aided by Dr. Benjamin Franklin and the French king, he was placed in command of a small squadron. To his flag-ship he gave the name *Bon Homme (hom)* Richard, meaning, as the French would translate it, "*Poor* Richard." This he did

Paul Jones's  
Victory.

\* "Wayne, who led one of the columns, received at the inner abatis a concussion on his head from a musket ball, and would have fallen to the ground, but his two aides-de-camp supported him. Thinking it was a death wound, 'Carry me into the fort,' said he, 'and let me die at the head of my column.' He was borne in between his aids, and soon recovered his self-possession."—*Irring's Life of Washington*.

75. Who was Paul Jones? How did he trouble the British? What aid did he get from Dr. Franklin? What name did he give to his flag-ship, and why?



in compliment to the doctor, "Poor Richard" being the *nom de plume* under which the many wise maxims of that great American philosopher were given to the public.

76. With the American flag flying from the mast-head of his vessels, Jones set sail. When off Flam-borough Head, England, he saw a large fleet of merchantmen under convoy of two British war ships, and at once gave chase.



1 GEN. WAYNE. 2 GEN. GREENE. 3 PAUL JONES.

Now, at the age of thirty-two, he was to do his greatest day's work. Toward evening the Richard came within musket shot of the *Serapis*, the larger<sup>1</sup> convoy ship, a frigate of forty-four guns, commanded by Captain Pearson. One of the most desperate fights that ever took place now began. The firing continued more than an hour, when, the two ships coming in contact, Jones with his own hands assisted to lash them

together. In this position the action continued two hours longer, there being moments when both ships were on fire.

Man fought man with pike, pistol, or cutlass. At length, the British captain, unable to prolong the contest, hauled down his flag (September 23, 1779).\*

77. As morning dawned the *Richard* was found to be in a sinking condition. As rapidly as possible her wounded men were removed to the *Serapis*, to which vessel Jones had time only to transfer his flag, when the *Richard* went down. The other convoy ship having been captured by one of Jones's vessels, the victorious hero steered for Holland. When Pearson surrendered, he, of course, delivered up his sword. It is related that Jones immediately returned it, saying: "You have fought gallantly, sir, and I hope your king will give you a better ship." Pearson was afterward knighted. On hearing of this, Jones remarked: "He deserved it, and if I fall in with him again, I will make a lord of him."

78. We remember how Clinton was baffled in his attempt against Charleston, the guns of Fort Moultrie proving too much for him (§ 33). He did not forget the failure, and, with better preparations, tried again. Just as he was about to make an assault by land and water, after a siege of forty days, General Lincoln, commanding the town's defenders, agreed to a surrender (May 12, 1780). The victors at once began the work of plunder.

The British  
Capture  
Charleston.

\* "Jones saw that his only chance for an equal fight was to close with his adversary, and fight it out, muzzle to muzzle and hand to hand. His first attempt to close failed. His next was successful, but not a moment too soon. The *Richard* had received eighteen shots below the water line, had four feet of water in her hold, four of her guns were burst, and a hundred of her men were killed or wounded. The ship, in fact, was beaten; but the indomitable heart of Jones, supported by a few gallant spirits, was not conquered. Scottish grit carried the day against English pluck."—*Parson's Life of Franklin*.

76. Give an account of Jones's great naval battle.

77. Give an account of the events next morning and afterward with Pearson.

78. What success attended Clinton's efforts at the South? What is said of the siege of Savannah and Lincoln's surrender? The conduct of the victors?

The silver plate of the planters was carried off, and thousands of slaves were seized and sent to the West Indies to be sold into slavery anew. Expeditions were sent from Charleston against the patriots of the interior. These being successful, Clinton was not able to see that any more men or places about him were in "rebellion." So, in the pleasant conviction that South Carolina was subdued, he returned to New York, leaving Cornwallis to hold the conquests.

79. It is true that South Carolina, as well as North Carolina and Georgia, was under the heel of Cornwallis, yet the country was not conquered. No large army was there to oppose the British forces, but bands of patriots, led by the heroic Sumter, Marion, and Pickens, were constantly on the alert to thwart hostile plans and movements. They cut off foraging parties, captured supply trains, rescued American prisoners, attacked outlying posts, by these acts cheering the faithful, and giving hope to the liberty-loving people of the land.(N. 19, Ap., p. 48)

Partisan  
Warfare.

80. Sumter, because of his valor, acquired the title of the Carolina Game Cock. Cornwallis, after making several vain attempts to capture him, declared that "he was the greatest plague in the country." Marion was equally active. His favorite hiding-places were in the swamps of the Carolinas. In these he found ready refuge, and from them could secretly start out on his expeditions. Hence he became known as the Swamp Fox.

81. On one occasion, when Marion was resting in one of his swamp retreats, a British officer, sent to effect an exchange of prisoners, was conducted blindfolded to his presence. The business being finished, Marion invited his visitor to stop to dinner. The invitation was accepted, though the

---

79. What prominent patriots continued active at the South? What did they do and with what effect?

80. What is said of Sumter? What nickname was given to Marion and why?

81. State all you can of Marion. Repeat the lines from Bryant.

guest could see no preparations for the repast. Presently some sweet potatoes were raked from beneath a heap of hot ashes by a soldier, who did the honors of cook and waiter. By the free use of his coat-sleeves and vigorous blowing the potatoes were freed from ashes. Then, on pieces of pine bark, they were placed upon the only table there, which happened to be the trunk of a fallen tree. "This is our dinner," said Marion. "Surely, general, this cannot be your only fare!" exclaimed the officer. "Indeed, it is," responded Marion, "and we are fortunate, entertaining company, to have more than our usual allowance." It is related that the officer returned to his quarters, and, having made his report, left the army, declaring that the people whom the British were contending against could never be conquered.

SONG OF MARION'S MEN.

"Our band is few but true and tried, our leader frank and bold;  
The British soldier trembles when Marion's name is told.  
Our fortress is the good green wood, our tent the cypress tree;  
We know the forest round us as seamen know the sea."—*Bryant*.

82. It was not long before another army was formed to take the place of the one which Lincoln had surrendered (§ 78). Congress, mindful of the success which had attended Gates at Saratoga, and having a high opinion of that officer's ability, placed him at the head of the new army. Said a brother officer to him: "Take care that you do not exchange northern laurels for southern willows." Alas! before many days laurels were exchanged for willows at Sanders Creek, near Camden, South Carolina, where Gates fought his first southern battle (August 16, 1780).

Battle  
of  
Camden.

83. The hero of this battle was the Baron De Kalb, a German, who had been thoroughly educated in the art of war.

82. What new army was formed? What is said of its commander?

83. Of the battle of Camden and of Baron De Kalb? Where is Camden (map 2)?

Of the many men who crossed the ocean to assist America, he was one of the ablest. He soon gained the favorable opinion of Washington by the manner in which he discharged important duties, and now, in this unfortunate battle near Camden, ended his brave deeds in a vain attempt to resist a bayonet charge made by Cornwallis's entire force. He fell, pierced with eleven wounds, and died three days after. Forty-five years later the citizens of Camden erected to his memory an elegant monument, the corner-stone of which was laid by Lafayette.\*

<p>Treason of Arnold.</p>
-----------------------------------

84. We now come to the darkest scene in the whole war, the treason of Arnold. After the British left Philadelphia, Arnold was placed at the head of military affairs in that city. In the society of rich Tories he found pleasure, and presently from among them married a young and accomplished second wife. To his fondness for display he then gave full scope. He occupied the best house in the city, rode in a carriage drawn by four horses, and was waited upon by servants in livery. All this cost money, much more than his purse could fairly yield.

85. At length he was accused of dishonest practices in the performance of his public duties. He was tried by a court-martial, and found guilty of wrong-doing. The sentence was light. The commander-in-chief, it was decreed,

---

\* Attempts have been made to prove that John Kalb, or, as he is best known, Baron De Kalb, was a Frenchman, but it is certain that he was born in a German town in 1721. Twenty-two years after he was an officer in a German regiment in the service of France. "In this battle of Camden, three times he led his willing men to the charge. Three times they were forced back by superior numbers. His horse was shot under him. His head was laid open by a saber stroke, but he held his ground desperately. At last, Cornwallis concentrated his strength in a final charge. Kalb fell, bleeding from eleven wounds."—*Greene's German Element in the War.*

---

84. Which was the darkest scene of the war? What is said of Arnold, his wife, and his mode of living?

85. Show by what steps he came to betray his country. Where is West Point (map p. 175)? What is said of its strength and importance?

should reprimand him. Washington, recalling the erring man's brilliant exploits in the service of his country, executed the sentence with reluctance and with true delicacy. Arnold, however, was not in a mood to appreciate the court's clemency or Washington's forbearance, for he had nursed the belief that he would be acquitted of all wrong. He accused the court, and the public as well, of ingratitude. Mortified and soured, he began to study how he could be revenged, and, at the same time, get money for his purse. His last active service in the field had been at Saratoga, where he was severely wounded. Pretending that the wounds still made it painful for him to ride a horse, and therefore unfitted him for field duty, he expressed a wish to have the command at West Point. That Washington had not the least suspicion respecting Arnold's base intentions is proved by the fact that he readily gratified the wish. Arnold was now in command of a strong fortress, regarded as "the keystone of the country." Said Clinton: "If we could capture West Point, we would soon end the rebellion."

86. Revenge and gold seemed now within easy reach of Arnold. By means of a correspondence conducted with art and secrecy, he offered to betray West Point and all the other forts in the Highlands of the Hudson, into the hands of Clinton. The offer was accepted, and Major André (*an'-drā*) was sent by Clinton to arrange the terms of the bargain. After midnight, September 22d, André was silently rowed from the British sloop *Vulture*, at anchor in the Hudson, to the west side of the river, about six miles below the Point. "At the foot of a shadowy mountain, a solitary place, the haunt of the owl and the whip-poor-will," a spot well fitted for so dark a business, the two men met, and plotted, as they thought, the utter ruin of the patriot cause.

87. André had expected to return to New York on the

---

86. How, where, and for what purpose did Arnold meet André ?

87. How and why did André cross to the east side of the Hudson ?

Vulture.\* Contrary to his plan, however, and against his inclination, he consented to be rowed across the river to its eastern shore, and go to New York by land. For a few miles, after crossing the river, he was accompanied by a person who was either a dupe or a willing tool of Arnold, we don't know which. Then, being provided with a passport from the traitor, André proceeded alone on horseback. He was happy in the thought that he was the bearer of a plan by which the "rebellion" was to be crushed and his name glorified.

88. Just before reaching Tarrytown he was stopped by three men, John Paulding, David Williams, and Isaac Van Wart, members of a little band of volunteers who were on the lookout for freebooters from the British lines. "Where are you going?" demanded John Paulding. Supposing that the three men were Tories, friends of his king, André replied: "Gentlemen, I hope you belong to our party?" "Which party?" asked Paulding. "The lower party," said André. "We do," was Paulding's reply. Then, feeling himself safe, André threw off all reserve, and informed his hearers that he was a British officer "on particular business." Upon this, his captors avowed themselves to be Americans, and, compelling him to get off his horse, led him into the bushes to search for papers. None were found until they pulled off his boots and stockings, when six, all in Arnold's handwriting, fell to the ground. Glancing at them, Paulding exclaimed, "My God! he is a spy!" Said André: "I will give you my horse, saddle, and bridle, if you will let

---

\* "Colonel Livingston, who commanded the American garrison at Verplanck's Point, learning where the Vulture was at anchor, had sent a party with cannon to drive the sloop away, and now they were firing upon her. André watched the cannonade with an anxious eye, and at last saw the vessel weigh anchor, and drop down the river out of reach of cannon shot."—*Irving's Life of Washington*.

---

88. Give a full account of André's capture, his attempt to bribe his captors, and other facts. Give the names of his captors. Where is Tarrytown (map p. 175)?

me go. I will give you a hundred guineas, any sum of money." "No," broke in Paulding, "not for ten thousand guineas." The three patriots conducted André to the nearest American post, "and then went their way, not asking a reward for their services nor leaving their names" (September 23, 1780).

89. The commander of the post, "bewildered," as Washington afterward said, and not having the least suspicion of the treacherous part Arnold was performing, sent a letter in haste to the traitor, informing him of the capture of André. On receipt of this, Arnold, leaving his wife in a swoon on the floor, hurried out of the house and to the river like a felon, and in his barge, swiftly rowed by six men who did not dream that a traitor was at the helm, succeeded in getting to the Vulture.

90. André was taken across the Hudson, and, under a strong escort, was conducted to the place selected for his trial. Major Tallmadge, the commander of the escort, rode by his side, and the two men conversed with little reserve. "What, in your opinion, will be the result of my capture?" asked André. Tallmadge did not reply at once, but being urged, said: "I had a much-loved classmate in Yale College, by the name of Nathan Hale, who entered the army in 1775. Immediately after the battle of Long Island, General Washington wanted information respecting the strength, position, and probable movements of the enemy. Hale tendered his services, went over to Brooklyn, and was taken just as he was passing the outposts of the enemy on his return. Do you remember the sequel?" "Yes," said André, "he was hanged as a spy, but you surely do not consider his case and mine alike?" "Yes, precisely similar, and similar will be your fate," replied Tallmadge (§42). André's offense was

---

89. Describe how Arnold made his escape. Where is West Point (map p. 175)?

90. Repeat the conversation between André and Tallmadge. Repeat what is said of André's trial and execution. Describe the picture on page 196.



clear. He was a spy, and, by the laws of war, was condemned to be hanged. He walked to the place of execution, and, stepping into the wagon under the gallows, took off his hat, put the rope around his neck, and tied a handkerchief over his eyes. The wagon was moved away, he swung in air, and died almost without a struggle (October 2). (See map p. 175.)



READING ANDRÉ'S DEATH-WARRANT TO HIM.

91. Let us turn to the South once more, where a great change in the fortunes of the war was in rapid progress. This had its beginning at King's Mountain, South Carolina, in the defeat and capture of twelve hundred Tory house-burners (October, 1780). It was greatly helped by General Morgan (§ 30), at the Cowpens, where eleven hundred of England's best troops,

The War  
at the South.

91. Give an account of the King's Mountain battle. Of the Cowpens battle. Of Cornwallis's pursuit of Morgan and Greene. Where did we hear of Morgan before (p. 159)? Where is King's Mountain (map 2)? The Cowpens?

commanded by Tarleton, Cornwallis's favorite, were completely routed (January, 1781). Knowing that the main body of the enemy was not far distant, Morgan, with six hundred prisoners, hurried off, and in North Carolina was joined by General Greene, Gates's successor. As Morgan had expected, Cornwallis gave pursuit. For two hundred miles, in storms and across rivers, the chase was kept up, but in vain. (For some particulars of battles, see table page 212.)

92. With additions to his force, and encouraged by the excellent spirit among his men, Greene turned about and attacked his baffled enemy. The action, known as the battle of Guilford (*ghil'-furd*) Court-house, lasted more than two hours, and though Greene could not claim a victory, the British army was so cut up that Cornwallis, fearing another attack, left his wounded to be cared for by the Americans, and hastened to get beyond the reach of his new tormentor (March 15). We shall next meet him at Yorktown, Virginia (§ 94). At Hobkirk's Hill, near Camden, Lord Rawdon, in command of the British in South Carolina, attacked Greene and compelled him to retreat (April 25).<sup>\*</sup> Though Greene was again defeated, this time by General Stuart at Eutaw (*ü'-taw*) Springs, he was in better condition than his adversary to renew the contest (September 8). Greene had not gained great victories, it is true, yet during his brief career at the South, all of the Carolinas and Georgia, with the exception

<sup>\*</sup> "This same Rawdon soon sailed for England, but not till after a last act of vengeful inhumanity. Isaac Hayne, a planter, whose affections were always with America, had, after the fall of Charleston, surrendered himself, but avowed his resolve never to meet a call for military service under the British flag. When the British lost his part of the country and could protect him no longer, he resumed his place as an American citizen, and led a regiment against them. Taken prisoner, he was condemned to an ignoble death. Against the entreaties of his children and of the women of Charleston, Rawdon sent him to the gallows."—*Bancroft's History of the United States*.

92. Give an account of the Guilford Court-house battle. Of the second battle of Camden. Of the battle of Eutaw Springs. Where are those three places (map 2)? What is said of General Greene? (Read note 14. Appendix, p. 48.)

of three seaport towns, was restored to the patriots. He stood next to Washington in the affection of his countrymen, and, in their opinion, next to him for ability, as a general in the army.

93. Do we care to know anything further of the traitor Arnold? He had fought with zeal and courage against the king; now, with revengeful feelings, he fought for the king. During a short time he commanded a British force in Virginia, when he set fire to Richmond (January, 1781). To one of his prisoners, it is related, he put the question: "If the Americans should catch me, what would they do with me?" The prompt reply was: "They would cut off your leg that was wounded at Saratoga, and bury it with the honors of war, but the rest of you they would hang." Eight months later,



in command of an expedition, he invaded his native State, Connecticut, and plundered and burned New London. Fort Griswold, commanded by Colonel Ledyard, brother of the celebrated traveler, repulsed several assaults, but was finally carried by storm. "Who commands this garrison?" shouted Arnold's Tory captain. "I did, sir, but you do now," replied Ledyard, as he delivered up his sword. Instantly the malignant captain grasped the weapon, and plunged it through the body of Ledyard, killing him upon the spot (September 7, 1781).\*

94. It was the opinion of Clinton, the head of the king's forces in America, that Chesapeake Bay, with the country about it, should be fully in possession of the British. Yielding to this opinion, Cornwallis occupied Yorktown, then a small village of Virginia.

Surrender  
of  
Cornwallis.

\* Arnold went to England and received a large sum of money from the British government, but his life afterward was neither prosperous nor happy. Men of honor shunned him, and he was often insulted. He died in obscurity.

93. Give the further history of Arnold. Where is Richmond (map 2)?

94. At what place did Cornwallis make a final stand? What injury had he inflicted upon the patriots? Where is Yorktown (map 2)?

This place, as well as the point of land on the other side of the York River known as Gloucester (*glos'-ter*), he fortified as speedily as possible. During his march from the Carolinas (§ 92) he had plundered dwellings, burned barns, destroyed growing crops, and carried off horses and slaves. Now, with Greene south of him, Lafayette west of him, and French ships in Delaware Bay, his entire business was to guard against capture. In the hope of capturing Arnold, Washington had sent Lafayette with about twelve hundred men to Virginia (note p. 171).

95. Deluded with the conviction that Washington was making preparations to attack New York, Clinton delayed to send help to Cornwallis. Washington, rapidly followed by American and French regiments, hastened to the new scene of war, and Yorktown was soon completely surrounded. The French ships were commanded by De Grasse (*gras*): their troops were under Rochambeau (*ro-sham-bo'*). The siege lasted nearly a month, during which there was much hard fighting, and many lives were lost. Cornwallis, losing all hope of aid from Clinton and no longer able to resist, offered to surrender. The terms being agreed upon, the event, so mortifying to Cornwallis, so cheering to Washington and his allies, took place on the 19th of October, 1781. The land forces were surrendered to the Americans, the ships to the French. More than eight thousand soldiers and sailors, the flower of the British army and navy, became prisoners of war.\*

96. Great was the joy of the patriots as the good news spread throughout the land. "Cornwallis is taken!" shouted the delighted people. One of Washington's aids, riding night and day as fast as horse could carry him, took the glad tid-

\* "On that very day the lingering armament intended for the relief of Cornwallis sailed from New York. Clinton hovered off the mouth of the Chesapeake several days, when, finding that he had come too late, he turned his tardy prow toward New York."—*Irving's Washington*.

95. Give the particulars of the siege of Yorktown, and its closing events.

96. How was the news of the result received? What occurred in Philadelphia?

ings to Philadelphia. It was midnight when he entered the city. The watchmen shouted : "Cornwallis is taken!" The cry, ringing out upon the frosty air, aroused thousands from their beds, and soon the streets were thronged with happy men and women. "The old State House bell rang out its notes of gladness, and the first blush of morning was greeted with the booming of cannon."

97. The rejoicings in France, as the welcome tidings were received, were hearty and general. Congratulations from every quarter were showered upon Dr. Franklin. His friends gathered about him, and one, a grand duke, kissed him for joy. Said Franklin : "Could I have hoped at such an age to have enjoyed so great happiness?" In England, the vexed and disappointed people exclaimed, as with one voice : "Let the war be stopped ! Let us not kill any more of our kindred in America !" King George, as stubborn as ever, again declared that he would "never agree to a separation from America." (Read note 12, Appendix, p. 45.)

98. Public sentiment, however, in time influenced both king and Parliament. A new ministry was formed, and a Peace. commissioner was sent to Paris to confer with Franklin. A movement was thus begun, which, reaching the first stage, a preliminary treaty (November 30, 1782), ended in a complete treaty between the United States and Great Britain (September 3, 1783). Associated with Franklin in these important negotiations were John Adams and John Jay. Adams had been in Holland, performing valuable service for his country by making treaties, and by borrowing money to meet the wants of Congress. By the terms of the treaties with Great Britain, the independence of the United States was fully acknowledged, Great Britain gave up all claim to the territory from the St. Croix to the Missis-

97. What took place in France ? In England ? What said King George ?

98. When, where, and by whom on the part of our country was the treaty of peace made ? What were its terms ? What is said of John Adams ?

issippi, from the great lakes to Florida, and ceded to our fishermen "equal rights with British fishermen to take fish on the coast of Newfoundland, and on the coasts, bays, and creeks of all other British dominions in America." (N. 4, Ap., p. 42.)

99. While Franklin, Adams, and Jay were engaged in the slow business of making treaties, Washington and his army were in quarters at Newburgh, on the Hudson. Congress had borrowed large sums of money, yet was in great need of more. There was hardly enough at command to buy sufficient meat and bread from day to day for the needy soldiers. A faction of the officers, attributing their distress to the republican form of government under which the States were ruled, thought that a monarchy, with Washington as king at its head, would be decidedly better. Said they: "We want a patriot king at the head of a united people." A letter to that effect was sent to Washington, but he, astonished and pained, declined to be a party to the proposed scheme, and, by his decided refusal and timely rebuke, speedily put an end to it.

Washington  
Refuses to be  
a King.

100. The war was ended. As the British troops and numerous Tories left the city of New York, in November, 1783, Washington, at the head of a large procession of citizens and soldiers, entered it. A scene of rejoicing followed, ending at night with a grand display of fireworks. And now, what more is there for Washington to do? Eight years before, Congress intrusted him with a commission. Now, the object of his efforts being attained, he resolves to carry out his original intention. He will lay down his authority, retire to his home on the Potomac, and become a private citizen.

Resigns  
his  
Command.

101. The parting with his officers in the city of New York

99. Where were Washington and his army meanwhile? What distress was pressing upon them? Give an account of what followed, the offer to him, and his refusal. Where is Newburgh (map p. 175)?

100. Describe New York's first Evacuation Day. How is New York situated?

101. Describe Washington's parting with his officers. His surrender of his commission. Where is Annapolis (map 5)? Do you know of another Annapolis (map 2)?

was sorrowful. "With a heart full of love and gratitude," said he, "I now take leave of you, most devoutly wishing that your latter days may be as prosperous and happy as your former ones have been glorious and honorable." Affected to tears, he took General Knox's hand, and gave him a brother's embrace, and in the same manner took leave of each of the others. At the ferry a barge was in waiting. "Washington entered it, turned, took off his hat, and waved a silent adieu." Everywhere, on his journey to Annapolis, where Congress was in session, the people hailed him with enthusiasm. Appearing before Congress, he delivered a short address, and resigned his commission as commander-in-chief of the army (December 23, 1783).

**102.** On Christmas eve, twenty-four hours later, he reached his home, his beloved Mount Vernon, "in a frame of mind suited to enjoy the sacred and genial festival." There, as a farmer and planter, he hoped to spend the remainder of his days, free from all public cares. While in this retirement he was often spoken of as the "Cincinnatus of America," in allusion to the illustrious hero of ancient times, who, according to the story, was called from his farm, which he cultivated with his own hands, to be the Dictator of Rome when the city was threatened by a hostile army. Cincinnatus, having gained a great victory, and thus freed his country from danger, resigned his office, and returned to his farm and his plough.

**103.** The States of the Union were held together by the compact known as the Articles of Confederation, but experience had proved it to be of little worth (§ 64). It did not meet the needs of government. Congress had borrowed money, but did not have power to procure funds to pay the debt. If the States were called upon for money, and did not respond, there was no power to

Defects of the Form of Government.
--

**102** To what place did Washington retire? What is said of his life there? Where is Mount Vernon (map 7)? How did Washington resemble Cincinnatus?

**103.** Give the history of the Articles of Confederation. Name their defects.

compel them. They had war debts of their own, in addition to their every-day expenses, and could not easily raise money for general purposes. Congress could not regulate commerce with foreign countries, nor even between the States. Such were some of the defects in the existing form of government.

104. The men who with word, pen, or sword had fought the battles of the Revolution saw with deep concern that the Ship of State, as then rigged, was not suited to the voyage before her. A serious outbreak, known The Constitution. as Shays's Rebellion, occurred in Massachusetts. People there were dissatisfied with their State government. They said that the taxes were burdensome, that the governor's salary was too high, and that the legislature was aristocratic. Two thousand men in arms, with Daniel Shays as their leader, defied the rightful authority (1787). This outbreak was put down with little bloodshed, but might not another, a more serious one, occur, and who could tell what the consequences would be? It was agreed that the Articles might be so altered as to give Congress greater power. With that object delegates from the States met in Philadelphia. Washington was drawn from his retirement, and, by the unanimous vote of the delegates, was chosen to preside over the convention. Before him sat statesmen and soldiers, of whose service in the cause of freedom the people were justly proud. Among them were James Madison, afterward President of the United States; Alexander Hamilton, soon to be the first Secretary of the Treasury; and the venerable Dr. Franklin, now more than eighty years of age.

105. Franklin had passed through every change of fortune, and seen every phase of human nature. "The son of a tallow chandler, his early years were spent among the children of laborers and mechanics. While still a stripling, with only a few pence in his pocket, he went forth to seek his

---

104. What is said of Shays's Rebellion? What steps were taken to correct the defects in the Articles? Who was chosen to preside? Who else were in the convention?

105. What is said of Dr. Franklin? Give an account of his part in the history of his country. (He was born in Boston in 1706; he died in Philadelphia in 1790.)



fortune, slept in cellars and garrets, and ate that bread which is the bitterest of all food. In his old age he came to stand before kings and parliaments, was honored by all manner of learned societies, and was made the friend of powerful states-

men and of men every walk of (§ 97). From which would ordinary being, rounded and the most kind-most genial, summing of mor-

106. These men met to imcles of Confed-



BENJ. FRANKLIN

renowned in science and art this school, have ruined an he came forth a perfect man, hearted, the the most unas-

tals." good and true prove the Arti-eration (May,



JOHN JAY



SAMUEL ADAMS

1787). As, however, their discussions progressed, they slowly discovered that the Articles were too imperfect for mending, and that a very different form of government was necessary. So, at the end of four months, they gave to the

106. What grand work was done by the Constitutional Convention? What did Gladstone many years after say of that work? Who was Gladstone?

people the Constitution of the United States, "the most wonderful work," says Gladstone, one of England's eminent statesmen, "ever struck off at a given time by the brain and purpose of man." With a few amendments, made in after years, it is the same Constitution we still have (see the Appendix, p. 6).

107. It was not to be expected that every man in the land would at once be satisfied with the proposed form of government. Some persons said that it gave too much power to Congress, others said that it did not give enough. Some thought that it took too much power from the States, others that it took too little. Its friends were called Federalists; its opponents were known as Anti-federalists; and these names continued to be used to designate political parties long after the Constitution had become the law of the land. It must not be inferred that those who disliked the Constitution were not good patriots. In their ranks were Patrick Henry, and, at first, Samuel Adams, Edmund Randolph, and Thomas Jefferson. (Read note 40, Appendix, p. 56.)

108. When, after a deal of discussion, the merits of the Constitution came to be understood, much of the opposition to it ceased. Eleven of the States ratified it, and as by its terms the consent of nine States was to be sufficient for its adoption, it went into effect. Maryland, one of the eleven, had refused to ratify till all the States claiming lands west of their State limits had ceded such lands to the general government for the general good (map 3). In bringing about the happy result, no one deserved more credit than Hamilton, Madison, and Jay, who, in a series of essays published in the newspapers, explained and defended the Constitution. The first of these papers was written by Hamilton as he came down

---

107. What opposition did the Constitution encounter? What name was given to its friends? To its opponents?

108. What is said of its ratification? Of Maryland's opposition? Of The Federalist papers? By whom were they written? What is said of their teachings?

the Hudson in the cabin of a sloop. They were afterward published, in one volume, called *The Federalist*; and to that book Webster, Calhoun, Clay, Benton, Cass, and our other great law-makers resorted in after years, when they wanted light upon disputed points in the Constitution. Two of the authors of the famous writings, Hamilton and Madison, were members of the Convention that framed the Constitution, hence they wrote as having authority.

---

#### REVIEW OUTLINE.

109. The measures on the part of England to monopolize all trade with her colonies, to stifle all their manufacturing operations, and to impose taxes upon them without their consent, were the primary causes of the Revolution. The immediate causes were the Stamp Act (1765) and the Tea Tax (1767). The principal preliminary incidents were the Boston Massacre (1770), the Boston Tea Party (1773), and the First Continental Congress (1774).

110. The battle of Lexington began the war (1775). The second important event was Allen's capture of Ticonderoga, which gave the patriots guns and ammunition, and put into their possession a barrier against British invasion from Canada. The election of Washington to command the army took place just two days before the battle of Bunker Hill. The expedition against Canada, with Arnold leading one of its wings through the wilderness of Maine, was intended to silence the menaces from that quarter, and to win its inhabitants to liberty's side. Montgomery's death at Quebec defeated the plan.

111. The departure of Howe from Boston set his troops at liberty to attack Charleston and New York (1776). Charleston's fort of palmetto logs punished them severely; and this timely victory encouraged the patriots in Congress to press for independence, which was declared six days after the victory. Now we are no longer colonists. We are citizens of an independent nation. Before the British can secure New York they must fight an opposing army on Long Island. They are victorious, and it is their most decided and important victory of the whole war. It gives to them, in its consequences, Brooklyn and New York, and makes it necessary for Washington to retreat to the Delaware. It also gives

them, in New York, a place for receiving and distributing supplies, for repairing ships, for fitting out expeditions, and for the protection of renegades and Tories. Now they fully expect to bring the war to a speedy close. They plan to occupy Philadelphia, when Washington's army, they believe, will be captured if it does not break up of itself and disperse. They plan to send an army from Canada into New York, cut the colonies into two parts, and so prevent one part from helping the other.

112. But how their plans are frustrated by Washington's success at Trenton (1776) and Princeton (1777); by Burgoyne's reverses at Bennington, on the Mohawk, and at Saratoga! Burgoyne's surrender marks an epoch in the war (1777). It gives new courage to the patriots, it brings France to their assistance (1778), and now they are recognized in Europe as a nation. Washington's failure at Brandywine to prevent Howe's march to Philadelphia (1777), also his failure to drive the enemy from Germantown, are amply compensated by his success in bringing the British to leave Philadelphia, and by the hurtful blow he inflicts upon them at Monmouth, as they are retreating to New York (1778). Because of the fiendish acts committed by Tories and Indians at Wyoming and Cherry Valley, and to prevent further acts of the kind, Sullivan destroys many Indian villages (1779).

113. At the South the British are active. Their capture of Savannah is their last success of the year (1778). In several small encounters they are successful, and the attempt on the part of French and American forces to recover Savannah is defeated (1779). The year's score finds two brilliant victories on liberty's side. Wayne's capture of Stony Point stands out as the most gallant achievement of the war; and Paul Jones's daring exploit in the North Sea, within sight of the island of Great Britain, is recorded as its most desperate naval achievement (1779).

114. Now, in 1780, the British are again active at the South. Charleston, after a long siege, is surrendered to them; and Cornwallis, in battle, steals Gates's northern laurels; but his allies, the Tories, are terribly chastised at King's Mountain. In this year Arnold's treason is discovered and is frustrated. The traitor receives a king's commission, and in Virginia and Connecticut does a traitor's dishonorable work (1781).

115. The war in the South continues, and early in the new year the ever-reliable Morgan wins a great victory at Cowpens (1781). He is pursued, but outgenerals his pursuer. And now the Quaker blacksmith, General Greene, takes Gates's place. He fights three battles, and though victory, as commonly understood, does not declare for him, he is master of the country. Cornwallis shuts himself up in Yorktown. He is sur-

rounded by French ships and French and American soldiers, and compelled to surrender (1781). The war is ended, a treaty of peace is concluded, and the British troops go home (1783). The Articles of Confederation which held the States together during the war are put aside, and the Constitution of the United States is adopted (1789).

### CHRONOLOGICAL SUMMARY.

1765. PARLIAMENT PASSED THE STAMP ACT (§ 5) . . . . . March 8.  
The Colonial Congress met in New York (§ 7) . . . . . October 7.  
1766. Parliament repealed the Stamp Act (§ 8) . . . . . March 18.
1767. PARLIAMENT PASSED BILL TAKING TEA, GLASS, ETC. (§ 9) . . . . . June 29.  
1768. British troops arrived in Boston (§ 11) . . . . . Sept. 27.  
1770. The Boston massacre occurred (§ 13) . . . . . March 5.  
1770. Parliament abolished all taxes except tea tax (§ 10) . . . . . April.  
1773. The Tea for Boston thrown into the harbor (§ 14) . . . . . Dec. 16.  
1774. Parliament passed the Boston Port Bill (§ 15) . . . . . March 31.
1774. THE FIRST CONTINENTAL CONGRESS MET IN PHILA. (§ 16) . . . . . Sept. 5.
1775. THE WAR BEGAN WITH THE BATTLE OF LEXINGTON (§ 19) . . . . . April 19.  
Ethan Allen captured Ticonderoga (§ 30) . . . . . May 10.  
Washington was elected to command the armies (§ 26) . . . . . June 15.  
THE BATTLE OF BUNKER HILL WAS FOUGHT (§ 23) . . . . . June 17.  
Montreal surrendered to Montgomery (§ 30) . . . . . Nov. 18.  
Montgomery was defeated and slain at Quebec (§ 30) . . . . . Dec. 31.  
1776. Boston was evacuated by the British (§ 31) . . . . . March 17.
1776. THE BRITISH WERE DEFEATED AT FORT MOULTRIE (§ 32) . . . . . June 28.  
THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE WAS ADOPTED (§ 34) . . . . . July 4.  
Battle of Long Island—Americans were defeated (§ 39) . . . . . Aug. 27.  
Battle of White Plains—Americans were defeated (§ 45) . . . . . Oct. 28.  
Fort Washington was captured by the British (§ 45) . . . . . Nov. 26.  
BATTLE OF TRENTON—BRITISH WERE DEFEATED (§ 47) . . . . . Dec. 26.
1777. BATTLE OF PRINCETON—BRITISH WERE DEFEATED (§ 49) . . . . . Jan. 3.  
Ticonderoga was taken by Burgoyne (§ 57) . . . . . July 5.  
Battle of Hubbardton—Americans were defeated (§ 57) . . . . . July 7.  
Battle of Oriskany—British were repulsed (§ 59) . . . . . Aug. 6.  
BATTLE OF BENNINGTON—BRITISH WERE DEFEATED (§ 60) . . . . . Aug. 16.  
BATTLE OF BRANDYWINE—AMERICANS WERE DEFEATED (§ 51) . . . . . Sept. 11.  
BATTLE OF BEMIS HEIGHTS—FIRST OF STILLWATER (§ 62) . . . . . Sept. 19.  
Battle of Paoli—Americans were defeated (§ 53) . . . . . Sept. 20.  
The British army entered Philadelphia (§ 53) . . . . . Sept. 26.  
BATTLE OF GERMANTOWN—AMERICANS WERE DEFEATED (§ 54) . . . . . Oct. 4.  
BATTLE OF SARATOGA OR SECOND OF STILLWATER (§ 62) . . . . . Oct. 7.  
SURRENDER OF BURGOYNE (§ 62) . . . . . Oct. 17.  
Washington's army went into quarters at Valley Forge (§ 55) . . . . . Dec. 11.
1778. FRANCE ACKNOWLEDGES INDEPENDENCE OF THE U. S. (§ 63) . . . . . Feb. 6.  
The British army evacuated Philadelphia (§ 66) . . . . . June 18.  
BATTLE OF MONMOUTH—BRITISH RETREATED (§ 66) . . . . . June 28.  
The Massacre at Wyoming, in Pennsylvania (§ 69) . . . . . July 8, 4.  
The Massacre at Cherry Valley, in New York (§ 69) . . . . . Nov. 11.  
SAVANNAH WAS CAPTURED BY THE BRITISH (§ 73) . . . . . Dec. 29.
1779. THE BRITISH WERE DRIVEN FROM THE NORTHWEST (§ 70) . . . . . Febr'y.  
BATTLE OF STONY POINT—BRITISH WERE DEFEATED (§ 74) . . . . . July 16.  
PAUL JONES'S VICTORY OFF THE COAST OF ENGLAND (§ 75) . . . . . Sept. 23.  
British repulsed Americans and French at Savannah (§ 73) . . . . . Oct. 9.

- 1780. CHARLESTON WAS SURRENDERED TO THE BRITISH (§ 78)...** May 12.  
 Battle of Sanders Creek (1st Camden)—Americans were defeated (§ 83). August 16.  
 ARNOLD PLOTTED TO BETRAY WEST POINT TO THE BRITISH (§ 84).... October 2.  
 André was executed as a spy (§ 90)..... October 2.  
 BATTLE OF KING'S MOUNTAIN—BRITISH WERE DEFEATED (§ 91).... October 7.
- 1781. BATTLE OF COWPENS—BRITISH WERE DEFEATED (§ 91)...** Jan. 17.  
 Articles of Confederation were ratified by the States (§ 64)..... March 1.  
 Battle of Guilford Court-house—Americans were defeated (§ 92).... March 15.  
 Battle of Hobkirk's Hill (2d Camden)—Americans were defeated (§ 92). April 25.  
 British expedition against New London (§ 93)..... Sept. 6.  
 Battle of Eutaw Springs—last in the Carolinas (§ 92)..... Sept. 8.  
 SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS AT YORKTOWN (§ 95)..... October 19.  
 1782. Preliminary treaty of peace was signed at Paris (§ 98)..... Nov. 30.  
 1783. Savannah was evacuated by the British..... July 11.
- 1783. DEFINITIVE TREATY OF PEACE WAS SIGNED AT PARIS (§ 98)...** Sept. 3.  
 New York was evacuated by the British (§ 100)..... Nov. 25.  
 Charleston was evacuated by the British..... Dec. 14.  
 Washington resigned his command to Congress (§ 101)..... Dec. 23.  
 1787. Shays's Rebellion occurred in Massachusetts (§ 104)..... January.
- 1787. CONSTITUTION OF U. S. ADOPTED BY CONVENTION (§ 106)...** Sept. 17.
- 1789. Eleven States having adopted the Constitution, Congress decided that it should go into effect on the 4th of March, 1789.**

## TOPICS FOR REVIEW.

**Biographical.**—*Tell who they were, for what they were noted, and with what events they were connected.*

PAGE.	PAGE.	PAGE.	PAGE.
Adams, J. .... 151-200	Hale .... 165, 166, 195	Livingston .... 162	Randolph, E. .... 205
Adams, S. 151, App. 6	Hamilton, A. 203, 205	McCrea .... 175, 176	Rawdon .... 197
Allen. .... 154	Hamilton, Gov.. 184	Marion .... 190	Rochambeau .... 199
André ..... 193-196	Henry... 123, 143, 150	Madison .... 203	St. Clair .... 175
Arnold ..... 154-198	205	Mercer .... 170	St. Leger .... 174, 176
Baum ..... 177, 178	Herkimer ..... 176	Montgomery. 157, 159	Schuyler. 157, 175, 178
Barton ..... 180	Howe (3) .... 156-181	Morgan .... 159, 196	Sherman ..... 162
Burgoyne... 173-179	Hayne ..... 197	Morris... .... 169	Stark ..... 154, 178
Clinton... 160, 181, 189	Hancock. 142, App. 5	Moultrie .... 160	Steuben ..... 182
199	Jasper ..... 160	Otis ..... 144	Sumter ..... 190
Clark ..... 184	Jay ..... 151-205	Oliver ..... 145	Sullivan ..... 188
Cornwallis. 166-199	Jefferson.... 162, 205	Paulding .... 194	Shays ..... 203
Conway ..... 173	Jones ..... 187	Percy ..... 152	Tallmadge ..... 195
D'Restaign. 186, 186	Kosciusko.... 179	Pickens. 186, 190, 212	Trumbull. .... 142
De Kalb ..... 191	Knox ..... 202	Pitcairn .... 152	Tarleton .... 197, 212
De Grasse ..... 199	Lafayette. 171, 181, 199	Pitt ..... 115, 145, 181	Van Wart ..... 194
Franklin. 108, 146-203	Ledyard ..... 196	Prescott ..... 155	Wayne... 172, 186, 187
Gage.... 149, 151, 154	Lee, C. .... 157, 167, 181	Pulaski ..... 171, 186	Ward ..... 154, 157
159	182	Putnam. 154, 157, 164	Warren ..... 157
Gates. 157, 173, 178, 191	Lee, R. H. .... 151, 161	Pearson ..... 188	Warner ..... 178
Greene..... 154-197	Lincoln .... 186, 189	Randolph, P. .... 150	Williams..... 194

**Geographical.**—*Tell where they are located and with what events they were connected.*

PAGE.	PAGE.	PAGE.	PAGE.
Annapolis ..... 202	Detroit ..... 184	Moultrie, Ft. 160, 212	Stony Point. 186, 212
Augusta ..... 185	Dorchester H'ts. 159	Mt. Vernon..... 202	St. John's ..... 159
Baltimore ..... 180	Eutaw Sp'gs. 197, 212	Monmouth. .... 181, 212	Sullivan's Isl'd.. 160
Bennington.... 178	Faneuil Hall. 147, 149	Morristown ..... 170	Stillwater ... 179, 212
Bemis Heights.. 179	Flamборо' Head,	Montreal ..... 159	Sunbury..... 185
Boston..... 145-160	188, 212	Mohawk River.. 176	St. Croix River. 200
Breed's Hill.... 155	Gulfport C. H. 197, 212	Newport..... 185	Schuyler, Ft.... 176
Brooklyn ..... 164	Germantown. 172, 212	New York ... 145-201	Staten Isl'd., 163, 171
Brandywine Cr'k 171	Griswold, Ft. 193, 212	Narrag'neett Bay 143	Ticonderoga, Ft.
Cambridge ... 131, 158	Gloucester..... 193	New London..... 198	154-175
Camden. .... 192, 197	Hubbardton. 175, 212	Newburgh..... 201	Trenton..... 167, 212
Chad's Ford .... 171	Harlem Heights. 166	Oriskany .... 176	Valley Forge... 172
Charleston... 148-212	Hobkirk's Hill..	Paoli.... ... 172, 212	Vincennes. .... 185
Cherry Valley .. 183	197, 212	Princeton .. 170, 212	White Plains. 166, 212
Concord ..... 153	Kaskaskia ..... 184	Philadelphia. 145-203	West Point..... 193
Cowpens. .... 196, 212	King's Mt.... 196, 212	Paris..... 180, 200	Wash'ton, Ft. 166, 212
Charlestown. 153, 156	Kennebec Riv. 52, 159	Quebec..... 159, 212	Wyoming ..... 183
Champlain, Lake 154	Lexington... 152, 212	Richmond..... 193	York ..... 180
Crown Point... 175	Long Island. 164, 212	Saratoga .... 179, 212	Yorktown .....
Chemung River. 185	Lancaster ..... 180	Savannah. 185, 186-212	198, 199, 212

**Historical.**—1. The causes of the Revolutionary War.—2. Events that led to the Declaration of Independence.—3. Ten of the most distinguished signers of the Declaration with the colonies they represented (Appendix p. 6).—4. Account of the four battles that had already been fought.—5. Account of the battle of Long Island with its train of disasters.—6. When, how, and by whom Washington was placed at the head of the army.—7. Account of Washington's movements from that time till the close of the war.—8. Account of Greene's movements.—9. The commanders who surrendered their armies, when, where, and to whom.—10. Account of the military events that took place in Massachusetts.—11. In Rhode Island.—12. Connecticut.—13. New York.—14. New Jersey.—15. Pennsylvania.—16. North Carolina.—17. South Carolina.—18. Georgia.—19. The four successive chief commanders of the king's troops during the war, with what they did (Carleton was the last).—20. Length of the war, with first and last dates, how the war began and ended, naming the final actors.—21. The battles in which the Americans were successful, with the names of the commanders on both sides.—22. Same in which the British were successful.—23. The two greatest victories to the Americans, and why, naming the consequences.—24. Their two greatest

defeats, etc.—25. Which generals on both sides were taken prisoners, when, where, and by whom.—26. Which generals were killed, with other facts about them.—27. Which four countries of Europe furnished officers for the American army, giving the names and nationality of the officers, and stating what they did.—28. Name twelve Americans renowned as statesmen during the war, stating what they did.—29. Name the most important service rendered by Franklin, giving the particulars of the service.—30. By Jefferson.—31. By John Adams.—32. By Richard Henry Lee.—33. What important treaty was made, stating what events led to it, and how it was of benefit to the Americans.—34. The treaty closing the war, when, where, and by whom it was made, its date and terms.—35. The boundaries of the United States then, and how they differ from the present boundaries.—36. The history of the Articles of Confederation, stating its defects, and what took its place (see the Appendix, p. 7).—37. Give the names of four of the men who helped to frame the Constitution, and state how they labored to have it adopted.—38. What objections were urged against it, naming its enemies and friends.—39. Name the five leading Federalists and the five on the other side.—40. Name in chronological order thirty of the most important events of the Revolution, with the year in which each occurred.—41. State what Congresses were held during the Revolutionary Period, what measures they adopted, what they accomplished, and why they were not always held in the same place (see also the Appendix, p. 7).—42. Name the places in which Congress met, stating where they are located.—43. State what kind of money was used during the Revolutionary Period (pp. 124, 125, 169, 216).\*

---

\* "In 1774 Connecticut directed the issue of £15,000 (about \$75,000) in bills of credit of the colony. This was the first issue of paper money in the colonies preparatory to war. During the war the other colonies and States issued paper money. There were in circulation many pieces of silver whose values bore no relation to their names. They bore the stamps of many foreign mints, were called by all manner of names, and possessed different values in different places. A shilling in New England was a very different sum of money from a shilling in New York. In 1784 the entire coin of the land, except coppers, was the product of foreign mints. English guineas, crowns, shillings, and pence were still paid over the counters of shops and taverns, and with them were mingled many French and Spanish, and some German coins. In July, 1785, a resolution of Congress was reached, making the dollar the unit of our decimal system of money. The plan of Morris, as amended by Jefferson, thus became the basis of our present coinage. What changes were made in after years are to be ascribed to Hamilton."—*McMaster's People of the United States*.  
(For Tabulated Review see end of the History.)



# PRINCIPAL BATTLES OF THE REVOLUTION.

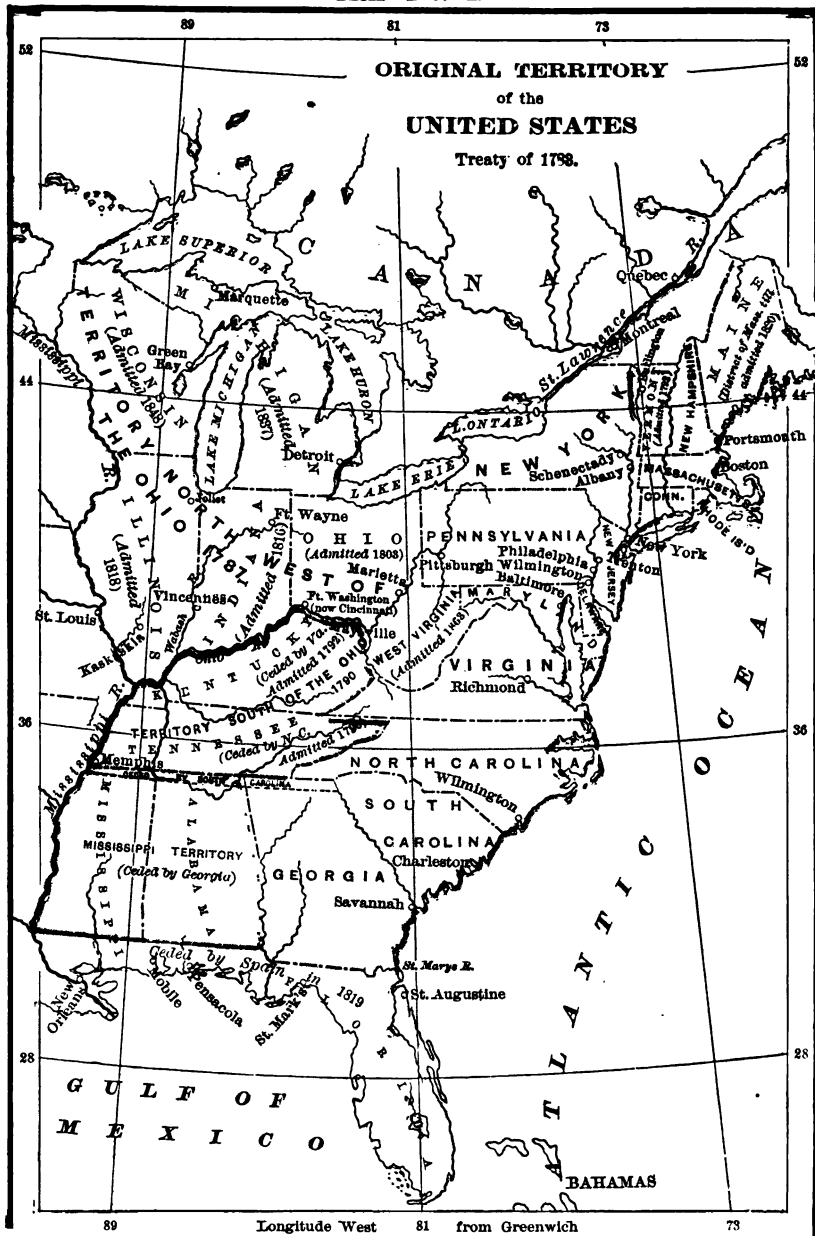
DATES.	BATTLES.	COMMANDERS.		MEN ENGAGED.	
		American.	British.	Amer'n.	British.
<b>1775.</b>					
Apr. 19.	Lexington (map p. 69).	Parker .....	Smith* .....	unknown	1,700
June 17.	Bunker Hill (p. 156) ‡.	Prescott .....	Gen. Howe* .....	1,500	8,000
Dec. 31.	Quebec (map 1) .....	Montgomery .....	Carleton* .....	900	1,200
<b>1776.</b>					
June 28.	Ft. Moultrie (map 2) ..	Moultrie* .....	Parker .....	400	4,000
Aug. 27.	Long Island (p. 175) ..	Putnam .....	Gen. Howe* .....	5,000	20,000
Oct. 28.	White Plains (p. 175) ..	McDougall .....	Leslie* .....	1,800	2,000
Nov. 16.	Ft. Wash'gton (p. 175) ..	Magaw .....	Gen. Howe* .....	3,000	5,000
Dec. 26.	Trenton (map 2) .....	Washington* .....	Rahl .....	2,400	1,000
<b>1777.</b>					
Jan. 3.	Princeton (map 2) .....	Washington* ..	Mawhood .....	3,000	1,800
July 7.	Hubbardton (p. 174) ..	Warner .....	Fraser* .....	700	1,200
Aug. 6.	Oriskany (map p. 176) ..	Herkimer* .....	St. Leger .....	1,000	1,500
Aug. 16.	Bennington (map 2) ..	Stark* .....	Baum .....	1,400	1,400
Sept. 11.	Brandywine (map 2) ..	Washington .....	Gen. Howe* .....	11,000	18,000
Sept. 19.	Stillwater (map p. 175) ..	Gates* .....	Burgoyne .....	2,500	3,000
Sept. 20.	Paoli (map p. 90) .....	Wayne .....	Grey* .....	1,500	3,000
Oct. 4.	Germantown (p. 90) ..	Washington .....	Gen. Howe* .....	11,000	15,000
Oct. 7.	Saratoga (map p. 174) ..	Gates* .....	Burgoyne .....	8,000	4,500
<b>1778.</b>					
June 28.	Monmouth (map 2) .....	Washington* ..	Clinton .....	12,000	11,000
July 3.	Wyoming (map 2) .....	Col. Z. Butler ..	Butler* .....	400	1,100
Dec. 29.	Savannah (map 2) .....	Robert Howe ..	Campbell* .....	900	2,000
<b>1779.</b>					
Feb. 14.	Savannah R. (p. 186) ..	Pickens* .....	Boyd .....	300	700
July 15.	Stony P't (map p. 175) ..	Wayne* .....	Johnson .....	1,200	600
Aug. 29.	Chemung (map p. 175) ..	Sullivan* .....	Brant .....	4,000	1,500
Sept. 28.	Flamboro' H'd (p. 188) ..	Paul Jones* ..	Pearson .....	squadron	2 vessels.
Oct. 9.	Savannah (map 2) .....	Lincoln .....	Prevost* .....	4,500	2,900
<b>1780.</b>					
May 12.	Charleston (map p. 92) ..	Lincoln .....	Clinton* .....	3,700	9,000
Aug. 16.	Sanders Creek (p. 191) ..	Gates .....	Cornwallis* ..	3,000	2,200
Oct. 7.	King's M't'n (map 2) ..	Campbell* .....	Ferguson .....	900	1,200
<b>1781.</b>					
Jan. 17.	Cowpens (map 2) .....	Morgan* .....	Tarleton .....	900	1,100
Mar. 15.	Guil'd C. H. (map 2) ..	Greene .....	Cornwallis* ..	4,400	2,400
Apr. 25.	Hobkirk's Hill (p. 197) ..	Greene .....	Rawdon* .....	1,200	900
Sept. 6.	Ft. Griswold (p. 198) ..	Ledyard .....	Eyre* .....	150	800
Sept. 8.	Eutaw Sp'get (map 2) ..	Greene .....	Stuart .....	2,000	2,800
Oct. 19.	Yorktown (map 2) .....	Washington* ..	Cornwallis .....	16,000	7,500

\* The successful party.

† Doubtful.

‡ It would be more correct to call this contest the battle of Breed's Hill. It was the intention of the patriots to build their earth fort on Bunker Hill, but, after reaching that eminence, they decided in favor of Breed's Hill, from which they could more easily annoy the king's troops in Boston and his ships in the harbor.





## SECTION IV.

### CONSTITUTIONAL PERIOD.

---

#### PART I.

##### WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION.

1. THE first election for President and Vice-President of the United States took place in the early part of 1789. Electors were chosen in the several States, and these voted directly for President and Vice-President. In voting, they did not name their choice for the higher position, as electors do now. The Constitution then said that "the person having the greatest number of votes shall be President, if such number be a majority" (see App. p. 20).

First Presidential Election.
------------------------------------

2. New York city was then the nation's capital. There the new Congress should have met on the 4th of March, but when that day came there were only about twenty senators and representatives present. These did not make a quorum, that is, they were not sufficient in numbers, according to the Constitution, to do business. Do we realize how difficult it was to



GEORGE WASHINGTON.

1. Where did the first election for President take place? Describe the election process as it was then conducted.

2. Which place was then the nation's capital? When should Congress have met and what caused delay? What is said of the mode of traveling in those days?

travel in those days? One of the members of Congress came from Georgia to New York in a sloop, and was two weeks on the ocean. From Virginia, one came on horseback. A stage, described as "a covered Jersey wagon," came from Philadelphia in three days, nor would the trip have been made in that time if the passengers, one and all, had not alighted more than once and assisted the driver to tug the vehicle out of the mud.

3. At last, in the early part of April, Congress was able to begin work. The electoral votes being counted, it was found that Washington had been unanimously chosen President, and that John Adams had received a sufficient number of votes to make him Vice-President. Messages were at once sent to inform them of their election. Washington was at his home on the Potomac when the communication from Congress was put into his hand. Bidding adieu to Mount Vernon with regret, he set out. "His progress was a continued ovation. Old and young thronged the highways to welcome and bless him. At Trenton, the scene of his victory in the darkest hour of the war, he passed under a triumphal arch of evergreens and laurel, and young girls, dressed in white and crowned with garlands, strewed flowers before him." Across the Bay of New York, accompanied by numerous boats gay with flags, his barge was rowed by thirteen shipmasters in white uniforms. In the streets of New York the houses were decorated with flags and banners, and crowds of people lined the sidewalks.

4. The inauguration took place on the last day of the month. Standing on the balcony of Federal Hall, in the presence of a multitude of men and women, who, from the street in front, watched every movement of the solemn ceremony, Washington took the oath of office, saying, as he

---

3. What was the result of the election? What act was next performed? Give an account of Washington's journey to New York.

4. Give an account of his inauguration. When did that take place?

kissed the Bible, "I swear, so help me God." A strong voice exclaimed : "Long live George Washington, President of the United States !" Immediately a flag was displayed from the top of the building, a shout of gladness went up from the people, and all the church bells rang out joyful peals (April 30, 1789). (See Appendix, p. 8, and p. 54.)

5. Congress could now go to work. New machinery was to be provided for a new government. By what title should the President be addressed, what should be his salary and the pay of Congressmen, how should money for the government's wants be raised, should foreign-built ships entering our ports be taxed, should a duty be laid upon slaves brought from abroad, what departments should be formed to aid the President in carrying out the laws, should the Constitution be amended, where should the nation's capital be permanently established ?

The Work of Congress.
-----------------------------

6. These and other questions were discussed with great earnestness. Though Washington said that he did not desire any pay for his services, it was decided that the salary of his office should be twenty-five thousand dollars a year. Six dollars a day were allowed to a Congressman. Duties were imposed on rum, wine, tea, molasses, and other things brought into the country ; ships were required to pay a tonnage tax ; a judicial system and amendments to the Constitution were adopted, and four executive departments were provided for. (See Presidents' Cabinets, page 287.)

7. It being the duty of Washington to appoint the heads of these departments, Thomas Jefferson became Secretary of State ; Alexander Hamilton, Secretary of the Treasury ; Henry Knox, Secretary of War ; and Edmund Randolph, Attorney General. John Jay, "a man of pure morals, a

---

5. What subjects demanded the first attention of Congress ?

6. What did Congress accomplish without delay ?

7. What departments were organized, and who were appointed at their head ? What is said of John Jay ? State what the government was now doing.

hard student, an able writer, and a ready speaker," was appointed Chief Justice (p. 205). The government was now organized. Congress, the law-making power, was enacting laws; the President, the executive power, was enforcing them; and the Chief Justice, with his associates of the Supreme Court, the judicial power, was explaining them where their meaning was in dispute (see the Appendix, p. 24).

8. The money question was the most difficult to solve. The treasury was empty. The debt incurred by the war amounted to twenty-five million dollars. Part of this was owed to France and Spain, and to persons in Holland; and part to soldiers, contractors, and others. The greater part was owed by the States to individuals. Hamilton was equal to the occasion. He reported a plan for the payment of the entire debt. What a change at once took place in every channel of trade! How bright the future appeared! The paper money in the hands of shopkeepers, which had been looked upon as worthless, was now brought out. It bought meat, flour, fuel, and other things, and was finally redeemed at its full face value. In conformity with Hamilton's plan, a tax was put upon domestic whisky, a national bank was established, and the State debts were assumed by the general government. From the mint in Philadelphia eagles, dollars, dimes, and cents were issued, and began to take the place of the English and Spanish coins that had so long been in use (pp. 125, 211).

9. North Carolina was the twelfth State to ratify the Constitution (November, 1789). Rhode Island was the last (1790).

Vermont.

Before this act of Rhode Island was completed, Vermont, whose Green Mountain Boys had rendered such timely service in the Revolution, knocked at the door of Congress and asked to be admitted to the Union. New

---

8. State fully the money question and how it was solved.

9. When did Rhode Island join the Union? What State came next? Give Vermont's early history.

York's Congressmen would not consent. They said that the Vermont territory belonged to New York ; and for evidence of this they pointed to the royal grants which had been made to the Duke of York (p. 88). In the colonial times, the governor of New Hampshire, believing that this territory of Vermont belonged to his colony, disposed of numerous plots to settlers. These plots came to be known as the New Hampshire Grants, a name that was soon applied to the entire Vermont region. Meanwhile settlers from New York were making clearings in the disputed region, laying out farms, building houses, and paying taxes to New York.

10. Two parties, we see, were thus contending for the ownership of the land. The contestants under the New Hampshire Grants, among whom were Ethan Allen and Seth Warner, patriots of the Revolution, were called Vermonters. The others were called Yorkers. We now see why the New York Congressmen were unwilling to let Vermont become a member of the Union. An agreement, however, was finally reached. Vermont consented to pay \$30,000 as compensation to the settlers from New York who had suffered from the acts of the other settlers. Vermont, with laws against slavery, was then admitted to the Union (1791), only nine months after Rhode Island's admission. Its mountains were called by the early French explorers *Monts Verts* (*vert*, green, and *mont*, mountain), hence Vermont. (App., p. 43.)

11. In one year (1790) a million of dollars were received by the general government from the sale of the public lands. These lands were of the West, a domain stretching from the States to the Mississippi. They had belonged, so it was claimed, to Virginia and four or five of the other States. The claims were old : they went back to the earliest colonial times, being based upon royal

Public Lands.
---------------

---

10. State the particulars of Vermont's admission to the Union.

11. What is said of the public lands ? Of the Northwest Territory and the anti-slavery ordinance ? What were the boundaries of the Northwest Territory (maps 3, 4) ?



grants which named the South Sea, meaning the Pacific Ocean, as the western limit of the ceded territory (map 3). New York put forth a claim, but on other grounds. It had for its support an old treaty made with the Six Nations of Indians (p. 107). All these claims, one after another, were



EMIGRATION TO THE WEST.

surrendered for the common good, and the United States then had lands to sell (p. 205). In 1787, while the States were united under the Articles of Confederation, five million acres of these surrendered lands were sold at two-thirds of a dollar per acre. In this same year Congress passed an act for the government of the Northwest Territory, the region north of the Ohio River (map 4). Because of its clause against slavery, the act became noted as the Ordinance of 1787 (§ 90)

12. At once a great rage for migration to the West began. The accounts of the region were glowing. Its climate was delicious. Its rains were abundant. Its rivers were broad, and deep enough to float large boats laden with corn and wheat. Its soil was fertile. Game was plentiful. From New Hampshire to Virginia the "Western fever" prevailed. Thousands of persons, selling their homesteads for what they would bring, started to begin life anew in what they called the "boundless West." On flat-boats, heavy with cattle and household goods, they glided down the Ohio. Some settled south of the river, others north. In one year alone ten thousand persons went to Marietta, Ohio, and its vicinity (1788). They built houses of rough logs, ground corn between two stones, and procured meat in the forest. Year by year emigrant trains, trudging along highways and across prairies, ventured further westward. Their covered wagons carried the women and children, also the most necessary household goods. The men walked, or rode on horseback, driving cattle and sheep. Sometimes, as a protection against Indians and wild animals, several parties went together, making a train a mile or more long (see the picture on p. 218). (Notes 16, 17, Ap., p. 47.)

Western  
Migration.

13. Already the Kentucky region had a considerable population. As early as 1775, Daniel Boone, explorer, pioneer, hunter, and guide, had been there and built a fort. Claimed by Virginia, the region became a county of that State. But its people, not satisfied with the connection, begged Virginia to let them go, and asked Congress to make a State of their district (map 4). For a time Virginia would not consent, but at length relented, and Kentucky was duly admitted into the family of States (1792).

Kentucky.

14. Tennessee, at first a part of North Carolina, then an

12. What is said of the West and emigration to it? Where is Marietta (map 4)?

13. What is said of Kentucky, its history, and admission to the Union?

14. What is said of Tennessee, its history, and admission to the Union?

independent State rejoicing in its name, Franklin, established within its borders several thriving towns. The inhabitants of these, having no money, used the skins of wild animals instead. A raccoon skin bought a pound of sugar or a yard of linen. "The salary of every officer of the State, from the governor down to the hangman," was paid in raccoon, beaver, otter, or deer skins. After being a second time united to North Carolina; then ceded to the general government; then under territorial rule, first united with Kentucky and afterward alone (map 4), Tennessee began a new existence as a member of the Union (1796). (N.17, Ap., p. 47.)

15. During these years the great valley of the Ohio was little better than a wilderness. Its wild beasts and roving Indians outnumbered by far its domestic animals and their peaceful owners. The gun, in the hands of the settler, brought meat for his table and peltry for barter, but it did not make a friend of his savage neighbor. Bands of Indians lurked in the woods, burned houses, destroyed crops, and killed or carried into captivity men, women, and children. Two expeditions, sent by President Washington against the hostile tribes north of the Ohio, met with defeat. A third, commanded by General Wayne, the "Mad Anthony of the Revolution" (p. 186), proving successful, a treaty was made at Greenville, Ohio, by which peace was secured, and a large tract of land was surrendered to the United States (1795).

16. Already, on almost every sea, the stars and stripes were beginning to wave. A Boston ship, the *Columbia*, with a cargo of Yankee notions, had sailed around the southern cape of South America, and thence up the Pacific and along the coast to Oregon. Here Captain

Tennessee.

Indian War.

Discovery  
of the  
Columbia River.

15. What is said of the Indian War, the treaty that closed it, and result? Who commanded the first expedition against the Indians? *Ans.* General Harmar. Who commanded the second? *Ans.* General St. Clair. What do you know of St. Clair's previous history (§ 57, p. 175, and note 39, Appendix, p. 55)?

16. Give an account of Gray's voyage around the world and his discovery of the Columbia River. Give the particulars of what he did.

Gray, commanding the *Columbia*, traded his notions for furs, then crossed the Pacific to China, exchanged his furs for teas, sailed around the southern point of Africa, and across the Atlantic to Boston, thus carrying the American flag for the first time around the world (1790). Next year Captain Gray, in command of the same vessel, discovered the great river of Oregon. Later he explored it for a distance of twenty miles, and named it the *Columbia* from his ship (1792). At the foot of a tree he buried some pine-tree shillings (p. 125).

17. The cotton plant was found by Columbus on the islands discovered by him (p. 24). On one of these islands Cortes gathered enough cotton to quilt the jackets of his soldiers as a protection against Indian arrows, and, when he reached Mexico, Montezuma sent him cotton robes fine as silk and of rich colors (p. 30). As early as 1621 cotton was cultivated in the Carolina region of the South, but at first it had a place only in gardens among the flowers. More than a hundred and fifty years passed before it began to be produced in large quantities in that region. When, in 1784, a ship took eight bags of the fiber to England, men there shook their heads, and said that so much cotton could not be grown in all the United States. They accused the Americans of deception, and the eight bags were seized by the custom-house officers.

Cotton.
---------

18. At that time England's principal supply of cotton came from the East Indies. To manufacture cloth of it, a thread was made of the fiber by means of a hand spinning-wheel, until Arkwright and other Englishmen gave to the world a better contrivance known as the spinning-jenny. By means of this machine a great many threads could be spun at the same time. So excellent is it in its present form that a pound of cotton can be spun out to the length of a thousand

---

17. What is said of American cotton in its wild state? Of its production in our country? Of the first lot sent to England?

18. What is said of the hand spinning-wheel? Of the spinning-jenny?

miles. For a number of years after the invention of the jenny it was unknown in America. The English government would not allow a single machine, or even the model of one, to be taken from the British realm. This shows how determined were the English to be the manufacturers of all the cotton goods that could be sold in the markets of the world. The secret, however, could not be kept forever. A boy spent seven years in English cotton-mills, learned the business thoroughly, and, when he was twenty-one years of age, brought his knowledge to New York (1789).



IN A COTTON FIELD.

19. As the production of cotton in the United States increased, the cotton spinning-wheel at the farmer's hearth came to be as common as had formerly been the wheel for spinning flax or wool. With the jenny came the cotton-mill, which depended for its power on the wind-mill or the water-wheel. The hand-loom for weaving the cotton into cloth was not displaced till a later period. It was soon found that there was not enough cotton ready for the mills. To sepa-

---

19. What is said of the cotton spinning-wheel in our country? The wind cotton mill? Its inability to do the required work? What question was asked?

rate cotton from its seed, the work being done by hand, was a slow process, because the fiber clings to the seed with great tenacity. The demand for clean cotton was greater than the supply.

20. Eli Whitney, of Massachusetts, "a born mechanic," went to Georgia. He saw what was needed, and studied out an invention to meet the need. With his own hands he made the tools to enable him to work; and in 1793 crowned his labors by constructing the first cotton-gin. The cotton fiber could now be separated from the seed with great rapidity and with trifling cost. The invention quickened every step of labor, from the planting of the cotton-seed to the weaving of the fiber. Thousands of acres were now devoted to the cultivation of cotton where before only a few had been so employed. (Note 14, App., p. 46.)



ELI WHITNEY.

21. Because of the new life thus put into this most profitable industry of the South, the supply of slave labor could not keep pace with the demand. Cotton was cultivated, picked, cleaned, pressed into bales, and taken long distances to ships, by slaves. Only a few years longer could the growing demand for slave labor be met by the importation of slaves. Congress, by special authority from the Constitution, had declared that no more slaves should be brought to the country after the year 1807 (Appendix, p. 17), but the buying and selling of slaves at the South continued more than fifty years longer, and the slave population increased. The children of slaves were slaves (§ 98):

---

20. Who was Eli Whitney? What did he accomplish? The consequence?

21. What is said of the cultivation of cotton in connection with slave labor?

Washington  
Retires  
from Office.

22. Washington was now about to retire from the Presidency. He had served one term, had been chosen again by unanimous vote as before, and was now in the closing year of his second term. He was weary of public cares, and longed for the repose which



WASHINGTON AT MOUNT VERNON. (FROM A PAINTING BY J. B. STEARNS.)

he felt could nowhere be found so completely as at his Mount Vernon. Men of both parties urged him to be a candidate for a third term, but he could see no sufficient reason for consenting.

23. Washington, his second election, and retirement from office?

**23.** The people had escaped being drawn into the great French Revolution that was agitating all Europe; the Indians had buried the hatchet; an armed outbreak in Pennsylvania, known as the "Whisky Insurrection," in opposition to the tax on domestic liquors, had been put down (1794); and serious disputes with England had been settled by an agreement brought about by Chief Justice Jay, and hence known as Jay's Treaty (§ 27). There were no domestic troubles, and all branches of industry were prospering. Adhering to his resolution, Washington issued a farewell address to his countrymen.

**24.** The election of Washington's successor resulted in the choice of John Adams, who had been Vice-President during Washington's two terms. Thomas Jefferson was elected Vice-President. Congress had early decided that Philadelphia should be the next capital, but only for a period of ten years, after which the permanent capital should be somewhere on the Potomac. In accordance with this decision Washington had resided in Philadelphia the last six years of his administration, which ended on the 4th of March, 1797.

#### JOHN ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION.

**25.** We have alluded to the great French Revolution. This had its beginning in 1789, when a mob destroyed the Bastile (*bas-teel'*), a noted prison in Paris. Mark the date. It was the year in which Washington entered upon his first presidential term. Four years later France declared war against England. The American people, grateful for the aid which France had extended to them in their struggle for independence, wanted to help

Trouble with France.
----------------------------

**23.** What had his administration accomplished? What is said of his address?

**24.** What is said of the election that followed? Of the changes in relation to the nation's capital?

**25.** What is said of the French Revolution, and why we were not involved in it?



their former ally, but Washington, then President, said it would not do. "We must keep ourselves aloof from European wars. Europe has interests," said he, "with which we have little concern. If we would prosper we must mind our own business."

26. Some of our people said that France was right in her contest with England; others said that England was right.



JOHN ADAMS.

The former made noisy speeches and loud promises which deceived the French rulers into the belief that the Americans were ready to help them. So believing, they sent an agent named Genet, who began to fit out war vessels in the ports of the United States to capture English vessels. Washington said this was wrong, and Genet was not allowed to go on. In consequence of this interference on the part of Washington an

unfriendly feeling against the United States soon found its way among the French rulers.

27. This feeling was aggravated by the news of the Jay Treaty, for it was seen that, friendly relations being established between the United States and England, the United States could not help France in any way in her contest with her enemy. What was that treaty? Let us go back a little. The treaty of 1783, closing our struggle with Great Britain for independence, contained many provisions (p. 200). Some were

---

26. State why Genet was sent to this country. How he was resisted, and the consequences. (Read note 40, Appendix, p. 56.)

27. What effect did the Jay Treaty have in France? Why was that treaty made? What were its advantages to us? What hostilities were committed by the French?

carried out, others were not. This neglect led to misunderstandings and angry feeling between the two governments. Each accused the other of wrong, and so threatening was the attitude of the English that, to avert war, Washington sent John Jay to England to negotiate a treaty that would settle the questions in dispute (§ 7). England claimed the right to search American vessels for deserters from her navy (§ 51). She kept possession of Detroit and other posts in the West, which, being within our territory, rightfully belonged to us. She was not willing that our merchants should trade with her islands in the West Indies. The task before Mr. Jay was difficult, but he acted with wisdom, procured the best treaty he could, and returned home. Never was a treaty more unpopular.\* Believing that if it were rejected war would follow, the Federalists gave it a hearty support ; but their leaders were accused of having been bought with British gold. The Senate, after an earnest discussion, approved the treaty, and Washington signed it (August, 1795). Though it did not dispose of England's claim to search our vessels, though it did not give our merchants full liberty to trade with British islands, it gave us possession of all our Western posts, and averted war. Time proved it to be a wise measure. The election of Adams to the presidency was another cause of irritation to the French rulers. They preferred Jefferson, who, they thought, was in hearty sympathy with them. Soon American ships were seized in French ports, and American ships were captured on the high seas by French cruisers. (Read note 18, Appendix, p. 48.)

---

\* "On the 4th of July (1795) a great mob paraded the streets of New York with an effigy of Mr. Jay. From the mouth of the figure proceeded the words, *Come up to my price and I will sell you my country.* At a meeting held in the open air Hamilton attempted to address the crowd in vindication of the treaty, but the orator was answered with stones. The mob, with American and French flags flying, marched to a spot opposite Jay's residence, and there burned a copy of the treaty."—*William Jay's Life of John Jay.*

**28.** Anxious to avoid war, Adams, now President, sent three envoys to Paris. These were told by an agent of the French government that before any terms of a treaty could be considered it would be necessary for them to pay a large sum of money. Said Charles C. Pinckney, one of the envoys, in quick reply: "War be it, then! Millions for defense, but not a cent for tribute." Every newspaper in the United States published an account of this affair, and at once "Millions for defense, but not a cent for tribute," was echoed from the heart and mouth of every patriot in the land.

**29.** This indignation of the people had its effect upon Congress, and war measures against France were adopted.

<p>Death of Washington.</p>
-------------------------------------

It was decided to form a large army; and Washington, then living the life of a planter on his Potomac domain, was called upon to be its commander. He accepted the appointment with reluctance. Loving France and hating war, he lingered on his plantation, hoping that war would be averted. While attending to some outdoor duties, a storm of snow and rain came on, and the clothing about his neck and shoulders became wet. Next day he was not able to take his usual ride, and at night he awoke, suffering from sore throat and a fever. The following night he died (December 14, 1799). He, "first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen," whom the people had loved to call the Father of his Country, was no more forever. Honors were paid to his memory in every part of the land. Beneath a tomb at Mount Vernon, in full view of the Potomac, repose his remains. It is the shrine which men of all parties, creeds, and colors visit with feelings of veneration.\* (Note 19, Ap., p. 48.)

\* More than eighty years after this sad event, England's great statesman, Gladstone, said: "Washington, to my mind, is the purest figure in

**28.** What efforts did President Adams make to secure peace? How were his efforts met?

**29.** What preparations for war were made? Give an account of Washington's death. Repeat what is said in the note.

30. One of the results of the French Revolution, already mentioned, was the bringing of Napoleon Bonaparte to the head of the French government. It was then possible to make a treaty; and one was accordingly signed which restored friendly relations between the land of Washington and the land of Lafayette (September 30, 1800).

Peace  
with France.

31. The term Anti-federalist was still applied to the party of which Jefferson was considered the leader, though the original reason for so using it no longer existed. The Constitution was the rock on which the nation was now built. No one desired to destroy it. No one was opposed to the Federal Union. Soon to preside over the Supreme Court was John Marshall, of whom, after his death; it was said: "He found the Constitution paper and made it power; he found it a skeleton and clothed it with flesh and blood."

Election  
of  
Jefferson.

32. The Anti-federalists came to be known as Democrats, also as Republicans. They preferred to be called Democratic Republicans. In the quarrel between England and France, their sympathies were with France. The Federalists, in control of Congress, had lost favor by the passage of two acts known as the Alien and Sedition Laws. These were aimed against the schemes of French emissaries, who, in newspapers and pamphlets, were exciting the people against Adams's administration. They gave the President power to banish all such aliens, as, in his opinion, were dangerous to

history;" to which England's distinguished scholar, Canon Farrar, added: "Yes. He was the best of great men and the greatest of good men."

"Alone of all white men," says a tradition of the New York Indians, "Washington has been admitted to the Indian heaven, because of his justice to the Red men. He lives in a great palace, and is dressed in his uniform with a sword at his side."—*Parker's Historic Americans*.

30. How and when was peace with France secured?

31. Who was John Marshall, and what is said of him?

32. What is said of the Anti-federalists? The Federalists? Of the Alien and Sedition Laws? Opposition to those laws? What is said of State rights?

the peace of the country, and to imprison all persons guilty of abusing the freedom of speech or of the press. Jefferson and his party did not like these laws. They said it was not right to put so much power into the hands of the administration. They repeated the arguments which had been used against the adoption of the Constitution (p. 205). Less power, they thought, should be given to the general government and more to the individual States, hence they came to be known as State Rights men (§ 110).

**33.** The unpopularity of the Alien and Sedition Laws had much to do with the defeat of the Federalists in the next presidential election. Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr, the Republican candidates, received the largest number of electoral votes, the one, as it happened, just as many as the other. Which of the two men should be President? As the Constitution then stood, it was the duty of the popular branch of Congress, the House of Representatives, to decide the question, each State having one vote (§ 1). At first, of the sixteen votes cast, Jefferson received eight, not a majority. After numerous ballots he received ten votes, and was declared elected. According to the Constitution, Burr became Vice-President (see the Appendix, page 20).

**34.** These proceedings of Congress took place in the city of Washington, the nation's new capital, during its first session there. Adams had moved into the building known as the President's Mansion, commonly known since as the White House. In a letter to her married daughter, Mrs. Adams wrote: "The house is upon a grand and superb scale, requiring about thirty servants to attend and keep the apartments in order." The city then comprised only a few scattered buildings, "most of them small, miserable huts not ready for occupation." Not one of the streets was paved. Not a fence could be seen in any di-

The  
Capital in 1800.

---

**33.** Give a full account of Jefferson's election to the presidency.

**34.** What is said of the President's mansion and the city of Washington?

rection. A member of Congress wrote : " We want nothing here but houses, cellars, kitchens, well-informed men, amiable women, and other little trifles of the kind to make our city perfect " (1800). (See Appendix, p. 17.)

#### JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

35. When Jefferson was a young man he dressed in a "flowered waistcoat, a silk coat, silk stockings confined at the knee by fancifully worked garters, and used powder. In after years he wore severe black, discarded powder and silk stockings," practiced simplicity in all things, and became what friend and foe alike styled "The Apostle of Democracy." The day for his inauguration as President arrived. Escorted by citizens and soldiers, he rode to the capitol on horseback. His dress, as was now his custom on all occasions, was that of a "plain citizen." It was without badge or ornament of any kind. He delivered an address, took the oath of office, and went to live in the mansion provided by the nation (March 4, 1801).

Jefferson's  
Habits.



THOMAS JEFFERSON.

36. At the White House he would have no ceremonies, no formal levees, no invited guests. Any person who wanted to see him could call at any time. Instead of going to Congress to read his messages, as had been the custom with Washington and Adams, he sent them by a messenger. To all titles of honor he was decidedly opposed. He did not like

35. What is said of Jefferson, his dress, and inauguration ?

36. What changes did Jefferson effect, and with what consequences ?

to be addressed as Excellency or Honorable, or even Mr. All this example was not without its influence. A change toward simplicity in the dress and manners of the people followed.

37. We have seen how the "Western Lands" came to be owned by the general government (§ 11). Connecticut, when Ohio. ceding her claim, reserved a large tract along Lake Erie, known as The Reserve, often called the Connecticut Reserve (map 3). This she sold to a company of speculators, and the money received from the sale, more than a million of dollars, was the first contribution to the common-school fund of the State. The victory gained by General Wayne (§ 15) gave peace to the West. New life was imparted to the migration from the sea-board States. The first outgrowth of this was Ohio, admitted to the Union in 1803. It includes the Connecticut Reserve. (N. 16, Ap., p. 47.)

38. Of the many boats, loaded with corn, flour, tobacco, and bacon, that floated down the Mississippi to Natchez and The Louisiana Purchase. New Orleans, scarce one, because of the rapid current, ever returned. They were sold as lumber. The day of steamboats had not yet arrived. There were no large towns on the west side of the great river. St. Louis, where a company of French fur dealers had built a house or two forty years before, was still little more than a settlement of fur traders. It and New Orleans, though the latter had ten thousand inhabitants, were as mere dots on the Louisiana Territory, whose western limits were the Rocky Mountains. This territory had belonged to France (p. 137), but since 1762, when that power ceded it to Spain, it had been a Spanish possession. The loss of this immense domain being greatly lamented by the French, Napoleon offered to Spain, in exchange for it, certain lands which France owned in Italy. The offer was accepted (1800).

37. What is said of the Connecticut Reserve? Wayne's victory (map p. 250)? How was Ohio formed and when was it admitted to the Union?

38. What is said of the trade of the Mississippi? What is said of St. Louis? New Orleans? What was known as the Louisiana Territory? Give its early history.

39. The news of this bargain was not relished by the people of the United States. They asked: "Is not Napoleon a great conqueror? Has he not brought the powerful governments of the continent of Europe on their knees before him? And now, is he not planning to create a French nation in the wilds of America? Will he not, being in command of the mouth of the Mississippi, the key of the Western waters, cut off the trade of the States with New Orleans, and prevent ships other than his own from carrying cargoes out of the river to the Atlantic States or to foreign ports?"

40. Said Jefferson: "We must marry ourselves to the British fleet and nation" to drive France away. He sent a special envoy, James Monroe, to Paris, to assist the American minister there, Robert R. Livingston, to do—what? To purchase New Orleans, and so much of the land about it as would secure to the United States the free navigation of the Mississippi—that, and nothing more. It happened to be a very fortunate time for the undertaking. Napoleon was about to renew his war with England, and was afraid his American property would fall into the hands of his enemy. He would not reason with his ministers on the subject, but passionately exclaimed: "The English have twenty ships of war in the Gulf of Mexico! I have not a moment to lose!" In sore need of money, he offered to sell the whole of the Louisiana Territory. Livingston and Monroe were surprised. They had no authority to purchase a domain so extensive, but fearing that the favorable opportunity would pass, and pass forever, they accepted the offer; and for fifteen millions of dollars the transfer was made (1803). Napoleon was delighted. Said he: "This accession of territory strengthens forever the power of the United States; and I have just

---

39. How did the transfer of the territory to Napoleon touch the interest and feelings of the people of the United States?

40. What did Jefferson say? What did he do? Why was the moment fortunate? What said Napoleon? What offer did he make? What was the result? What then did Napoleon say? Repeat in full what is stated in the note on page 234.



given to England a maritime rival that will sooner or later humble her pride." Henceforth the Louisiana Territory, or, as we are in the habit of calling it, the Louisiana Purchase, was a part of the great domain of the United States (map 8).\*

41. Already, before the first hint of Napoleon's offer had been received in the United States, Jefferson had started off an expedition to find a way across the continent to the Pacific Ocean. It was commanded by two Virginians, Lewis and Clarke.† The welcome news of the purchase overtook the party at St. Louis. Up the Missouri, for months and months, the explorers toiled in canoes against its strong current. At a distance of nearly three thousand miles from its mouth, they left their boats. Procuring horses from Indians whom they had met, they crossed the Rocky Mountains, struck the Columbia, the river discovered by Captain Gray thirteen years before (§16), and descended it in canoes for six hundred miles to the Pacific Ocean (1805). (Read note 20, Appendix, p. 48.)

42. Six years later a company of fur dealers, whose operations were conducted by John Jacob Astor, of New York, established a trading post where the town of Astoria now stands. It was the first settlement in all that region. Nowadays a journey from St. Louis to Astoria can be accomplished in four or five days or less. It took Lewis and Clarke eighteen months to do it. Soon explorations were

---

\* What was its western limit? Jefferson declared that the territory purchased "extended to the main chain of the mountains (Rocky) dividing the waters of the Pacific from the waters of the Atlantic." It did not go to the Pacific. In a controversy with Spain, the United States claimed that this purchase included the gulf land south of Alabama and Mississippi (see map 4); but all disputes on this point were finally put at rest by our purchase of Florida in 1819 (§ 94).

† Clarke was a brother of George Rogers Clark (p. 185). In official reports of the expedition and in public documents his name is printed with an *e*.

---

41. Give a full account of the Lewis and Clarke expedition.

42. Who was John Jacob Astor? What town is named after him? Give the beginning of its history. How is it located (map 8)?

made to different parts of the distant territory. The term Unknown Region was omitted on the future maps to designate that far-off region.

43. The presidential electors at the present time are required to "name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and, in distinct ballots, the person voted for as Vice-President." Such was not the case during the contest between Jefferson and Burr (§ 33). The change was made in the Constitution within the next three years after that contest (see the Appendix p. 20). Jefferson and Burr were Republicans. Burr's willingness to be put into the presidential chair by the votes of the Federalists, knowing, as he did, that the Republicans had intended and desired the place for Jefferson, turned the leaders of his party against him. They could not, however, prevent his elevation to the second place, that of Vice-President. To mend his fortunes, he courted the favor of his former political opponents, the Federalists, and offered himself as a candidate for governor of the State of New York. He was defeated, a large body of Federalists, including Hamilton, having refused to vote for him.

Hamilton and Burr.
-----------------------

44. To Hamilton he attributed his defeat. Bent upon revenge, he sent an angry letter to the Federal leader, following it with a challenge to fight a duel. They met at a secluded spot on the Jersey shore. Burr raised his pistol, took aim, and fired. "Hamilton sprang upon his toes with a convulsive movement, reeled a little, involuntarily discharged his pistol in the air, and then fell forward headlong upon his face." The surgeon approached him. The pallor of death was on his face. "Doctor," he said, "this is a mortal wound," and immediately fainted. He was carefully carried across the river to New York, where, after lingering a few

---

43. What is the present mode of electing a President (Appendix p. 20)? How does it differ from the first mode? State what is said of Burr.

44. Give an account of the duel between Hamilton and Burr.

hours, he died. Amid the lamentations of a nation he was laid in his grave (July, 1804).\*

45. Thus passed away the great leader of the Federalists. He had performed valuable service in the war of the Revolution, winning for himself among his comrades the title of "the Little Lion;" he had contributed important aid in the framing of the Constitution; he had, more than any other



ALEXANDER HAMILTON.

man, induced the States to accept the Constitution; and he had devised and put into force the admirable plan of finance that was giving strength and stability to the government. As a speaker, no less than as a writer, was he eminent, charming all hearts by the warmth, variety, ornament, and grace of his thoughts and words.

46. Burr was regarded as no better than the worst of murderers. After keeping himself in a hiding-place two or three days he stealthily left New York to find a more secure hiding-place in Philadelphia. We next hear of him as the head of a mysterious movement at the West. At Blennerhassett Island, in the Ohio River, he stopped awhile, made the acquaintance of its

\* "The impression made upon the public mind by this fatal duel did not easily subside. The absurdity of the sacrifice of a life like Hamilton's to the honor of a profligate like Burr was too gross, and a strong impulse was thus given to that growing sentiment of civilized common sense which has nearly extirpated the practice of dueling throughout the States of America."—*Hildreth's History of the U. S.*

45. Repeat fully what is recorded of Hamilton. When and where was he born? *Ans.* In one of the West India islands, in 1757.

46. What movements did Burr make, and what scheme did he start?

owner and occupant, Harman Blennerhassett, and enlisted him in his scheme. Exactly what that scheme was we do not know. It was reported that Burr meant to seize a large part of Mexico and the Louisiana territory, and over it establish a government with New Orleans for its capital.

47. Boats were built for Burr, and men assembled at different places to do his bidding. Reports of his doings reached Jefferson, who was then serving a second term, he having been re-elected by a large majority. By Jefferson's orders, Burr was arrested. At Richmond, Virginia, he was tried on a charge of high treason, but, for want of sufficient evidence, was not pronounced guilty. Gaining his liberty, he went to Europe. A few years later he returned to America, where, in obscurity and poverty, he died at the age of eighty.

48. Nobody knows when or by whom the first steamboat was invented. At the beginning of this year of 1807 there is not a steamboat in use in all the world. Spanish writers assert that one was launched upon the waters of Barcelona about fifty years after Columbus discovered America. Two hundred years later a steamboat was put upon a river of Germany, but a mob of boatmen, thinking that they saw in the strange craft the ruin of their business, captured and destroyed it. French, English, and American inventors afterward succeeded in moving boats by steam, the experiments in some cases being remarkably successful.

<p>The First Steamboat.</p>
---------------------------------

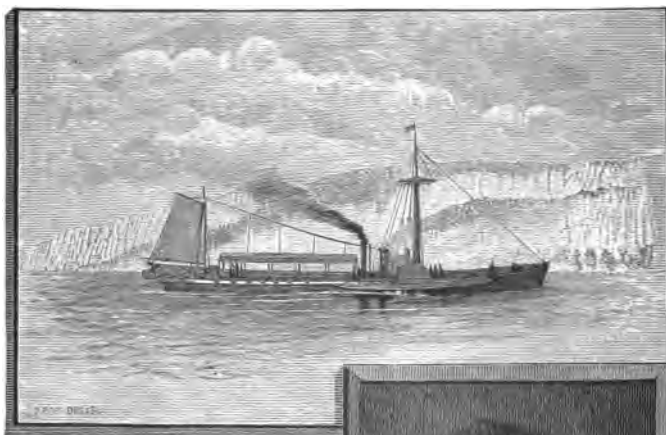
49. Not, however, before Robert Fulton's side-wheel steamer, the Clermont, went up and down the Hudson River

47. State how the scheme was brought to an end, and what is said of the trial and the after years of Burr. (Blennerhassett was born in England.)

48. Give the history of the early efforts to invent steamboats.

49. Who was Robert Fulton? Give an account of his success. Of success on the Delaware and Mississippi. What other Americans besides Fulton made early experiments in steamboats? Ans. James Rumsey and John Fitch. They both moved boats by steam as early as 1786.

in 1807, did the opinion begin to prevail that steamboats could be used with profit to carry freight and passengers. The *Clermont* was the great wonder of the day. People traveled



THE CLERMONT.

many miles to gaze upon the mysterious vessel, as it puffed fire and smoke, and moved through the water against wind and tide, without sail, paddle, or oar. Great activity in steamboat building followed. The *Phoenix*, another paddle-wheel boat, built by John Stevens, was put upon the Delaware (1808). The



ROBERT FULTON.

Orleans, with a stern wheel, the first steamboat on the Mississippi, went from Pittsburgh, where she was built, to New Orleans in fourteen days (1812). By this invention rivers and lakes were made available, and the whole continent was thrown open to commerce (§ 102).

50. The war between England and France, as we shall see, began troubles which, growing worse year after year, led to war between England and the United States. Bonaparte had become the most powerful ruler in Europe. He was now an emperor, and two of his brothers were kings. One of his war measures had for its object the destruction of England's commerce. He issued decrees forbidding all vessels of every nation from entering British ports. From England came like decrees, forbidding trade of every kind with French ports. American merchantmen, being more numerous than the merchant ships of any other country, were the greatest sufferers. They were placed, it may be said, between two fires. So many of them were seized by the war vessels of both powers that the anger of the people rose to a high pitch. Public meetings were held in every city of the Union to condemn the outrages, and urge the government to protect the country's commerce.

Injury  
to American  
Commerce.

51. The people's anger was greatly aggravated by reports that commanders of British war ships had stopped American vessels on the high seas, and forcibly taken seamen from them to serve on their own ships. England, asserting that "a man once an Englishman is always an Englishman," claimed to have the right of searching American ships for deserters. This was what was called in the United States impressment of American seamen, for sailors who could not at once prove themselves to be Americans and not Englishmen were impressed into the English service (§ 27). Merchant ships were not the only vessels that were stopped and despoiled of their crews (§ 57). Off the coast of Virginia, the American frigate Chesapeake was hailed by the British frigate Leopard. The American commander refusing to have his vessel searched, the

---

50. What is said of injury done to American commerce ?

51. What do you understand by the impressment question ? Give an account of the Chesapeake affair. How was the affair retaliated ? *Ans.* Off the coast of Virginia the British sloop-of-war Little Belt fired into the American frigate President, but her fire was returned and thirty-two of her crew were killed or wounded (1811).

Leopard fired into her, killing or wounding twenty-one of her crew. As the Chesapeake was entirely unprepared for fighting, and had been seriously disabled by the Leopard's broadsides, her flag was struck. She was boarded, and four men, claimed as deserters, were taken to the Leopard (1807). It was afterward proved that three of the men had never been British subjects. Two were born in the United States, the other in South America.

52. This daring outrage threw the country into a tumult of excitement. The British armed ships in the waters of the United States were compelled to leave. An Embargo was laid upon American vessels, that is, they were not allowed to sail for foreign ports. In consequence, they rotted at the wharfs, while the ships of England and France prospered. The Embargo soon proved to be a very unwise measure. It was therefore altered so as to let American vessels trade with all the ports of the world except those of the two warring nations.

53. Meanwhile the time for the sixth presidential election drew near. Jefferson, following the example of Washington, declined to be a candidate for a third term. The Republicans then turned to James Madison, whom Jefferson favored, and he was elected by a large majority. The retiring President then went to his home at Monticello, Virginia, where he expected to live the life of a hermit. He was mistaken. A ceaseless stream of visitors from all parts of the world passed in and out of his house. His wisdom gained for him in his old age the title of the Sage of Monticello.

Election of Madison.
----------------------------

#### MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION.

54. When Madison was inaugurated (March 4, 1809) "he

52. What was the Embargo Act? What is said of its working?

53. Who was Jefferson's successor as President? When and where did we meet Madison before (pp. 208, 206)? To what place did Jefferson retire? What is said of his life there?

54. How did Madison appear when he was inaugurated? What was his object?

was dressed in a full suit of woolen cloth, the wool being from sheep raised in the United States, and the cloth from American factories." His intention, so he said, was "to show what Americans can do when the tariff protects their work against the work of their English competitors."

Result  
of  
the Tariff.

55. After cutting off Ohio from the Northwest Territory, the rest was called the Indiana Territory (map 4). General William Henry Harrison was its governor. The wild tribes of the forest were again dissatisfied (§ 15). They were not getting good prices for their furs, the white settlements were crowding them off their lands, game was scarce. Tecumseh, a great warrior, and his brother, commonly known as the Prophet, were trying to form a union of the tribes. Both were opposed



JAMES MADISON.

to selling any more land to the whites. They wanted to see their race restored to its ancient power. Tecumseh was an orator as well as a warrior. He was crafty, and he never stopped at the means for carrying out his plans. His brother also was an orator. As a "medicine man," regarded as a medium between the Great Spirit and the Indians, the Prophet's influence among his people was almost unbounded. "They believed that he could make a pumpkin as big as a wigwam spring out of the ground at a single word."

Indian  
Troubles.

56. Wanting blankets and other things, some of the tribes

55. Who was Harrison? Tecumseh? The Prophet? What is said of the character, plans, and efforts of the two Indians?

56. Give an account of the battle of Tippecanoe. Was Tecumseh in it? *Ans.* He was not (§ 74). Where is the Wabash River (map 5. The Tippecanoe flows into it)?



met Harrison, and sold to the government a large tract of land along the Wabash River. Tecumseh and his brother would not consent to the transfer. They said that "all the Indian lands belonged to all the Indians, and, for that reason, none could be sold without the consent of all." Being told that the Prophet was making preparations for war, Harrison,



TECUMSEH BEFORE THE PEACE COUNCIL HELD AT VINCENNES, INDIANA, IN 1811 (MAP 3).<sup>\*</sup>  
(FROM A PAINTING BY J. B. STEARNS.)

with a body of troops, marched against his town on the Tippecanoe River, in the western part of Indiana. Messengers from the Prophet met him. "What is the meaning of this?" they asked. "We do not want war. Halt where you are, and

<sup>\*</sup> "At the council some person handed a chair to Tecumseh, saying: 'Warrior, your father, General Harrison, offers you a seat.' Tecumseh's dark eye flashed. 'My father!' he exclaimed indignantly, extending his arm toward the heavens. 'The Great Spirit is my father, and the earth is my mother. She feeds and clothes me, and I recline upon her bosom.'"—*Yates and Moulton's History of N. Y.*

to-morrow we will have a talk with you." The troops halted and formed a camp, but, suspecting treachery, slept on their arms. It was a fortunate precaution, for, just before day-break, the Indians, with fearful yells, rushed upon the camp. The contest was brief. The assailants were repulsed, and the town was destroyed (November 7, 1811).

57. All this time our merchants and ship-owners were uttering loud complaints. Their property was seized by English and French cruisers, and no protection came to them from the government. In addition, the English would not abate the least from their wrong impressment claim (§ 51). Already they had taken more than six thousand seamen out of American vessels. A large number, being Americans and refusing to fight for the king, were cast into prison. Two nephews of Washington, who were on their way home from Europe, were seized, and put to work as common seamen on board one of the king's ships.\* (Read note 41, Appendix, p. 56.)

War  
with England.

58. Were we forever to submit to this man-stealing? Was not the flag of the Union, by sea as well as by land, to

\* "In 1811 the American frigate *Constitution* and the British frigate *Madagascar* were at anchor in the harbor of Portsmouth, England. One night a man belonging to the *Constitution* let himself down into the water and swam to the *Madagascar*. A cutter was sent in the morning to procure him, but its officer was told that the deserter claimed protection as an Englishman and could not be given up. 'Have you any evidence beyond the man's own word,' asked the officer, 'that he is an Englishman?' 'No,' was the reply. 'The man's declaration is sufficient.' About the middle of the following night a man was seen in the water near the *Constitution*. He was rescued, and confessed that he was a deserter from the *Madagascar*. He was asked what countryman he was, and he answered in a strong Irish accent: 'An American, your honor.' The next day he was inquired after, but it was intimated that, as he said he was an American, he could not be given up."—*Cooper's Naval History of the U. S.*

57. What injury was done to our commerce and seamen? What doctrine did the English proclaim (§ 51)? Acting upon that doctrine, what followed?

58. What questions are asked? What cry went up? Why and when was war declared? Who objected to war and why? What says the note on page 244?

protect all beneath it? A war cry went up from every part of the country. It was: "Free trade and sailors' rights." There being no longer any hope of redress, Madison advised Congress to appeal to arms, and, accordingly, war was declared against Great Britain (June 18, 1812). The declaration was warmly approved by the South and the West, but not by the Federalists of New England. The war would injure their commerce and fisheries.\* The impressment question, we see, was the turning point in the cause of the war, but other questions of great importance were involved.

59. Unfortunately, no preparations had been made for the conflict. Its first events were consequently far from encouraging. British troops surprised and captured the fort at the outlet of Lake Michigan, and defeated a detachment of the army under General Hull, the Governor of the Michigan Territory (map 4). British troops, with six hundred Indians led by Tecumseh, appeared before Detroit, where Hull had taken up his quarters. The Americans were in good spirits, and ready to make a resolute defense, when, to their astonishment, a white flag was hoisted over their heads in token of submission. By this act the bewildered Hull sent an army into captivity, and surrendered Michigan to the enemy (August 16).

60. Was Hull a coward at Detroit? A court-martial tried him two years after, and said that he was. He was sentenced to be shot, but the President, reminded of his age and his many brave deeds during the Revolution, saved

**First  
Land Events.**

\* Delegates held a secret convention in Hartford, December, 1814. It was generally believed that their object was to break up the Union, and form a separate government for New England. "The thought of dissolving the Union never entered into the head of any member. The gentlemen who composed it, for talents and patriotism, have never been surpassed by any assembly in the United States."—*Noah Webster's Sketches of American Policy.*

59. Relate the first events of the war including Hull's surrender.

60. State all else you can of Hull. Give an account of the battle of Queenstown. Where is Queenstown (map p. 252)? Detroit (map p. 250)?

his life. "It is hard to affix the stain of cowardice on the man who moved beside Washington in the perilous march against Trenton, who stood firmly amid the hottest fire of Princeton, who gallantly led his men to the charge at Saratoga, who faced without flinching the fiery sleet at Stony Point. Gray hairs do not make a coward of such a man." About two months after his surrender, a body of Americans crossed the Niagara River to Canada, and at first gained some success at Queenstown (map p. 252), but fresh troops arriving to the aid of the British, the invaders were overpowered with serious loss (October 13).

61. On the land, during the first year of the war, the Americans met with nothing but disaster. On the ocean the result was quite different. England owned more than a thousand war ships. The United States less than twenty. England was not only the greatest marine power in the world, she was more powerful on the ocean than all the other nations of the world united. Such was the reputation of her great ships that it was believed, in other lands as well as her own, that any of her frigates could never be else than conqueror. And yet the little fleet of less than twenty sails, big and little, boldly put out from shore to encounter the "Mistress of the Sea."

Victories on the Ocean.
-------------------------------

62. Captain Porter, commanding the frigate Essex, began the proud record which shows the names of a dozen good ships that gained honorable victories during the war. The Alert, of the king's navy, the first national vessel captured, was Porter's trophy (August 13). Captain Hull was next to perform a service that went far to wipe out the disgrace attached to his name by his uncle's surrender at Detroit. In command of the frigate Constitution, he met the Guerriere (*gare-e-are'*), one of the finest of the king's frigates, and, after

---

61. What is said of the naval forces of the two countries?

62. Give an account of Captain Porter's success. Of Captain Hull's success.

a contest of two hours, the first serious contest of the war, compelled her to strike her flag (August 19).

63. An officer, sent on board the prize, returned with the report that she was so badly cut up as to be in a sinking condition. The prisoners were hastily removed to the Constitution, and the wreck was set on fire. "The flames leaped up the broken masts and wrapped the hull in a sheet of fire. As the guns became heated they went off, one after another, firing their last salute to the dying ship." At length the fire reached the magazine, when a tremendous explosion and a huge column of smoke ended the history of the *Guerriere*. The victor in this famous battle was the very frigate Constitution that an English writer had previously described as "a bunch of pine boards sailing under a bit of striped bunting." Gaining other laurels, the Constitution grew to be the pet ship of the navy, and came to be known by old and young, from one end of the land to the other, as Old Ironsides.

64. The further history of the old ship interests us. There came a time when, by reason of her age, it was thought that she was unfit for longer service. It was therefore decided to break her up and sell her timbers. Public opinion at once condemned the decision. Poets and newspaper writers gave earnest expression to this opinion. The heart of the chief of the navy department was touched, and his hand was stayed. The pet was saved and turned into a schoolship, where boys were taught the three R's, as well as practical seamanship. (Note 21, Appendix, p. 49.) In bringing about this happy result the magic wand of the poet, Dr. Holmes, was most effective. This is the closing strain of his song :

"O! better that her shattered hulk should sink beneath the wave :  
Her thunder shook the mighty deep, and there should be her grave.  
Nail to the mast her holy flag, set every threadbare sail,  
And give her to the God of storms, the lightning, and the gale."

---

63. What is said of the Constitution's fame and name ?

64. What is said of the further history of the frigate ? Repeat the lines.

65. Two important events of the year 1812, neither, however, having any direct relation to the war, were the admission of Louisiana to the Union and the election of Madison for a second term. The State of Louisiana. Louisiana was thus the first piece taken from the immense territory sold to us by Napoleon in 1803 (§ 40). Its chief city, New Orleans, was started into existence by the French in 1718. Its first houses having been built on the convex side of a bend in the Mississippi, the city, now the largest in the South, came to be known by its familiar name, the Crescent City.

66. The second year of the war opened with operations for the recovery of Michigan. An American detachment was captured at Frenchtown (map p. 250), but, later, General Harrison, at Fort Meigs, on the Maumee Land Battles. River, bravely withstood a long siege. Later still, the youthful Major Croghan, in command of Fort Stephenson, on the Sandusky River, made such good use of the only cannon he had that his assailants, British and Indians, were forced to retreat in great haste (August 2, 1813).

67. Meanwhile an American force, embarking at Sackett's Harbor, New York, crossed Lake Ontario and captured York, now called Toronto (map 2). The soul of this expedition was General Pike, who, just as victory was deciding in his favor, was mortally wounded from the explosion of the enemy's magazine. The captured flag being brought to him, he made a sign to have it put under his head, and so the hero expired (April, 1813). Sackett's Harbor seeming to be defenseless, a thousand Canadians and Indians, under General Pre'vost, crossed the lake to attack it. They were resisted by General Brown, commanding a hastily formed force, and driven back to their ships (May 29).

---

65. What is said of Louisiana and its admission to the Union? Of New Orleans?

66. What took place at Fort Meigs? On the Sandusky? What was the name of the fort (map p. 250)? What town now occupies its site? *Ans.* Fremont. Where were both forts (map p. 250)?

67. Where is Sackett's Harbor? State what took place there. Where is York? What took place there? What is York's present name (map 2)?

**American Privateers.** 68. The success of the Americans on the ocean incited the British to send more of their war ships against their adversary. These, sailing along the eastern coast of the United States and hovering off the great business ports, succeeded in capturing many small trading vessels. The greater number of prizes, however, were not on their side. From Boston, New York, Charleston, and other ports, went forth privateers that captured more than a thousand vessels. "These bold rovers, being swifter sailors than the English, asked only an open sea and a gale of wind to outstrip their pursuers or overtake them in flight. Every pathway of commerce was familiar to them, and they passed from sea to sea, appearing and disappearing with a suddenness and celerity that baffled pursuit. At one time they cruised so daringly in English waters that sixty dollars were paid in England to insure five hundred across the channel."

**Defeat on the Ocean.** 69. The rejoicings of the Americans over their many naval successes were checked for a moment by a reverse that befell them in Massachusetts Bay. Captain Lawrence for gallant service had been promoted to the command of the frigate Chesapeake, then lying in Boston harbor. The Shannon, one of King George's best frigates, manned by a select crew, appeared off the harbor to fight the Chesapeake. Though his ship was not yet properly equipped, and he was almost a stranger to his officers and men, Lawrence felt impelled to accept the challenge. Toward evening the two vessels met. The contest was brief, only fifteen minutes, yet in that short time, "both ships were made charnel-houses." Every superior officer of the Chesapeake was killed or wounded. As the dying Lawrence was carried below, he exclaimed, "Don't give up the ship!" The ship was not given up. There was

---

68. Give an account of the exploits of American privateers.

69. Give an account of the contest between the Chesapeake and Shannon.

no officer left to give her up. She was boarded, and the flag which had never yet been struck to anything like an equal foe, was hauled down by a lieutenant of the Shannon (June 1, 1813).

70. "The capture of a single ship of war probably never produced a greater effect upon the contending parties than this victory of the Shannon over the Chesapeake. The almost uninterrupted success of the little navy of the United States had made the Americans believe that it was invincible, and a similar idea was taking hold of the British mind." The spell was now broken. The Americans moderated their opinion: the English were jubilant. In England bells were rung, guns were fired, and honors were lavished upon the Shannon's captain and crew. The prowess of the American navy never received a greater compliment.

71. That prowess was about to deserve a compliment not so agreeable to British feeling. The recovery of Michigan still being in view (§ 66), a fleet of nine vessels was fitted out on Lake Erie, and the command given to Captain, afterward Commodore, Perry. This fleet was to cope with the enemy's fleet commanded by Commodore Barclay (see table p. 256). The American vessels were lying in Put-in-Bay, among the islands in the western part of the lake (map p. 250), when the cry of "Sail ho!" rang out from the mast-head of the Lawrence, Perry's flagship (September 10, 1813).

<p style="text-align: center;">Victory on Lake Erie.</p>
--

72. Perry's battle flag was brought out. On it was painted in large letters, "Don't give up the ship." Mounting a gun slide, he addressed his crew: "My brave lads," said he,

---

70. What was the effect produced by the result of the battle?

71. Where is Lake Erie? Put-in-Bay? Who commanded the American fleet on the lake? How many vessels and guns were in the two fleets (p. 257)?

72. How did Perry address his men on the eve of the battle? Give an account of the battle. State what is said of Perry's message. Where is the battle held in special remembrance? *Ans.* In Cleveland, Ohio, where a beautiful statue of Perry was erected in 1860. How is Cleveland situated (map p. 250)?



"this flag contains the last words of Captain Lawrence. Shall I hoist it?" "Ay, ay, sir!" they all shouted. Up



it went, amid cheer after cheer, at first from the flag-ship, and then, as the words were read, from the rest of the fleet. It was the signal for battle. The combat lasted about three hours, and ended in a complete victory to the Americans. Not one of the enemy's ships escaped. Taking off his cap, and using it for a writing desk, Perry wrote with a pencil on the back of an old letter his famous dis-

patch to Harrison: "We have met the enemy and they are ours." Does not this message fairly rank in brevity with the renowned one, "I came, I saw, I conquered," sent by the great Roman general, Julius Cæsar, after a victory he had just gained?

**73.** The consequences of this victory were near and of great importance. All that Hull had lost was now recovered.

**Events Following  
Perry's Victory.**

The British troops and their savage allies in alarm blew up their fort on the Detroit River, in Canada, and fled along the Thames River. Harrison's army, transported by Perry's fleet across the lake, overtook the fleeing foes and attacked them with great fury. Resistance was useless. The British regulars threw down their

**73.** What did the British do in consequence of their defeat? Into what water does the Thames River flow? Give an account of the battle. What is said of Tecumseh? Give the previous history of Tecumseh (§ 55).

arms and surrendered, but the Indians, two thousand in number, held out till their great leader, Tecumseh, was slain. Then they suddenly fled (October 5).\*

74. The death of this remarkable chief broke up the combination among the Indian tribes. Tecumseh had been for years a most determined foe of the United States. He had gone from tribe to tribe, even to those far away in Alabama, and incited them to war against the whites. Expeditions were sent to subdue these Southern Indians, called Creeks,



and several battles were fought, in every one of which they were routed. Not, however, till General Andrew Jackson defeated a thousand warriors, with terrible slaughter, in the battle of To-ho-pe'-ka, could the white man sit with safety at his cabin door (March,

War with  
the  
Creeks.

\* "Who killed Tecumseh?" When Richard M. Johnson, in 1836, was a candidate for Vice-President, his partisans asserted that he was the slayer of Tecumseh. His Whig opponents denied this. In the battle of the Thames, he led a body of horsemen. "The riders plunged with a yell on the British line. Their five hundred rifles cracked at once, strewing the ground with men. It was a single blow, and the battle was over in that part of the field. \* \* \* Tecumseh led his men gallantly forward, and for a few minutes the contest was sharp and bloody. At length he fell, when the savages, with a loud whoop, turned and fled."—*Headly's Second War with England*.

74. How had Tecumseh shown his enmity against the United States? Who were the Creeks? How did the Creek War begin? *Ans.* In August, 1813, fifteen hundred warriors surprised Fort Mims, and massacred nearly three hundred men, women, and children. Where was that fort (map p. 251)? Give an account of the closing event of the war

1814). Then, Tecumseh being dead, the tribes of the South as well as those of the North were ready to smoke the pipe of peace.

75. We now come to the third year of the war. Some operations against Canada, conducted in a faint-hearted manner from New York, accomplished nothing. Others, under Generals Brown and Scott, being prosecuted with skill, vigor, and courage, were among the most illustrious of the war. Brown and Scott crossed the Niagara River, their first achievement being the capture of Fort Erie. General Ri'all, commanding a

Operations  
on the  
Niagara Frontier.



force of British regulars, was on his way to the fort, when, hearing of its surrender, he halted at Chippewa, and there Scott attacked him. After a series of attacks and counter attacks the British retreated across Chippewa Creek, destroying the bridge behind them (July 5, 1814).

76. Twenty days later the British were again met, this time at Lundy's Lane, within hearing of the roar of Niagara Falls, and though they were to the Americans as three to one, Scott resolved to fight. At

75. Where was Fort Erie (map p. 252)? Chippewa? State what took place at both places. What had Brown previously done (§ 67)? Into what water does the Niagara River flow (map p. 252)?

76. Give an account of the battle of Lundy's Lane. By what other name is the battle also known? *Ans.* Bridgewater or Niagara. Where is Lundy's Lane (map p. 252)?

sundown the battle was not half over. A battery on a hill gave the British a decided advantage. If not captured, the victory would certainly be theirs. "Can you take that battery?" asked General Brown, who had recently arrived on the battle ground and taken the command. The question was put to the gallant Colonel Miller, and his prompt reply was, "I'll try, sir." With three hundred men as brave as himself, he charged up the hill, and, despite grapeshot and musketry, gained the coveted battery. Quickly the British, with fixed bayonets, advanced to regain it. They were repulsed. Again they advanced. It was a hand-to-hand contest. A second and a third time the British were repulsed. At midnight the conflict was over (July 25).

77. Brown and Scott, having been severely wounded in the battle, retired with their victorious soldiers to Fort Erie. In vain did the British try to recover the fort. It was held against siege and assault, and only abandoned when its brave defenders decided to find more comfortable quarters for the winter on their own soil.

78. While the Americans were in possession of Fort Erie, a large British force, comprising an army and a fleet, left the northern end of Lake Champlain. Its object was to capture or destroy the fleet on the lake, commanded by Captain MacDonough; and to occupy Plattsburg, situated on a bay of the lake. In this bay a desperate battle took place between the two fleets. It lasted more than two hours, and ended in a complete victory for MacDonough. While the fight on the water was in progress, the British troops tried to enter the town, but being met with spirited resistance from a force of volunteers under General

<p><b>Victory on Lake Champlain.</b></p>
--

77. Give a further account of the operations at Fort Erie.

78. What invasion took place by way of Lake Champlain? Who commanded the American fleet? How long did it take to create that fleet? *Ans.* The largest and best vessel in it, the *Saratoga*, was launched on the fortieth day after the first tree used in its frame was taken from the forest. Give an account of the battle. What is the name of Lake Champlain's outlet? Into what river does it flow?

Macomb, and seeing the fate of their fleet, they lost heart and fled in great haste (September 11).



**The Capital in  
the Hands  
of the British.**

**79.** Events in another quarter did not give the Americans so much cause for rejoicing. A British fleet ascended Chesapeake Bay, and landed an army, which, meeting with little opposition, marched to Washington (August 24). The invaders spent the thirty hours they were in possession of the city in riotous excesses. The capitol, with its valuable library, was given to the flames. The President's house and other buildings were also reduced to ashes. As if to rebuke these vandals, as they have been called, a tremendous tornado passed over the city. Thirty were buried in the ruins of falling buildings, and a hundred others were killed by a magazine explosion. Fearing an uprising of the people, the vandal army, in the gloom of night, stole out of the city.

**80.** Their next object for attack was Baltimore. Troops were landed at North Point, a few miles from the city, to co-operate with the fleet. In a skirmish, General Ross, their commander, was killed. His forces, checked for a time by the militia, succeeded in getting near the defenses of the city, where they halted to hear from their ships, which

**79.** Give an account of the enemy's doings in Washington city.

**80.** How is Baltimore located (map p. 254)? Describe how it was attacked by sea and land. What is said of the Star-Spangled Banner song?

had meanwhile been pouring shot, shell, and rockets upon Fort McHenry, the city's principal harbor defense. The firing lasted from sunrise to sunrise (September 13, 14). It was under the excitement of this bombardment that the popular song of the *Star-Spangled Banner* was composed, its author, Francis S. Key, being then detained on board the British fleet. All day long and into the night he watched the banner as it floated in triumph over the fort, and next morning his glad heart began its song. Seeing no prospect of success, the British troops embarked, and their ships sailed away.

Baltimore Saved.

81. A second object in the enemy's operations on the Atlantic coast was to divert attention from New Orleans, against which city they were fitting out a formidable expedition. With New Orleans in their possession, the whole of Louisiana and the trade of the Mississippi would be under their control.

New Orleans  
Saved.

82. General Jackson, the hero of the Creek War, had recently driven the British from the Spanish port of Pensacola, because they were allowed to use it for fitting out expeditions against the United States. He had also frustrated their attempt to capture Mobile; and now, having heard of their design against New Orleans, was laboring night and day to put that city in the best possible state of defense. After a sharp contest on Lake Borgne (*born*), below New Orleans, the British captured a flotilla of gunboats. Advancing, their army encountered the defenders of the city in three engagements. The great and final battle took place on the 8th of January, 1815. The invaders were defeated with terrible loss, their commander, General Pak'-en-ham, who had won distinction on battlefields in Europe, being among the slain (see table p. 256).

81. What is said of the design against New Orleans? Where is New Orleans (map p. 263)?

82. What had Jackson already accomplished at the South (§ 74, 82)? Give an account of his success in saving New Orleans. (Read note 42, Appendix, p. 57.)

# PRINCIPAL BATTLES OF THE SECOND WAR WITH ENGLAND.

DATES.	LAND BATTLES.	COMMANDERS.		MEN ENGAGED.	
		American.	British.	Amer'n.	British.
<b>1812.</b>					
Oct. 13.	Queenstown .....	Van Rensselaer..	Brock*.....	1,200	2,500
<b>1813.</b>					
Jan. 22.	Frenchtown .....	Winchester .....	Proctor*.....	800	1,500
April 27.	York .....	Pike*.....	Sheaffe.....	1,700	1,500
May 5.	Fort Meigs .....	Clay*.....	Proctor.....	1,200	2,000
May 20.	Sackett's Harbor .....	Brown*.....	Prevost.....	1,000	1,000
Aug. 2.	Fort Stephenson.....	Croghan*.....	Proctor.....	150	1,800
Oct. 5.	Thames .....	Harrison*.....	Proctor.....	2,500	2,000
<b>1814.</b>					
July 5.	Chippewa .....	Brown*.....	Riall.....	1,900	2,100
July 25.	Lundy's Lane.....	Brown*.....	Drummond.....	3,500	5,000
Sept. 11.	Plattsburg .....	Macomb*.....	Prevost.....	3,000	14,000
Sept. 12.	North Point.....	Stricker.....	Brooke*.....	2,000	5,000
Sept. 13.	Fort McHenry.....	Armistead*.....	Cochrane.....	1,000	16 ships.
Sept. 17.	Fort Erie (sortie).....	Brown*.....	Drummond.....	2,500	3,500
<b>1815.</b>					
Jan. 8.	New Orleans.....	Jackson*.....	Pakenham ..	6,000	12,000
	NAVAL BATTLES.	VESSELS.		COMMANDERS.	
<b>1812.</b>					
Aug. 13.	Off Newfoundland .....	Am. Frig. Essex .....	Porter.*		
		Br. Sloop Alert .....	Laugharne.		
Aug. 19.	Off Massachusetts.....	Am. Frig. Constitution .....	Hull.*		
		Br. Frig. Guerriere .....	Dacres.		
Oct. 18.	Off North Carolina.....	Am. Sloop Wasp .....	Jones.*		
		Br. Brig Frolic .....	Whinyates.		
Oct. 25.	Near Canary Islands .....	Am. Frig. United States .....	Decatur.*		
		Br. Frig. Macedonian .....	Carden.		
Dec. 29.	Off San Salvador.....	Am. Frig. Constitution .....	Bainbridge.*		
		Br. Frig. Java .....	Lambert.		
<b>1813.</b>					
Feb. 24.	Off Demarara .....	Am. Sloop Hornet.....	Lawrence.*		
		Br. Brig Peacock .....	Peake.		
June 1.	Massachusetts Bay.....	Am. Frig. Chesapeake.....	Lawrence.		
		Br. Frig. Shannon .....	Broke.*		
Aug. 14.	British Channel.....	Am. Brig Argus .....	Allen.		
		Br. Sloop Pelican .....	Maples.*		
Sept. 5.	Off coast of Maine.....	Am. Brig Enterprise .....	Burrows.*		
		Br. Brig Boxer .....	Blythe.		
Sept. 10.	Lake Erie .....	Am. 9 vessels, 54 guns .....	Perry.*		
		Br. 6 vessels, 63 guns .....	Barclay.		
<b>1814.</b>					
March 28.	Harbor of Valparaiso.....	Am. Frig. Essex .....	Porter.		
		Br. Brig Phoebe .....	Hillyar.*		
		Br. Sloop Cherub .....	Tucker.		
April 29.	Off coast of Florida.....	Am. Sloop Peacock .....	Warrington.*		
		Br. Brig Epervier .....	Wales.		
June 28.	Near British Channel....	Am. Sloop Wasp .....	Blakely.*		
		Br. Sloop Reindeer .....	Manners.		
Sept. 11.	Lake Champlain.....	Am. 14 vessels, 86 guns .....	McDonough.*		
		Br. 17 vessels, 95 guns .....	Downie.		
Sept. 27.	Fayal, Azore Islands .....	Am. Brig Gen. Armstrong .....	S. C. Reid.		
	(note 42, App., p. 57).	Br. 3 ships, 136 guns .....	Lloyd.*		
Dec. 14.	Lake Borgne.....	Am. 5 gunboats .....	Jones.		
		Br. 40 barges .....	Lockyer.*		
<b>1815.</b>					
Feb. 20.	Off Island of Madeira .....	Am. Frig. Constitution .....	Stewart.*		
		Br. Ship Cyane .....	Falcon.		
		Br. Ship Levant .....	Douglass.		
March 28.	Off Brazil.....	Am. Sloop Hornet.....	Biddle.*		
		Br. Brig Penguin.....	Dickenson.		

\* The asterisk indicates the successful party.

83. In a few days rumors of Jackson's great victory began to arrive in Washington, but, before the whole of the welcome story was known there, a fresh piece of news pushed the rumors aside. British and American commissioners had met in the ancient city of Ghent (*gent*), in Europe, and arranged a treaty of peace (December, 1814). The vessel that brought the good news was a sloop that took forty days to cross the ocean to New York. It was late of a Saturday night when the sloop came to anchor. In less than an hour the whole city was alive with rejoicings. "Thousands and tens of thousands of persons were marching with candles, lamps, and torches, making Broadway appear like a gay and gorgeous procession."

Peace.

84. The war was ended, but had we gained what we had fought for? The treaty made provision for running the boundary line between the United States on the one side and New Brunswick and Canada on the other, but nothing was said in it respecting the "impressment question." The omission was not much regretted, for it was believed that the splendid success of the American navy had disposed of that question forever (§ 58).

85. Thus far we have said nothing about the injury which certain powers, known as the Barbary States, were inflicting upon our commerce. Morocco, Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli, northern countries of Africa, were the offenders. They were in truth pirate States, for their living was gained in large part by piracy. They sent forth cruisers which scoured every part of the Mediterranean, and ventured upon the Atlantic, for the purpose of capturing vessels of other countries. The passengers and crews of the captured vessels were reduced to slavery. In-

War  
with the  
Barbary States.

83. Where is Ghent? What was done there? How was the news received?

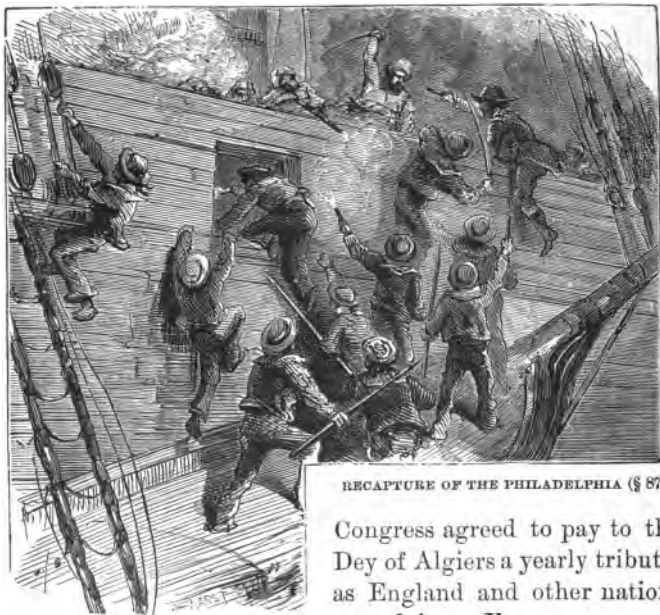
84. What did the treaty include and what omit?

85. What is said of the piratical practices of the Barbary States? Which were the Barbary States? How were they bounded? What was tribute-money?



stead of sending war ships against these lawless countries, the Christian powers of Europe were in the habit of sending bribe-money, "tribute" they called it, in order to preserve their trade-ships from seizure.

86. The United States, following the bad example set by Europe, sent presents to the African pirates. In addition,



RECAPTURE OF THE PHILADELPHIA (§ 87).

Congress agreed to pay to the Dey of Algiers a yearly tribute, as England and other nations were doing. Every year money was likewise given to the other Barbary States, but, as they did not get as much as Algiers and their demand for more was not complied with, they seized American vessels as formerly.

87. A fleet was sent from the United States to bring the sea robbers to terms. Four or five of their largest ships were captured, but, unfortunately, the American frigate Philadel-

---

86. What was done by our government to avert war with the Barbary States?

87. Describe the loss, recapture, and fate of the frigate Philadelphia.

phia, while blockading the harbor of Tripoli, ran upon a sunken rock, and, after a hard fight, fell into the hands of the Tripolitans. The next high tide floated her off, and gave to the pirates a fine addition to their fleet. As it did not seem possible to recapture the frigate, an attempt to destroy her was decided upon. The capture of a small Tripolitan vessel favored the project. In this prize, Stephen Decatur, a young lieutenant, with a volunteer party of eighty men, entered the harbor at night, and made fast to the frigate's side. All his men, except two or three, were lying flat upon the deck. Suddenly they arose, boarded the frigate, and in less than ten minutes killed or drove into the sea every one of the piratical crew. Setting her on fire, by the light of the blaze they escaped from the harbor without losing a man (February, 1804).

88. Jefferson was then President. The war was carried on till a treaty was made with the Dey of Algiers (1805). During the next seven years the Barbary States behaved better ; but when the war between England and the United States broke out they believed that the navy of the latter would be crushed by its powerful antagonist, and American merchantmen thus be left without protection. So believing, they lost no opportunity to seize our trading ships. Algiers, indeed, went so far as to make a formal declaration of war against the United States.

89. Our war with England being ended, Decatur, now commodore, was sent against our African enemies (1815). He captured two of their largest ships, and appearing before Algiers with his formidable fleet, compelled the terrified Dey to surrender all the American prisoners in his hands, to promise that he would not capture any more Americans, to pay for the vessels he had seized in violation of his treaty agreement, and to give up all future claim to tribute of every

---

88. When was a treaty made ? What produced a renewal of hostile acts ?

89. Give an account of Decatur's final successes.

kind from the United States (June 30). Proceeding to Tunis and Tripoli, Decatur brought both powers to satisfactory terms. The Barbary States made no more captures of American vessels.

90. Madison's second term of office was near its close.

Election  
of  
Monroe.

Declining to be a candidate for a third, thus following the example of Washington and Jefferson, he was succeeded by James Monroe, also a Republican and a Virginian. In December of the election year (1816), Indiana became a State of the Union. Thus far

Indiana.

two States, Ohio and Indiana, had been taken from the Northwest Territory (see maps 3 and 4). In neither, so said the Ordinance of 1787, could slavery exist (§ 11). (Note 16, Appendix, p. 47.)

#### MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION.

91. For sixteen years the strife between the two great political parties had been angry. Now all was changed.

Era of  
Good Feeling.

"Hot-tempered leaders, who had hardly deigned to speak to each other, or even to walk on the same side of the street, now met with smiling faces. The era of good feeling had begun." Monroe had received all the electoral votes, except those of three States. His election, for a second term, four years later, was still more indicative of "the era of good feeling." The choice would have been unanimous, if one elector had not voted for John Quincy Adams. The Federal party was no more. The war with England, with its attending circumstances and results, had swept away all party lines. Monroe's first term commenced on the 4th of March, 1817.

92. An Indian war made the first break into the com-

90. Who succeeded Madison as President? What is said of Indiana? Of Ohio? Of slavery in the two States? Name the principal land battles of the late war with England, their commanders and results (table p. 256). Same of the naval battles.

91. What is said of the era of good feeling? When did Monroe's term begin?

92. Who were the Seminoles? Of what were they guilty?

placency of the people. Florida then belonged to Spain. The larger part of its inhabitants were Indians, known as the Seminoles, meaning the runaways, a name given to them by the Creeks, from whom they had separated several years before (§ 74). They possessed not only horses and cattle, but numerous slaves. To increase their possessions they invaded Georgia, returning to their homes with scalps as well as with plunder.

War with  
the Seminoles.

93. The first measures against them not proving successful, General Jackson, with four thousand men, many of whom were Creeks, began what he afterward aptly called "a war of movements." He entered Florida, drove the Seminoles from place to place, and captured the Spanish forts in which they were finding protection. Two British traders, who had supplied them with guns, powder, and shot, and had incited them to hostilities, were arrested, and executed.



JAMES MONROE.

94. This invasion of a province of Spain, while we were at peace with that nation, was resented by the Spanish government in very strong language. The letters that passed between the two governments, at first warlike, then pacific, led to a treaty by which Spain agreed to sell the whole of Florida for five million dol-

Purchase  
of  
Florida.

93. Give an account of Jackson's operations in Florida. Where were the Spanish forts? *Ans.* At St. Mark's and Pensacola (map 4).

94. What treaty was made with Spain? Why was the treaty particularly valuable? In what three ways had we already won a title to that region (§ 16, 41, 42)? What is said of Black Hawk (note p. 262)? Osceola? (Read note 4, Appendix, p. 42.)

lars (1819). One clause of the treaty was worth more to the purchaser than ten times the five millions. It gave to the United States all the rights and claims of Spain to the territory west of the Louisiana Purchase, north of the forty-second parallel of latitude (map 8), thus completing our title to the domain west of the Rocky Mountains, of which the State of Oregon is now a part (§ 42). The king of Spain was slow to ratify the treaty, but he put his name and seal to it at last; and, just two years from its date, President Monroe announced that Florida belonged to the United States.\*

95. The President made another announcement, one that was intended to be heard on the other side of the Atlantic. In a message to Congress, he asserted that "as a principle, the American continents are henceforth not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European power" (1823). This declaration has become famous as the Monroe Doctrine. It was a notification to the nations of the old world that the governments of the new world were fully competent to take care of themselves. (Read note 22, Appendix, p. 49.)

96. The territory of Mississippi and Alabama, before its division into the two States, was called the Mississippi Territory.

\* Five years earlier the Sac and Fox tribe of Indians, in the Northwest, sold their land along the Mississippi to the United States; but, in 1832, made an attempt, by massacring the white settlers, to possess it again (map 1). Their chief, Black Hawk, was captured, and a treaty was made which ended the war. Two years later the Seminoles renewed their hostilities. They refused to go to lands west of the Mississippi, as had been agreed by treaty with some of their chiefs. Their principal warrior, Osceola, who would not sign the treaty, did not consider it bound the tribe. Using threatening language, he was put in irons, but, promising submission, was set free. In revenge, he attacked the whites and several battles were fought. Appearing in the American camp with a flag of truce, he was seized, and confined in Fort Moultrie till his death. The Indians were defeated by Colonel Taylor (afterward President) in the most desperate battle of the war, O-kee-cho'-bee, Dec. 25, 1837, but, though they continued hostile till 1842, they never again rallied in large force.

95. Repeat what is said in relation to the Monroe Doctrine.

96. What is said of Mississippi, Alabama, and Illinois?

the whole was not settled  
the part, from the north-  
westward by

the State

The State

1840 gave us a clear view  
the territory was settled by  
State in 1847, as did the



the States. Between  
or the Ordinance of

the debates in Congress  
It began over a po

the (1840-1841) State

lars (1819). One clause of the treaty was worth more to the purchaser than ten times the five millions. It gave to the United States all the rights and claims of Spain to the territory west of the Louisiana Purchase, north of the forty-second parallel of latitude (map 8), thus completing our title to the domain west of the Rocky Mountains, of which the State of Oregon is now a part (§ 42). The king of Spain was slow to ratify the treaty, but he put his name and seal to it at last; and, just two years from its date, President Monroe announced that Florida belonged to the United States.\*

95. The President made another announcement, one that was intended to be heard on the other side of the Atlantic.

The  
Monroe Doctrine.

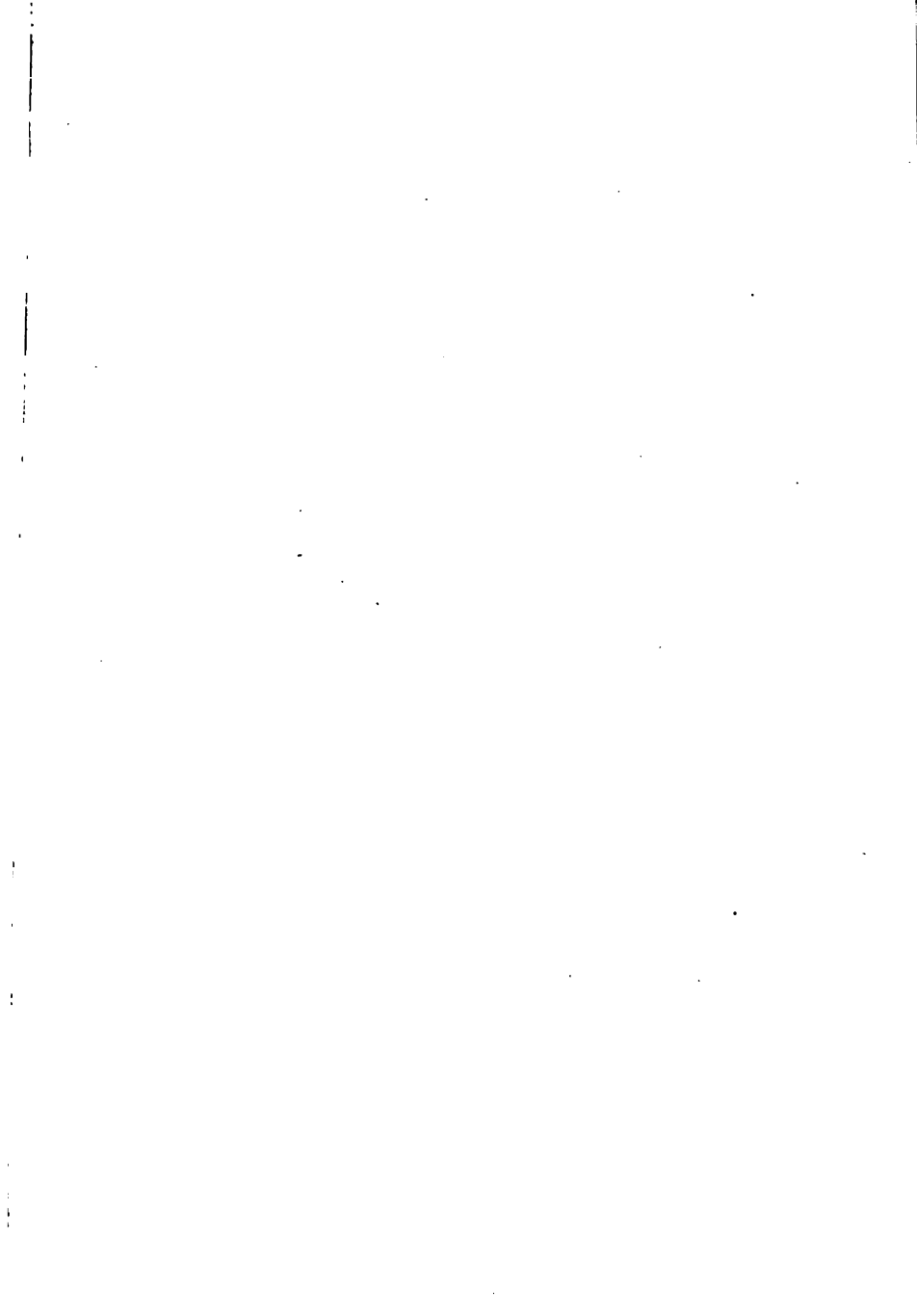
In a message to Congress, he asserted that "as a principle, the American continents are henceforth not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European power" (1823). This declaration has become famous as the Monroe Doctrine. It was a notification to the nations of the old world that the governments of the new world were fully competent to take care of themselves. (Read note 22, Appendix, p. 49.)

96. The territory of Mississippi and Alabama, before its division into the two States, was called the Mississippi Terri-

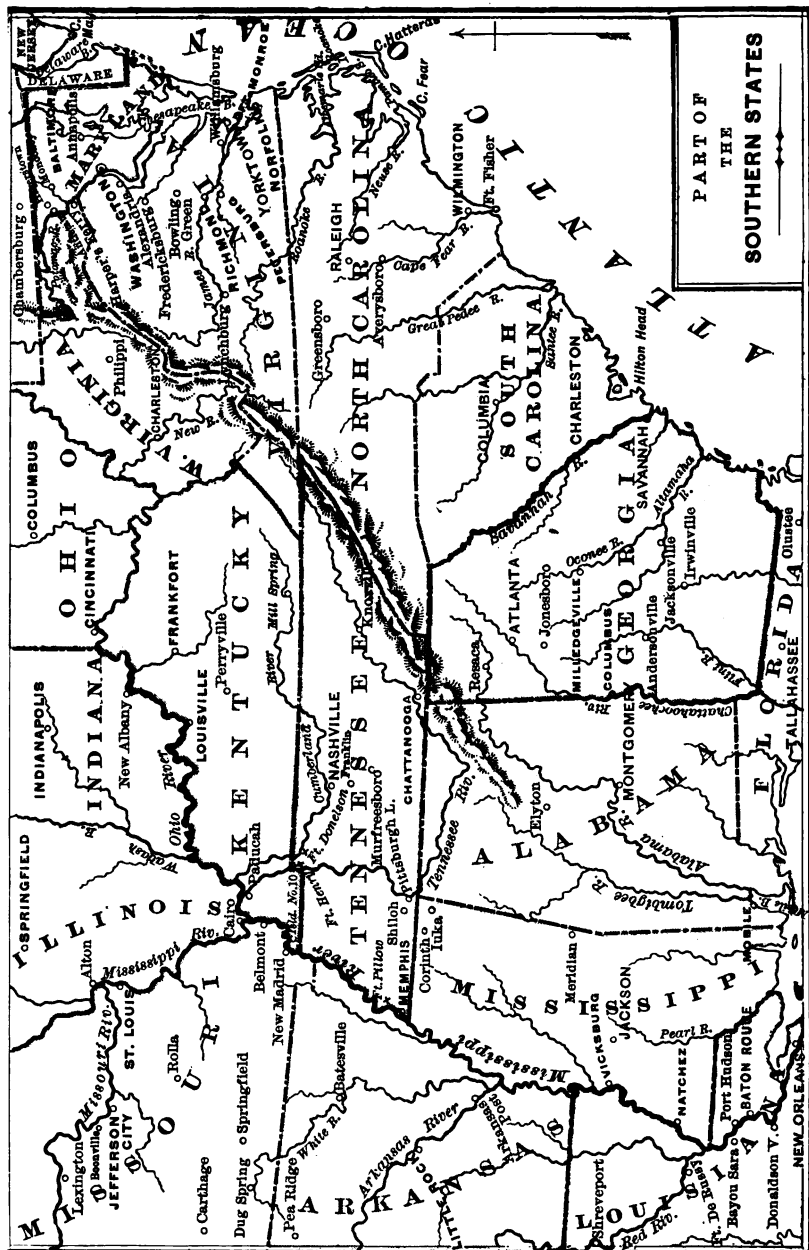
\* Five years earlier the Sac and Fox tribe of Indians, in the Northwest, sold their land along the Mississippi to the United States; but, in 1832, made an attempt, by massacring the white settlers, to possess it again (map 1). Their chief, Black Hawk, was captured, and a treaty was made which ended the war. Two years later the Seminoles renewed their hostilities. They refused to go to lands west of the Mississippi, as had been agreed by treaty with some of their chiefs. Their principal warrior, Osceola, who would not sign the treaty, did not consider it bound the tribe. Using threatening language, he was put in irons, but, promising submission, was set free. In revenge, he attacked the whites and several battles were fought. Appearing in the American camp with a flag of truce, he was seized, and confined in Fort Moultrie till his death. The Indians were defeated by Colonel Taylor (afterward President) in the most desperate battle of the war, O-kee-cho'-bee, Dec. 25, 1837, but, though they continued hostile till 1842, they never again rallied in large force.

95. Repeat what is said in relation to the Monroe Doctrine.

96. What is said of Mississippi, Alabama, and Illinois?



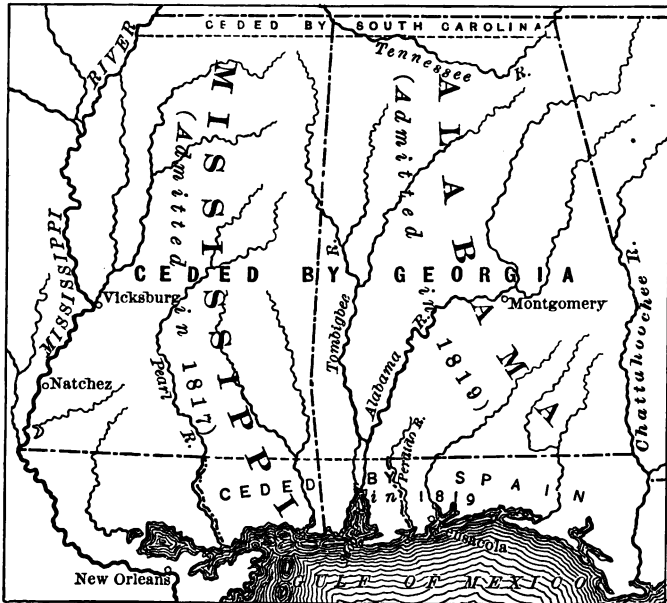




PART OF  
THE  
SOUTHERN STATES

tory. Its upper part, a strip twelve miles wide, was ceded by South Carolina (§ 11). Its lower part, from the thirty-first parallel to the Gulf of Mexico, was claimed by the United States as a part of the Louisiana Purchase (§ 40). Spain's cession in 1819 gave us a clear title to it (§ 94). All the rest of the territory was ceded by Georgia. Mississippi became a State in 1817, as did Ala-

### New States.



bama two years later. Both were slave States. Between these, in 1818, came Illinois, which, by the Ordinance of 1787, was a free State (§ 11).

97. Meanwhile the first of the great debates in Congress touching slavery was well under way. It began over a pe-

97. What requests came from Maine? What two objections were made? State the facts in relation to the Mason and Dixon Line (note).

to the House of Representatives (Appendix, page 20); and John Quincy Adams, of Massachusetts, eldest son of the nation's second President, was chosen. His term commenced on the 4th of March, 1825, as did that of John C. Calhoun, the Vice-President.

101. We may be certain that it gave the father much pleasure to see his son occupying, as he had done himself, the highest position in the nation's gift. But it was not his privilege to enjoy this satisfaction many months. On the 4th of July, 1826, John Adams died, and on that very day, the fiftieth anniversary of American independence, the venerable Thomas Jefferson, the



JOHN QUINCY ADAMS.

Father of the Declaration, also died. What a wonderful coincidence! The one had written the Declaration, the other, by argument and eloquence, had done more than any other man to secure its adoption (p. 161). Each had since been Vice-President and President, and now, full of honors, they departed together just as the nation had reached its half-century of growth.

102. As yet there is not a railroad in the United States, if we except a rude affair, two miles long, built to convey blocks of granite from the quarries of Quincy, Massachusetts, to tide-water. Its cars were drawn by horses. A few steamboats were on the rivers and lakes (§ 49).

Death  
in  
High Places.

First Railroad.

101. What is said of the death of two ex-Presidents? Has the death of any other ex-President occurred on our national anniversary? *Ans.* Monroe died on the 4th of July, 1831.

102. What is said of our first railroad? Of our first ocean steamship?

One, built at New York and named the Savannah, had been to Europe, and was thus the first steamship that crossed the Atlantic (1819). As she approached the coast of Ireland the people on shore thought she was on fire, and a king's cutter was sent to her relief. She carried sails, just as did the first English steamers that entered the port of New York about twenty years afterward ; and these sails she set when the wind was fair, just as every ocean steamer has done from that day to this.

First Ocean  
Steamboat.

103. Of canals, there are only three or four in use, the largest, in fact the longest in the world, being the Erie Canal, just opened for traffic (1825). It is three hundred and sixty-three miles long, extending across the State of New York from the Hudson River at Albany to Lake Erie ; and is one of the means for making the city of New York the greatest commercial city on the continent. To the untiring efforts of the State's enterprising governor, De Witt Clinton, was its construction principally due.

Internal  
Improvements.

104. This Erie Canal was built by the State of New York, and is one of the numerous works that come under the name of "internal improvements." Though many persons in the early history of our country, believed that the right of the general government to make such improvements was confined to very narrow limits, Congress, with the hearty approval of President Adams, the younger, directed a number to be made. Millions of dollars were spent to better the means of getting from one part of the country to another. A road, for the use of Western emigrants, was built during Monroe's administration from Cumberland, Maryland, to Ohio.

105. All through Adams's administration there was a deal of ill-feeling among the men who had voted against him.

---

103. What is said of the Erie Canal ? Of De Witt Clinton ?

104. Repeat what is said of internal improvements.

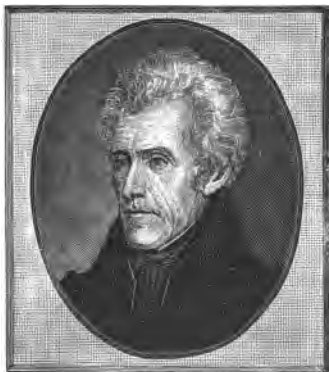
105. What is said of the formation of political parties ? Of Jackson's election ?

They thought that his election had been brought about unfairly, and that the people preferred Jackson. This, with other causes, led to the formation of two parties, the friends of Jackson being called Democrats, those of Adams were known as National Republicans or Whigs. A most animated canvass followed, ending in the success of the Democrats. Jackson entered upon his administration on the 4th of March, 1829, Calhoun, for a second term, being in the Vice-President's chair.

**Eleventh  
National Elec-  
tion.**

#### ADMINISTRATIONS OF JACKSON AND VAN BUREN.

**106.** There was nothing timid or halting in Jackson's way of doing business. He acted promptly and with vigor. Believing, as was expressed in after years, that "to the victors belong the spoils," he turned out of office the men who had not voted for him and put in his friends. In two years he made as many removals as his six predecessors had made in forty. Thus began the custom called "rotation in office."



ANDREW JACKSON.

**107.** Jackson took a bold stand against the United States Bank (§ 8). He said that it had too much influence upon the affairs of the country, and was getting more powerful and dangerous every year. Congress voted to renew its charter, but he vetoed the bill. Instead of depositing the money belonging to the government

**106.** What is said of rotation in office, its beginning and evil? Has anything ever been done to check the evil? *Ans.* A reform was begun in 1883, when Congress passed an act giving the President power to appoint Civil Service Examiners, and to make appointments on their recommendation.

**107.** Give an account of Jackson's war against the United States Bank.

in its vault, as had been the custom, he sent it to certain of the State banks, which, because they were thus favored, came to be called Pet Banks. These institutions, being now in possession of large amounts of gold and silver coin, freely lent the money to merchants and others.

108. So much money in circulation had the effect of making everything dear. A wild spirit of speculation followed. Men, striving to become rich suddenly, undertook to build new cities in a few months. They bought farms and laid them out into building lots, which, in the frenzy that prevailed, were sold at fabulous prices. The purchasers themselves, in most cases, were speculators. They did not intend to build. They bought, expecting to sell at higher prices, giving their notes, instead of cash, in payment. Do we not foresee the end? It did not come at once, but when it did come it was with a mighty crash (§ 114).

Wild  
Speculation.

109. Congress had more than once altered the tariff, that is, had changed the duty on imports. The duty on articles formerly taxed was not only increased; other articles were brought under the tariff. This was done to increase the revenue (§ 6). A secondary object was to encourage the manufacturing industries of the country, hence the law with that intent came to be known as a protective tariff. The South, in early times, favored such a tariff; the North did not. The cotton of the South was sent to the North, and thence transported to England to be manufactured. The South began to manufacture its own cotton. A new vision unfolded itself to the men of New England. Said they: "If the South can prosper by running factories, why cannot the North?" Cotton-mills were accordingly started in New England, and they flourished. Then the North and the South exchanged convictions. The North favored the

The Tariff.

---

108. What is said of the wild speculation during his administration?

109. What is said of the tariff, and discussion and changes in relation thereto?

protective principle in the tariff; the South did not. The Southern planters sent cotton and tobacco to Europe, and, in return, received cotton fabrics, harness for their horses and mules, and other things on which a heavy duty was paid. They wanted the duty to be reduced. The Northern manufacturers objected, saying that "if that were done their business would be ruined, for the imported goods could be sold at a less price than they could afford to sell their own goods."

110. Then



was brought forth the doctrine of State Rights, or State Sovereignty. It was no new doctrine (§ 32); but now it had for its advocates two of the

South's most able statesmen, Robert

State Rights.

Y. Hayne and John C. Calhoun, both of South Carolina. They asserted that the "United States were a confederacy, its parts being held together by a treaty or league." From this it was argued that "a State had

the right to disobey any act of Congress which, in its opin-

JOHN C. CALHOUN.

HENRY CLAY.

DANIEL WEBSTER.

ion, was oppressive, and so, by the disobedience, to annul it." Hence, those who so believed were called Nullifiers.

111. The doctrine, we see, did not stop here. It meant that a State had the right to leave the Union. Hayne made several speeches in Congress, to which Daniel Webster replied with so much ability as to win for himself the title of Expounder of the Constitution (1830). His words, "Liberty and Union, now and forever, one and inseparable," were often repeated by those who were opposed to the doctrine of State Rights. Hayne left the United States Senate to be governor of South Carolina, and Calhoun, resigning the vice-presidency, was elected to fill the vacant place in the Senate. A convention of delegates, elected by the people of South Carolina, declared the tariff law to be null and void, and resolved that if any attempts were made within the limits of the State to collect the duty under it, the State would secede from the Union.

112. President Jackson was prompt to act. Said he: "Nullification is treason. The Union must be preserved." He issued a proclamation against the Nullifiers, in which argument, advice, and warning were wisely blended (December, 1832). He sent General Scott to Charleston, and ordered war ships to be stationed before the city. It was feared that the next movement would be the beginning of a civil war. Meanwhile Henry Clay, in Congress, was trying to effect a compromise. Calhoun accepted Clay's offer, the tariff was modified, and there was no war.

113. The next President, Martin Van Buren, of New York, had been in public life since his eighteenth year. During Jackson's second term he was Vice-President. Both

---

110. What was the doctrine of State Rights? Who were Nullifiers?

111. What is said of Hayne? Calhoun? Webster? What stand was taken by South Carolina? What reasons were given for so doing?

112. Give an account of President Jackson's course. How was the trouble averted? Where did we meet Scott before (§ 75)?

113. Who was the next President? What is said of him?



men were of the same political faith, and between them a warm friendship existed. It was said of Van Buren, as



MARTIN VAN BUREN.

President, that "he trod in the footsteps of his illustrious predecessor."

114. The new administration had hardly begun, March 4, 1837, when the financial crash came of which we have spoken (§ 108). Wild speculation and overtrading did it. To satisfy the demands of creditors, property of every kind was sold as fast as possible. Merchandise, stocks, houses, and lands were disposed of for whatever they

would bring. Thousands of men, who, a short time before, thought they were rich, now found themselves without a cent. The banks, having lent so much coin, were unable to redeem their notes in gold or silver as promised; nor were they able to meet other obligations. In consequence, the government became embarrassed, and Congress had to provide for the safe-keeping of its money in sub-treasuries. It was Van Buren's boast that, at the end of his administration, March 4, 1841, the country did not have a national debt nor a national bank.

**Financial  
Distress.**

#### ADMINISTRATIONS OF HARRISON AND TYLER.

115. The election of William Henry Harrison, of Ohio, to the presidency, was a triumph of the Whigs. He owed

114. Give an account of the events during Van Buren's administration.

115. Who succeeded Van Buren as President? Where did we meet Harrison before (§ 55)? When did his administration begin and end? State what you can of him and his death. When and by whom was he succeeded in the presidential chair?

his election, in large part, to his military reputation. Like Jackson, he had fought the Indians and the British, and was a hero (§ 73). He entered the White House on the 4th of March, 1841, but was permitted to occupy it only one month. Sickness, the result of worry and fatigue, and of a change in his habits, prostrated him. Office-holders beset him. He did not like to see men dismissed from office, and in the delirium of his last hours he would cry out: "My dear madam, I did not know

General  
Harrison.



WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON.

JOHN TYLER.

that your husband was turned out. It is wrong. I will not consent." Death came to his relief, April 4th, and the Vice-President, John Tyler, then became President.

116. Though Tyler owed his position to the Whigs, he was soon out of favor with them. They wanted to establish a national bank, but he vetoed two bills passed by Congress for that purpose. All the members of his cabinet resigned, except Daniel Webster, who remained only long enough to bring to an end, by treaty, a

Tyler  
as  
President.

116. How did Tyler disappoint the Whigs? What is said of the treaty with England? Where have we met Webster before (§ 111)?

long and angry dispute with England (1842). By this treaty the northern boundary line of the United States, from Maine to the Rocky Mountains, was agreed upon.\* (N. 27, Ap., p. 51.)

117. Two States had joined the Union since the admission of Missouri. The first, Arkansas, a slave State, admitted in 1836 (map 6), was formed from the Louisiana Purchase (§ 40). The other, Michigan, a free State (map 4), following the next year, was the fourth piece from the Northwest Territory (§ 11). Now came a request from Texas for admission to the Union.

118. Texas was once a part of Mexico, and Mexico belonged to Spain. A revolt took place, and Mexico became independent (1822). Settlers from the Southern part of the United States flocked to Texas, the most noted among them being General Houston (*hū'-stun*). A large number, being slaveholders, took their slaves with them. Hence Texas, which, as a part of Mexico, did not contain a single slave, soon came to have many. Presently the people of Texas set up a government of their own (1835). After hard fighting their success was assured, though Mexico, without continuing the contest, still refused to give up its claim to the territory. (Read note 43, Appendix, p. 57.)

119. The question was now presented to the United

---

\* During this year (1842) a forcible attempt, known as the *Dorr Rebellion*, was made in Rhode Island to do away with the charter form of government granted by Charles II., in 1663, which had been the foundation law of the State the greater part of two centuries; and in its place to adopt a form of government which would extend the voting rights to a larger number of the people. Though the attempt failed, and its leader, Thomas W. *Dorr*, was kept in prison a long time, it hastened the adoption of the Constitution under which the State is now governed.

---

117. What is said of Arkansas? Of Michigan? Of Texas?

118. Give the previous history of Texas.

119. What question came up? Who favored it, and why? Who opposed it, and why? What other objection was made? *Ans.* It was believed that the annexation of Texas to the United States would lead to a war with Mexico. How stood the great body of the people at the North? Who were Abolitionists?

States : Should Texas be annexed to the Union ? The people of the South, desiring to strengthen the slave power in Congress, said yes. The people of the North, looking upon slavery as an evil, said no. Calhoun, arguing in favor of annexation, declared slavery to be "a positive good." William Lloyd Garrison, editing an "abolition paper" in Boston, called it "a sin and a curse." Garrison and those like him, in favor of giving freedom to all the slaves, thus abolishing slavery, were called Abolitionists. The great majority of the northern people, however, were not Abolitionists. They believed that they had no right to interfere with slavery in the States where it existed. So believing, they said : "We are willing to let slavery be where it is, but we do not want any more slave territory" (§ 129). (N. 24, Ap., p. 50.)

120. On this issue the next canvass for President was mainly carried on. "Fifty-four forty or fight," was also a watchword of the Democrats, who asserted that our title to the Pacific region as far north as the latitude of  $54^{\circ} 40'$  was superior to England's. The Democrats, favoring the annexation of Texas, nominated James K. Polk, of Tennessee. Of his Whig opponent, Henry Clay, it was said that "he was not pro-slavery enough for the South nor anti-slavery enough for the North." The Abolitionists had a candidate for whom they cast sixty thousand votes. Polk was elected, and began his administration on the 4th of March, 1845. By resolution of Congress, Texas, "The Lone Star State," was added to the Union before the close of this year (December 29), about ten months after the admission of Florida (March 3).

#### POLK'S ADMINISTRATION.

121. The Rio Grande and the Nueces (*nvā-seez*) are two rivers that flow into the Gulf of Mexico, the former being

120. What two questions entered into the presidential canvass ? Who were the candidates ? What is said of the election ? Admission of Texas and Florida ?

121. Describe the Rio Grande (map p. 277). The Nueces. What territory was in dispute ? Explain the dispute. Describe the two battles that took place in May, 1846.

the more southern. The Texans asserted that the boundary between their territory and Mexico was the Rio Grande.

**War  
with Mexico.**

The Mexicans said it was the Nueces. General Taylor, in command of an army of four thousand men, sent by President Polk to protect Texas against invasion from Mexico, advanced, by orders of the President, across the disputed territory to the Rio Grande. This brought on war. The first attack was made by the



JAMES K. POLK.

Mexicans upon a party of Taylor's dragoons (April 26, 1846). Congress then voted that "war existed by the act of the republic of Mexico" (May 13). Meanwhile, in two battles on the disputed ground, one at Palo Alto (*pah'-lo ahl'-to*), the other at Resaca de la Palma (*ra-sah'-kah da lah pahl'-mah*), the Mexicans were defeated (May 8th and 9th, 1846).

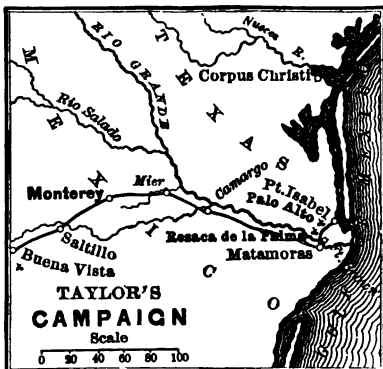
122. The news from the seat of war produced great excitement in all parts of the United States. It was feared that Taylor's little army would be overwhelmed. Volunteers

**Taylor's  
Campaign.**

were quickly sent to him. Crossing the Rio Grande with his increased force, Taylor took possession of Matamoras, and thence advanced along the river's bank, and westward to the fortified city of Monterey (*mon-tā-ray'*). A siege and a series of attacks ended in the capture of that city (September 24, 1846).

122. How is Matamoras situated (map p. 277)? Monterey? State what took place at both places. What officer, afterward greatly distinguished, fought in the three battles already mentioned? *Ans.* General U. S. Grant. In what other battles did he fight? *Ans.* In every one of Scott's Mexican battles.

**123.** Here, while resting, Taylor received an order from General Scott, his superior in command, which deprived him of many of his best troops. In the full expectation of crushing Taylor's army, in its weakened condition, Santa Anna, the President of the Mexican republic, marched against it. At Buena Vista (*bwā'-na vees'-ta*), a mountain pass to which the little army had advanced, the two forces met. Santa Anna summoned his adversary to surrender. The reply was: "General Taylor never surrenders." The battle that followed was long and desperate. Disappointed and vexed, the Mexicans gave up the contest, and escaped further defeat by making a night retreat (February 23, 1847).



**124.** Meanwhile the Americans were winning success in other parts of the Mexican domain. General Kearny, leading an expedition across the wilderness from Missouri to Santa Fé, nearly a thousand miles, took possession of New Mexico (map 6). Leaving a force to keep possession of the country, he set out to repeat his success in California, then a part of Mexico, but John C. Fremont, "The Pathfinder of the Rocky Mountains," was ahead of him.

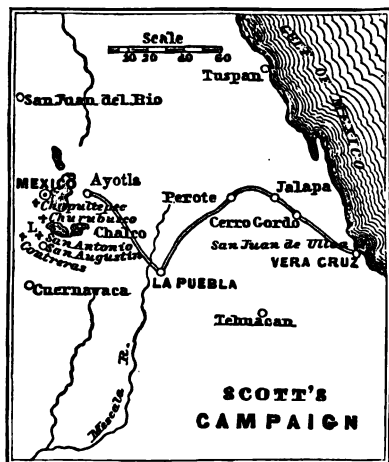
**125.** Before the breaking out of the war Fremont was sent to make western explorations. At length, needing sup-

**123.** In what direction is Monterrey from Buena Vista? Give an account of the battle of Buena Vista.

**124.** Give an account of Kearny's success. Where is Santa Fé (map 6)? What knowledge of Santa Fé have you previously gained (p. 47)?

plies, he made his way into California. The war was then in progress, but he did not know it. The days for sending messages along telegraph wires had only just begun. In a short time he received news of the hostilities, and, at the same time, orders from Washington. He was directed to protect the interests of the United States in California, there being reason to believe, so

California  
Taken.



it was asserted, that England, taking advantage of the war, would try to get possession of that country. Orders, like those sent to Fremont, were also sent to the commanders of war ships on the Pacific coast. Many of the American settlers in California determining to set up a new government, Fremont took sides with them (June, 1846). Meanwhile the war ships were

not idle, and soon California was in full possession of the Americans (Aug., 1846). (Read page preceding Appendix.)

126. It has been asserted that the reason Santa Anna did not spend more time fighting Taylor was because of reports that reached him about a great expedition under Scott. This expedition, it was reported, was on its way to capture Vera Cruz, and thence march against the City of Mexico. Thinking that less was to be

Scott's  
Campaign.

125. What is said of Fremont and his doings? What was accomplished on the Pacific coast?

126. Give an account of the capture of Vera Cruz. Battle of Cerro Gordo. How are those two places located? Where did we meet Scott before (pp. 252, 271)?

feared from the little army of Taylor than the big one of Scott, Santa Anna turned his efforts to oppose the latter. The fleet conveying Scott's army arrived near Vera Cruz, the troops were landed, and, after a bombardment from ships and land batteries lasting several days, the city was compelled to surrender (March, 1847). The march to the Mexican capital was not easy. Santa Anna was a wily foe, and his army was large. At the mountain pass of Cerro Gordo the Mexicans were strongly intrenched. The Americans cut a road around and up the mountains, and then made a daring assault. The Mexicans fled, and in so much of a hurry that Santa Anna, to escape capture, was obliged to leave his wooden leg behind (April 18).

127. The next day Scott entered the town of Jalapa (*hah-lah'-pah*). Advancing, he occupied the ancient city of

PRINCIPAL BATTLES OF THE WAR WITH MEXICO.—THE AMERICANS WERE SUCCESSFUL IN EACH.

DATES.	BATTLES.	COMMANDERS.		FORCES ENGAGED.	
		American.	Mexican.	Amer.	Mex.
1846.					
May 8,	1. Palo Alto (map) ....	Taylor .....	Arista .....	2,300	6,000
May 9,	2. Resaca de la Palma.	Taylor .....	Arista .....	2,200	5,000
Sept. 24,	3. Monterey ...	Taylor .....	Ampudia .....	6,600	10,000
Dec. 25,	4. Bracito .....	Doniphan..	De Leon..	500	1,200
1847.					
Feb. 23,	5. Buena Vista .....	Taylor .....	Santa Anna .....	4,700	17,000
Feb. 28,	6. Sacramento .....	Doniphan..	Trias .....	900	4,000
March 27,	7. Vera Cruz .....	Scott .....	Morales .....	12,000	6,000
April 18,	8. Cerro Gordo .....	Scott .....	Santa Anna .....	8,500	12,000
Aug. 20,	9. Contreras .....	Scott .....	Valencia .....	4,000	7,000
	10. Churubusco .....	Scott .....	Santa Anna .....	8,000	25,000
Sept. 8,	11. Molino del Rey .....	Scott .....	Alvarez .....	3,500	14,000
Sept. 13,	12. Chapultepec .....	Scott .....	Bravo .....	7,200	25,000
Oct. 9,	13. Huamantla .....	Lane .....	Santa Anna .....	500	1,000

4, 6. General Kearny, marching from Missouri, took possession of New Mexico; and a division of his army under Colonel Doniphan, continuing the march, defeated the enemy at Bracito and Sacramento. 9-12 were positions fortified by the Mexicans for the protection of the City of Mexico (map p. 278). General Worth distinguished himself while in command of the attack upon the Molino del Rey. 13. General Lane, on his march with recruits for Scott, was attacked by Santa Anna, after the latter's flight from the City of Mexico.

127. Give an account of Scott's further march and success. In what direction from Vera Cruz is the City of Mexico (map p. 278) ?



Puebla (*pwā'-blah*), where, waiting for more troops, he remained three months. Resuming the march, toward the middle of August he caught sight of the capital, the city that Cortes had captured more than three centuries and a quarter before (p. 30). The approaches to it were guarded by powerful batteries on rocky hills; but these were captured, one after another, after a month of severe fighting; and on the 14th of September the victorious army entered the city.

**128.** There was not much fighting after this. A treaty was agreed to by which the Rio Grande was made a boundary line between the two countries, and a vast territory between Texas and the Pacific, including the present State of California, was surrendered to the United States (map 8). The treaty was signed by agents of the two governments in the little town of Guadalupe Hidalgo (*gwah-dah-loo'-pa he-dahl'-go*), about four miles from the City of Mexico (February, 1848). In return for this territory the United States paid Mexico fifteen million dollars; and, in addition, assumed the debts due from Mexico to American citizens, amounting to about three million dollars.

Treaty  
with  
Mexico.

**129.** David Wilmot, a member of Congress from Pennsylvania, did not like the treaty. There were no slaves in the territory acquired from Mexico, and he had hoped that the treaty would declare that there never should be any. It did not. Two years before President Polk asked for money to enable him to negotiate a peace with Mexico. To a bill in Congress in favor of the request, Wilmot offered a proviso, the object of which was to exclude slavery from the territory forever. The bill, with the proviso, was passed in one branch of Congress, but not in the other (1846). That, however, did not end the mission of this Wilmot Proviso. Wilmot's effort helped to bring into existence the

Wilmot  
Proviso.

**128.** What treaty closed the war? What territory did we gain, and how much did we pay for it?

**129.** Repeat all that is stated of the Wilmot Proviso.

Free Soil Party, whose motto was "Free Soil, Free Speech, Free Labor, and Free Men" (§ 134).

130. The close of Polk's administration saw thirty States in the Union, Iowa (map 6), taken from the Louisiana Purchase, having been admitted in 1846 (§ 40), and Wisconsin (map 4), taken from the Northwest Territory, in 1848 (§ 11). It also saw the locomotive, the iron horse, running on six thousand miles of roads, and telegraph wires stretched in many directions. Who thought out the first plan by which messages could be sent by electricity along a wire is not known. We have records of successful experiments made by Professor Henry and others, but the invention of Professor Morse, an American, was certainly the first of any practical importance. His telegraph between Washington and Baltimore, a distance of forty miles, was first put to use in 1844. The idea of having telegraphic communication with Europe by means of a cable stretched across the Atlantic was conceived by Cyrus W. Field, a New York merchant. After two failures a cable was laid upon the bed of the ocean from Europe to America, but it worked only a few weeks (1858). The project, however, was kept alive by Field, whose faith was of the kind which removes mountains and abolishes oceans. In 1866 his untiring efforts were crowned with perfect success.\* (Note 44, Appendix, p. 58.)

Railroads  
and  
Telegraphs.



PROF. S. F. B. MORSE.

\* The telephone is a more recent invention. The first was made in Germany, but only musical, not articulate, sounds could be sent by it. The telephones now in common use throughout the world are American inventions, for which we are indebted to A. G. Bell, Elisha Gray, T. A. Edison, and others. In 1888 the U. S. Supreme Court decided that Bell's was the earliest.

## ADMINISTRATIONS OF TAYLOR AND FILLMORE.

131. Two distinguished Whigs, Clay and Webster, had been a long time, and were still, the idols of their party. It was thought, however, by the party managers, that the chances of the party's success in the next presidential elec-



ZACHARY TAYLOR.

MILLARD FILLMORE.

tion would be best with Zachary Taylor as their standard bearer. Taylor had won bright laurels in the war with Mexico and was very popular with his soldiers, who loved to call him "Rough and Ready." He was also popular with the people in every part of the country. The nomination was accordingly made, and he was elected. On the 5th of March, 1849, the 4th being Sunday, he was inaugurated.

132. At this time a wonderful excitement was spreading to all parts of the world. Gold had been discovered in the valley of the Sacramento, California. While building a mill, James W. Marshall, an American, noticed that the sand contained shining particles (1848).

The Gold  
Excitement.

131. What is said of General Taylor and his election to the presidency? Give Taylor's previous history (pp. 262, 276, 277).

132. How was the gold excitement started? Give an account of the rush to the gold region. What is said of San Francisco? How is San Francisco located (map 6)?

They were gold. "Gold was everywhere—in the soil, in the river sand, in the mountain rock." As fast as reports could travel the exciting news spread. Men rushed to the gold region. They went across the continent. They went across the Isthmus of Panama. They went around Cape Horn. In a short time the population of California rose from twelve thousand to a quarter of a million. The growth of San Francisco was a marvel. In its capacious harbor, which had given shelter in past days to only a few vessels other



than whalers, were now to be seen ships from every part of the world.\*

**133.** California soon applied for admission to the Union. This led to another violent agitation of the slavery question, for the Constitution of the new State prohibited slavery. While the discussion was in progress President Taylor died, after a sickness of only four days, and was succeeded by the Vice-President, Millard Fillmore, of New York (July 9, 1850).

Death  
of Taylor.

**134.** The discussion in Congress took a wide range, em-

\* Its first house was built in 1835, and its first name was Yerba Buena (good herb). In 1846 a war ship of the United States took possession of it (§ 125). Next year its name was changed to San Francisco, when it contained just 459 inhabitants. Six years later its schools had a street procession, one thousand children being in the train. In 1800 there were eighteen Spanish missions of the Catholic Church in California. After shaking off the yoke of Spain (1822) Mexico took possession of the lands belonging to these missions, and the missions were then gradually abandoned.

**133.** What is said of the death of Taylor? Of Millard Fillmore?

**134.** What was the Compromise of 1850? What did Mr. Clay offer? *Ans.* A bill known as the Omnibus Bill. It was not adopted as a whole. It was divided into five bills and so adopted. Where did we meet Mr. Clay before (pp. 271, 275, 282)? What is said of the Fugitive Slave Law? Of the difficulty of enforcing it?

bracing several questions beside the admission of California. To satisfy both sides, the pro-slavery men and the anti-slavery men, the "Great Pacificator" and wonderful orator, Henry Clay, offered a compromise. As a result, California was admitted as a free State, no more slaves were sold by public auction in the District of Columbia, and a Fugitive Slave Law was enacted (§ 140). This slave law was passed to satisfy slave owners, its object being to make it certain for them to recover their "property," as they called their slaves, when such property escaped to the free States. They already had this right, under the Constitution, as was quite clear, but the growing feeling against slavery in the North made it difficult for them to exercise it. The Abolitionists would manage to hide slaves and send them away even to far-off Canada (§ 120). The new law made it the duty of every citizen, when called upon by an agent of the government, to help capture runaway slaves.

135. Among the people of the North the law soon became very odious, for, by its action, a number of free colored men were seized, and put in danger of being sent South into slavery. This, of course, was an abuse of the law, but it gave to its opponents the opportunity to say that "it interfered with the sacred right of personal liberty," a right given by the Constitution. They demanded protection for the free negroes. In some of the States their demand was heard, and Personal Liberty Bills were passed, which secured a jury trial to every person seized as a fugitive slave.

136. The compromise, of which the Fugitive Slave Law was a part, in its effects reached Utah and New Mexico by giving to each a territorial government (map 6). But already in Utah a religious sect, called

The  
Compromise  
of 1850.

The Mormons.

135. What further is said of it? Of Personal Liberty Bills?

136. Give the history of the Mormons. How is Salt Lake City located (map p. 285)? Give the boundaries of Utah (map 6).

Mormons or Latter Day Saints, was firmly established (1848). Some years before, its founder, Joseph Smith, made a settle-

ment in Missouri. Owing, however, to the hostility of the people about him, he left that State, and, in Illinois, began to build

the City of Nauvoo (1840). Four years later, in a m  le he was shot, and, under a new leader, the Mormons prepared to move to the Rocky Mountain region. In the Salt Lake Valley

of Utah they at last found a home, which they called Deseret, but, in 1850, Congress changed the name to Utah. There the Mormons cultivated farms, founded a city, and, aided by their missionaries in Europe as well as in the United States, rapidly grew in numbers, wealth, and power. (N.25, Ap., p.50.)



#### PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION.

**137.** The Whigs were very unfortunate. The two men they had elected to the presidency, Harrison and Taylor, died in office; and now, with General Scott as their candidate, they were badly defeated. Franklin Pierce, the nominee of the Democrats, was chosen, and on the 4th of March, 1853, was inaugurated.

**138.** Hardly had he assumed the duties of his office when a dispute arose with Mexico. It was in respect to the ownership of a tract of land in the Mesilla Valley, west of the Rio Grande. The land was finally purchased by the United States for ten million

The Gadsden  
Purchase.

**137.** What is said of the next Presidential election?

**138.** What was the Gadsden Purchase? What are its boundaries (map 8)?

dollars (1853). As Mr. Gadsden was the American agent in making the bargain, the tract is known as the Gadsden Purchase. It forms part of Arizona and New Mexico (map 6).

139. Before this dispute was fairly ended, another, much more serious, began. This related to the future of the region

**Repeal of  
the Missouri  
Compromise.**

west of Missouri and Iowa. In Congress a bill was introduced for organizing Kansas and Nebraska as Territories. It was opposed by Free

Soilers (§ 129) and Northern Whigs, because, if adopted, it would repeal the Missouri Compromise, a compact that had

been regarded as made for all time (§ 98). The measure was known as the Kansas-Nebraska Bill.



FRANKLIN PIERCE.

140. That compact, the compromise of 1820, shut out slavery from all the nation's domain, Missouri excepted, north of latitude 36° 30'. The new bill made it the duty of every Territory, in taking steps to become a State, to ascertain, by vote of its inhabitants, whether they were willing to have slavery in their State or

not. Slaveholders meanwhile were to be permitted to settle with their slaves in any Territory, it being asserted that "Wherever the flag of the Union goes it carries slavery with it." Notwithstanding the decided opposition, protracted through a discussion lasting four months, the Kansas-Nebraska Bill was passed (1854). The consequences, however, were not as the Southern leaders had expected. They

139. What was the Kansas and Nebraska Bill? Why was it opposed?

140. What is said of the Compromise of 1820? What provision of the Kansas-Nebraska Bill is mentioned? What did the people of the two sections want?

wanted Kansas and Nebraska to be slave States. The people of the North wanted them to be free States. The contest that followed was chiefly carried on in Kansas.

141. Emigration companies were formed at the North, and a steady stream of settlers was poured into Kansas, the most conspicuous of the new-comers being John Brown, accompanied by four of his sons. The South did not send many settlers. Kansas was a next neighbor of Missouri, and the pro-slavery Missourians in great crowds crossed the border, not, however, to make their home in the new land, but to outvote and drive away the Northern settlers. Civil war ensued, and during the larger part of six years Kansas was a scene of disorder and violence.\* (Note 26, Ap., p. 50.)

---

#### REVIEW OUTLINE.

**Presidents' Cabinets.**—These first comprised the heads of the three departments, State, Treasury, and War (§ 7). Afterward the Attorney-General and the Postmaster-General were added, the latter in 1829. When the Navy Department, in 1798, and the Department of the Interior, in 1849, were established, their heads were also admitted.

**United States Banks.**—The first was chartered in 1791 for twenty years. The second, chartered in 1816, was also for twenty years. When this second charter expired Jackson would not consent to its renewal. During Tyler's administration Congress passed two bills to establish a national bank, but he vetoed both.

**Treaties.**—The first under the Constitution was made with Great Britain in 1794. It was for commercial and other purposes. The second, for peace, was with Algiers, in 1795. The third, for boundaries

---

\* With a view to the promotion of commerce, an expedition had been sent to Japan, a country then almost unknown to Americans, and but little known to Europeans. The efforts of its commander, Commodore Perry, brother of the "Hero of Lake Erie," were crowned with success. Two ports were opened as harbors of refuge and trade (1854). By treaties afterward made, all the ports of Japan are now open to the commerce of the United States.

---



and commerce, was with Spain, in 1795. The fourth, for peace and commerce, was with France, in 1800. Jay's treaty with England, ratified in 1795, gave offense to France (§ 27). Other treaties were made to settle boundary and fishing disputes, for the purchase of Louisiana, Florida, and Mexican territory, and for other objects.

**Tariffs.**—Acts for imposing duties on goods brought from other countries were early passed (§ 6). A protective tariff, passed in 1816, was favored by the South but not by the North. The cotton-mills of the North brought a change of views. The protective tariffs of 1828 and 1832 were disliked by the South, and out of this feeling grew the nullification troubles in South Carolina.

**State Rights.**—When the Constitution was adopted men said that certain rights still belonged to the States; they had not been surrendered to the general government (p. 205). This assertion found force during the nullification troubles in South Carolina (p. 270), and at other times.

**Compromises.**—There were several, beginning with the Constitution. The tariff and slavery were the main subjects involved. The first compromise permitted slaves to be imported till 1808. The first ten amendments to the Constitution may be considered as the result of the second (Appendix, p. 28). The compromises of 1820, 1832, and 1850 are the most noted.

**Political Parties.**—The first, Federal and Anti-Federal, grew out of the contest respecting the adoption of the Constitution; and, though questions concerning the tariff, commerce, national bank, and the French Revolution, blended party lines, these two names continued to be used thirty years. The Federalists succeeded in the first three presidential elections, but, in 1801, their opponents, calling themselves Republicans, put Jefferson into the White House. The Republicans were successful in the next four elections. The next contest, 1824, mostly of a personal character, resulted in the election of J. Q. Adams. Two parties were then formed, the Democratic and the Whig. Their first contest made Jackson President (1829). He was a Democrat. Twice more, in opposition to a national bank, the Democrats were successful, but at length victory declared for their opponents and Harrison became President (1841). Four years later, the Democrats, in favor of annexing Texas, of "the whole of Oregon or none," and of a "low tariff," elected Polk (1845). The slavery question getting to be a disturbing element, the Whigs put Taylor into the presidential chair (1849). Next, with Pierce as their candidate, the Democrats succeeded (1853).

**Slavery.**—When Washington became President there were about 700,000 slaves, distributed in all of the then States except Massachusetts

Though the Northern States abolished slavery within their limits, and no slaves were legally brought to the country after the year 1807, yet in 1860 there were nearly four million slaves in the then fifteen slave States.

**Population, Productions, etc.**—In 1790, when the first census was taken, the population was nearly 4,000,000, including the slaves. In 1860, the population had increased to more than 31,440,000. Of this number, 44,000 were Indians, and 35,000 were Chinese. The cotton crop of that year was close upon 1,000,000 tons, the grain crop was 1,200,000,000 bushels, and the tobacco crop was 500,000,000 pounds. 5,750,000 pupils were receiving instruction in 113,000 schools and colleges.

**Inventions, etc.**—Whitney's cotton-gin, though by no means the first American invention, was the first of universal importance. The demand for cotton could never have been met without it or a like invention. Fulton's success with steamboats, Howe's with sewing-machines, Morse's with the telegraph, and Hoe's with printing presses, we may point to with pride. This year of 1860 shows 5,000 miles of canals and 30,000 of railroads.

**New Territory.**—1st, The Louisiana region ; 2d, Florida ; 3d, Texas ; 4th, The Oregon region, California, New Mexico, etc.

**Formation of States.**—Vermont, Kentucky, Tennessee, Ohio, Indiana, and Wisconsin are from the original territory. Louisiana, Arkansas, and Iowa are from the Louisiana Purchase. Florida develops into the State. Out of the former Mexican territory comes California.

**Wars with Indians.**—The first grew out of the refusal of tribes in the Northwest Territory to do as they had agreed. The third expedition against them, under General Wayne, brought them to terms. About fifteen years later, influenced by Tecumseh, they were again hostile, and with the Creeks in the South, became allies of the British in the War of 1812. Jackson and Harrison brought them to terms. In 1817 the Seminoles made hostile incursions into Georgia, and from time to time, till 1842, continued their depredations. At last they were removed to the West. Meanwhile the Sacs and Foxes (map 1), refusing to occupy lands west of the Mississippi, as they had agreed, massacred white settlers. They were subdued and the Black Hawk War was ended (1832).

**War with England.**—It had several causes, chief of which was the impressment of our seamen. What was lost by General Hull was recovered by Perry and Harrison. Our reverse at Queenstown was more than offset by the victories of Brown and Scott at Chippewa and Lundy's Lane. MacDonough's victory gave us the control on Lake Champlain, and so prevented an invasion of the enemy by that route. The destruction effected by the British in Washington is recorded to their lasting disgrace. Their

repulse in the harbor of Baltimore, also before New Orleans, and their defeats on the ocean, convinced them that war is a game at which two can play.

**War with Mexico.**--It was caused by the annexation of Texas. The series of victories gained by Taylor, Scott, and others resulted in a treaty by which peace was secured, and a vast domain was added to the property of the United States.

### CHRONOLOGICAL SUMMARY.

1759. WASHINGTON WAS INAUGURATED PRESIDENT (§ 4).....April 30.  
1790. Indians defeated General Harmar in Indiana (§ 15).....Oct. 17, 20.
1791. VERMONT WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 10).....March 4.  
Gray discovered the Columbia River (§ 16).....May.  
Indians defeated General St. Clair in Ohio (§ 15).....Nov. 4.
1792. KENTUCKY WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 13).....June 1.
1793. WHITNEY INVENTED THE COTTON-GIN (§ 20).....  
1794. Wayne defeated the Indians on the Maumee (§ 15).....August 20.  
1795. Wayne made a treaty with the Indians at Greenville (§ 15).....August 3.
1795. JAY'S TREATY WITH GREAT BRITAIN WAS RATIFIED (§ 27) ..June 24.
1796. TENNESSEE WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 14).....June 1.
1797. JOHN ADAMS WAS INAUGURATED PRESIDENT (§ 24).....March 4.  
1798. Allen and Sedition Laws were enacted (§ 82).....
1799. WASHINGTON DIED AT MOUNT VERNON (§ 29).....Dec. 14.
1800. FIRST MEETING OF CONGRESS IN WASHINGTON CITY (§ 34) .Nov. 17.  
Treaty of peace was concluded with France (§ 30).....Sept. 30.
1801. THOMAS JEFFERSON WAS INAUGURATED PRESIDENT (§ 35) ..March 4.
1803. OHIO WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 37).....Feb. 19.  
THE LOUISIANA TERRITORY WAS PURCHASED OF FRANCE (§ 38).....April 30.  
1804. Decatur destroyed the frigate Philadelphia (§ 37).....Feb. 15.  
1804. The duel between Hamilton and Burr (§ 44).....July 11.  
1805. Lewis and Clarke descended the Columbia (§ 41).....November.
1807. FRIGATE LEOPARD ATTACKED FRIGATE CHESAPEAKE (§ 51) ..June 22.  
Fulton's steamboat Clermont ascended the Hudson (§ 49).....August.
1809. JAMES MADISON WAS INAUGURATED PRESIDENT (§ 54).....March 4.  
1811. Astoria, Oregon, was first settled (§ 42).....April.  
1811. Battle of Tippecanoe, Indians defeated (§ 56).....Nov. 7.
1812. LOUISIANA WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 65).....April 30.  
War was declared against Great Britain (§ 58).....June 18.  
Fort Mackinaw surrendered to the British (§ 59).....June 17.  
American frigate Essex captured British sloop Alert (§ 62, and p. 256) ..August 13.  
HULL SURRENDERED DETROIT TO THE BRITISH (§ 59).....August 16.  
AM. FRIGATE CONSTITUTION CAPTURED THE GUERRIERE (§ 62, p. 256) ..August 19.  
Americans were defeated at Queenstown (§ 60, and p. 256).....October 13.  
Am. frigate United States captured the Macedonian (§ 63, and p. 256) ..October 25.  
Am. frigate Constitution captured the Java (§ 62, and p. 256).....Dec. 29.  
1813. Americans captured York (Toronto) (§ 67, and p. 256).....April 27.  
1813. British were repulsed at Sackett's Harbor (§ 67, and p. 256) ..May 29.  
Creek War began by the massacre at Fort Mims (§ 74).....August 30.

1813. BATTLE OF LAKE ERIE, BRITISH DEFEATED (§ 71, and p. 256) Sept. 10.  
Battle of the Thames, British defeated (§ 73, and p. 256) ..... October 5.  
1814. Battle of Chippewa, British defeated (§ 75, and p. 256) ..... July 5.  
1814. Battle of Lundy Lane, British defeated (§ 76, and p. 256) ..... July 25.
1814. BRITISH BURN PUBLIC BUILDINGS IN WASHINGTON (§ 79) ... Aug. 24.  
BATTLE OF LAKE CHAMPLAIN, BRITISH DEFEATED (§ 78, and p. 256) ... Sept. 11  
BATTLE OF FORT McHENRY, BRITISH DEFEATED (§ 80, and p. 256) ... Sept. 13.  
TREATY OF PEACE WAS SIGNED AT GHENT (§ 83) ..... Dec. 24.
1815. BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS, BRITISH DEFEATED (§ 82, p. 256) Jan. 8.  
War was declared against Algiers (§ 85) ..... March 2.
1816. INDIANA WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 90) ..... Dec. 11.
1817. JAMES MONROE WAS INAUGURATED PRESIDENT (§ 91) ..... March 4.  
MISSISSIPPI WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 96) ..... Dec. 10.
1818. ILLINOIS WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 96) ..... Dec. 3.
1819. A TREATY FOR THE PURCHASE OF FLORIDA WAS MADE (§ 94) Feb. 22.  
ALABAMA WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 96) ..... Dec. 14.
1820. THE MISSOURI COMPROMISE WAS PASSED (§ 98) ..... March 3.  
MAINE WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 98) ..... March 15.
1821. MISSOURI WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 98) ..... Aug. 10.  
1823. The Monroe Doctrine was announced (§ 95) ..... Dec. 2.  
1824. Lafayette visited the United States (§ 99) ..... Aug. 15.
1825. JOHN QUINCY ADAMS WAS INAUGURATED PRESIDENT (§ 100) March 4.  
1826. Death of John Adams and Jefferson (§ 101) ..... July 4.  
1826. First railroad built in the United States (§ 102) .....
1829. ANDREW JACKSON WAS INAUGURATED PRESIDENT (§ 105) ... March 4.  
1830. Debate in Congress between Webster and Hayne (§ 111) .....  
1832. The Black Hawk War occurred (note on p. 262) .....  
1832. South Carolina adopted Nullification Ordinance (§ 111) .....  
1835. Texas declared her independence (§ 118) ..... Dec. 20.  
1835. War with the Seminole Indians began (§ 92) ..... Dec. 28.
1836. ARKANSAS WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 117) ..... June 15.
1837. MICHIGAN WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 117) ..... Jan. 26.  
MARTIN VAN BUREN WAS INAUGURATED PRESIDENT (§ 113) ..... March 4.
1841. WM. HENRY HARRISON INAUGURATED PRESIDENT (§ 115) ... March 4.  
The death of Harrison occurred (§ 115) ..... April 4.  
JOHN TYLER WAS INAUGURATED PRESIDENT (§ 115) ..... April 6.  
1842. The Dorr Rebellion in Rhode Island occurred (note to § 116) ....  
1842. Treaty with England settled boundary line dispute (§ 116) ..... August 9.  
1843. Whitman conducted caravan to Oregon (p. 298) .....
1844. 1ST TELEGRAPH IN PRACTICAL USE IN THE U. S. (§ 130) ... May 27.
1845. FLORIDA WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 120) ..... March 3.  
JAMES K. POLK WAS INAUGURATED PRESIDENT (§ 120) ..... March 4.  
TEXAS WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 120) ..... Dec. 29.  
1846. Mexicans attacked American dragoons (§ 121) ..... April 26.  
1846. Battle of Palo Alto, Mexicans defeated (§ 121, and p. 279) ..... May 8.  
1846. Battle of Resaca de la Palma, Mexicans defeated (§ 121, and p. 279) May 9.
1846. CONGRESS DECL'D "WAR EXISTED BY ACT OF MEXICO" (§ 121) May 13.  
Oregon Boundary Treaty made with Great Britain (§ 298) ..... June 1.  
Santa Fé occupied by United States troops (§ 124) ..... Aug. 15.  
Battle of Monterey, Mexicans defeated (§ 122, and p. 279) ..... Sept. 24.  
IOWA WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 130) ..... Dec. 28.  
1847. Battle of Buena Vista, Mexicans defeated (§ 122, and p. 279) ..... Feb. 23.  
1847. Vera Cruz captured by General Scott (§ 126, and p. 279) ..... March 27.  
1847. Battle of Cerro Gordo, Mexicans defeated (§ 126, and p. 279) ..... April 18.
1847. CITY OF MEXICO SURRENDERED TO GEN. SCOTT (§ 127) ..... Sept. 14.

1848. THE DISCOVERY OF GOLD IN CALIFORNIA (§ 132).....Jan.  
TREATY WITH MEXICO, peace and territory gained (§ 128).....Feb. 2  
WISCONSIN WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 130).....May 29.
1849. ZACHARY TAYLOR WAS INAUGURATED PRESIDENT (§ 131) ... March 5.  
1850. The Death of President Taylor occurred (§ 133).....July 9.
1850. MILLARD FILLMORE WAS INAUGURATED PRESIDENT (§ 133).....July 10.  
CALIFORNIA WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 134).....Sept. 9.
1853. FRANKLIN PIERCE WAS INAUGURATED PRESIDENT (§ 137).....March 4.  
TREATY WITH MEXICO, cedes Mesilla Valley to the U. S. (§ 138).....Dec. 30.  
1854. Treaty of amity with Japan (note to § 141).....March 31.
1854. CONGRESS PASSED THE KANSAS AND NEBRASKA BILL (§ 140).....May 3.

## TOPICS FOR REVIEW.

**Biographical.**—*Tell who they were, for what they were noted, and with what events they were connected.*

PAGE.	PAGE.	PAGE.	PAGE.
Astor ... 234	Field ..... 281	Knox..... 215	Pinckney..... 228
Black Hawk.... 262	Fremont .... 277, 278	Lawrence .... 248	Porter..... 245, 256
Blennerhassett... 236	Fulton..... 237	Lafayette..... 265	Quincy..... 266
Boone ... 219	Gadsden..... 286	Lewis..... 234	Randolph, E..... 215
Brown, Gen. 247, 252	Garrison..... 275	Livingston..... 233	Randolph, J..... 264
Brown, John..... 287	Genet..... 226	MacDonough ... 253	Ross..... 254
Burr..... 230, 235, 237	Gray..... 221	Marshall..... 229	Santa Anna. 277, 279
Calhoun..... 270, 275	Hamilton..... 215, 235	Morse..... 281	Scott. 252, 271, 277, 285
Clay. 271, 275, 282, 284	Hayne..... 270	Miller..... 252	Smith..... 285
Clarke..... 234	Houston..... 274	Osceola..... 262	Tecumseh... 241, 251
Clinton..... 267	Hull, Gen..... 244	Pakenham ... 255	Wayne..... 229, 230
Croghan..... 247	Hull, Capt..... 245	Perry, Capt..... 249	Webster. 265, 271, 278
Decatur..... 259	Jay..... 215, 225, 227	Perry, Com..... 287	Wilnot..... 280
Dorr..... 274	Kearny..... 277	Pike..... 247, 256	Whitney..... 228

**Geographical.**—*Tell where they are located and with what events they were connected.*

PAGE.	PAGE.	PAGE.	PAGE.
Astoria..... 234	Guadalupe H... 280	New Orleans. 247, 255	Richmond..... 237
Baltimore..... 254	Ghent..... 257	Nueces R..... 276	Rio Grande..... 276
Buena Vista.... 277	Hartford..... 244	North Point... 254	Sackett's H..... 247
Cerro Gordo.... 279	Jalapa..... 279	Okeechobee.... 262	Santa Fé..... 277
Champlain, L... 253	Lundy's Lane... 252	Palo Alto..... 280	Sacramento ... 279
Chippewa..... 252	Marietta..... 247	Pensacola... 255, 261	San Francisco.. 283
Cumberland.... 267	Mesilla Valley.. 285	Philadelphia... 235	Tippecanoe.... 242
Detroit..... 244	Matamoras..... 276	Pittsburgh..... 238	Trenton..... 214
Fort Erie..... 252, 253	Mobile..... 255	Plattsburgh.... 253	Tripoli..... 259
Fort McHenry.. 254	Monterey..... 276	Puebla..... 280	Vera Cruz..... 279
Fort Meigs..... 247	Mexico City.... 280	Queenstown ... 245	Washington.... 254
Greenville... .. 220	New York..... 218	Resaca..... 276	York..... 247

**Historical.**—1. First Congress under the Constitution, when and where it met, what it did, and who was its presiding officer in the Senate.—2. Washington's cabinet, the duties of its members, and their previous history.—3. The Indian troubles during Washington's administration, how they were caused, the three expeditions against the Indians, previous history of St. Clair and Wayne, and the treaty made by Wayne.—4. The Jay Treaty, when, where, and by whom it was negotiated on the part of the United States, the opposition at home and in France it met with, when and why it was ratified, and what it effected.—5. The Whisky Insurrection.—6. The cotton-gin, its origin, inventor, use, and consequence.—7. The thirteen original States in the order in which they adopted the Constitution, stating which adopted it after it went into effect.—8. The history of Vermont to the time of its admission to the Union.—9. Of Kentucky, stating who was the former owner of its territory, when the State was admitted to the Union, and other important facts.—10. Same of Tennessee.—11. Ohio.—12. Louisiana.—13. Indiana.—14. Mississippi.—15. Illinois.—16. Alabama.—17. Maine.—18. Missouri.—19. Arkansas.—20. Florida.—21. Texas.—22. Iowa.—23. Wisconsin.—24. California.—25. The Louisiana Purchase, its extent, how acquired, and other important facts.—26. Same of Florida.—27. Of Oregon.—28. Of California, etc.—29. Of the Gadsden Tract.—30. The Lewis and Clarke expedition.—31. Wars with the Barbary States, with their preceding events.—32. The Hamilton-Burr duel.—33. First successes with steamboats.—34. Causes of our second war with England, with events preceding it on the ocean.—35. Names, with dates, locations, commanders, and results, of ten of its most important land battles.—36. Same, of ten naval battles.—37. The treaty of peace, when, where, and by whom made, what it secured, and what important point it left untouched.—38. The Seminoles and the series of troubles with them.—39. The Monroe Doctrine.—40. The Missouri Compromise, by whom and why made, how long it lasted, and other facts about it.—41. Cause of the Mexican War, and how hostilities began.—42. Ten of the principal battles of the war, with dates, locations, commanders, and results.—43. Two treaties with Mexico, when and where made, money paid, and what changes in the ownership of territory were effected.—44. The Mormons.—45. The history of Jackson previous to his election as President.—46. Same of Harrison.—47. Of Taylor.—48. Name the first fourteen Presidents in the order of their succession, stating when each was inaugurated, and which succeeded to the position by reason of the death of their predecessors.—49. The history of Washington's administration, naming every one of its important events that are spoken of in this book.—50. Same of John Adams's administration.—51. Jefferson's.—

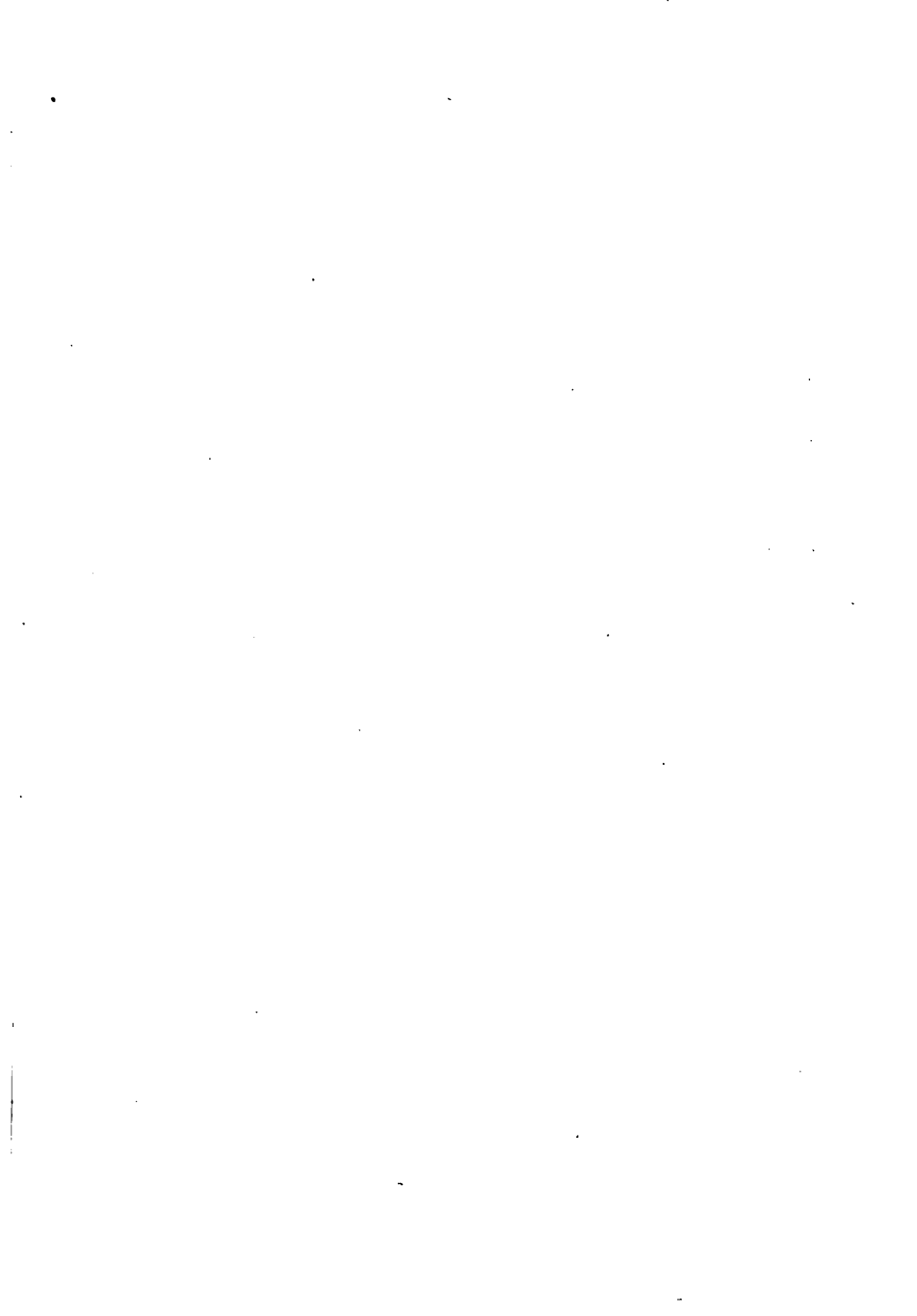
52. Madison's.—53. Monroe's.—54. John Quincy Adams's.—55. Jackson's.—56. Van Buren's.—57. Harrison's.—58. Tyler's.—59. Polk's.—60. Taylor's.—61. Fillmore's.—62. Pierce's.—63. In which of them territory was acquired, and what territory.—64. In which wars occurred, what wars, and their results.

**Questions on the Tables, Appendix** (p. 33 to p. 40).—1. Name the Presidents who served exactly one term of four years each.—2. Name those who served less than one term each.—3. Which of the Presidents served more than one term each, but not two terms?—4. Which served exactly two terms each?—5. Which of the Presidents died while in office?—6. Name the Presidents, who, in consequence of the death of their predecessors, became Presidents.—7. Which of the Presidents, who, not being elected in the usual way, were elected by the House of Representatives (App. 20)?—8. Name the Presidents who were born in Virginia.—9. In New York.—10. In the other States.—11. What wars occurred while Washington was President?—12. While Madison was President?—13. Polk?—14. Lincoln?—15. Tell what sobriquets were applied to the Presidents, with the reasons for such application.—16. What States were admitted to the Union while Washington was President?—17. While Jefferson was President?—18. Madison?—19. Monroe?—20. Jackson?—21. Tyler?—22. Polk?—23. Fillmore?—24. Buchanan?—25. Lincoln?—26. Johnson?—27. Grant?—28. State which of the States came by annexation, which from purchased territory, and which from territory acquired by conquest and purchase.—29. State in whose administration each domain of acquired territory was procured, and how it was procured.

### CHIEF JUSTICES OF THE UNITED STATES SUPREME COURT

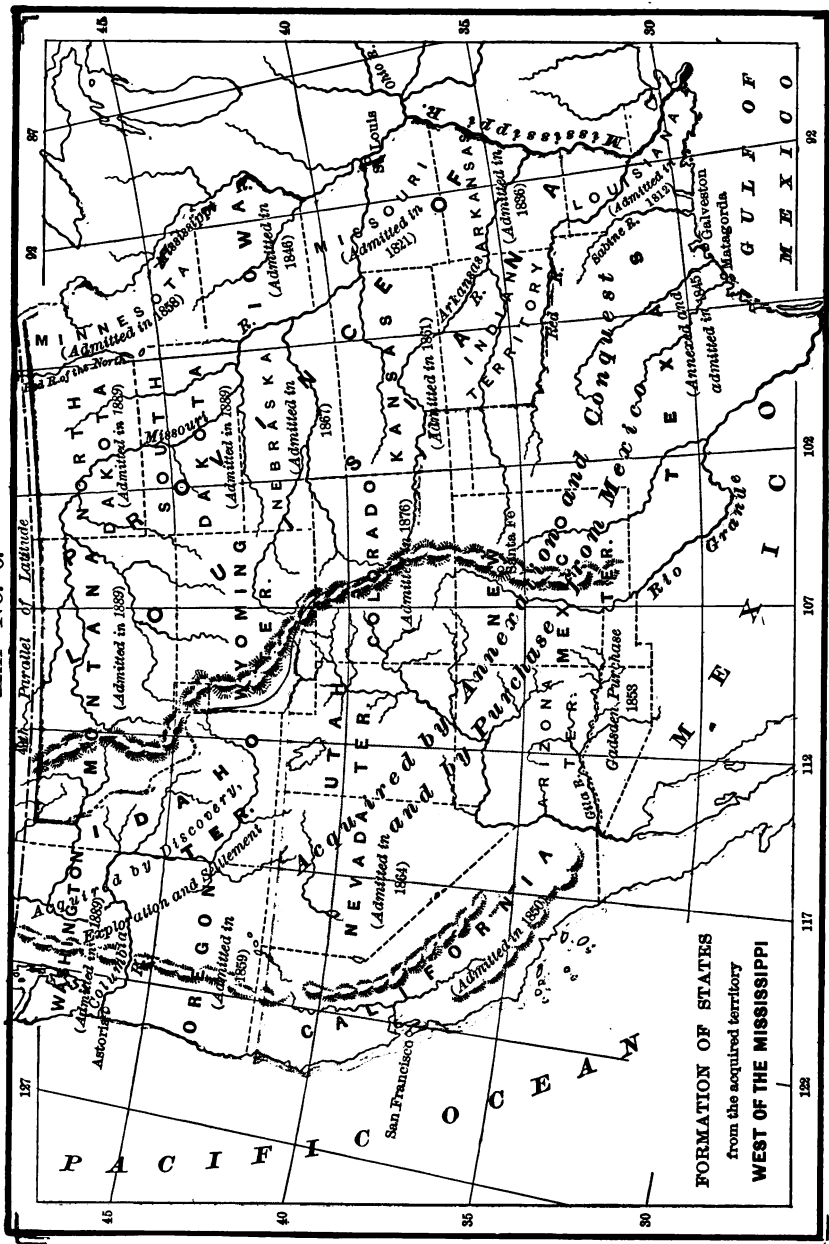
NAME.	STATE WHENCE APPOINTED.	TERM OF SERVICE	LENGTH OF LIFE.
John Jay.....	New York .....	1790 to 1795	1745 to 1829
John Rutledge .....	South Carolina.....	1795 to 1795	1739 to 1800
Oliver Ellsworth .....	Connecticut.....	1796 to 1801	1745 to 1807
John Marshall .....	Virginia .....	1801 to 1835	1755 to 1835
Roger B. Taney.....	Maryland .....	1836 to 1864	1777 to 1864
Salmon P. Chase.....	Ohio.....	1864 to 1873	1806 to 1873
Morrison R. Waite.....	Ohio.....	1874 to 1888	1816 to 1888
Melville W. Fuller.....	Illinois .....	1888 to 18—	1833 to 18—

(For Tabulated Review see end of History.)





MAP No. 6.



## SECTION V.

### CONSTITUTIONAL PERIOD.

---

#### PART II.

##### ADMINISTRATIONS OF BUCHANAN, LINCOLN, AND JOHNSON.

1. WE are now on the eve of the presidential election. The Whig party is no longer in existence. There are three parties, the Democratic, the Republican, and the American. The Democrats contend that "wherever slavery finds its way by the people's choice" it ought not to be disturbed. The Republicans, looking upon slavery as an evil and a danger, are not willing to have it go into the Territories. They do not want to have any more slave States. The object of the American party may be inferred from its motto, "Americans shall rule America." The election being over, it is found that the Democrats have chosen James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania, though his Republican opponent, John C. Fremont, received 1,341,000 of the people's votes. The inauguration takes place on the 4th of March, 1857.



JAMES BUCHANAN.

---

1. What is said of political parties in the canvass of 1856? What further can you state of the object of the American party? *Ans.* It wanted foreigners to live in our country longer before they could become naturalized. What was the result of the election? When and where did we meet Fremont before (p. 277)?

2. Two days after the inauguration an important decision comes from the Supreme Court in relation to a slave named Dred Scott. This decision is the opinion of a majority of the judges. Scott is declared to be in law not a person, but a thing. No colored man can become a citizen of the United States, and Congress has no more right to stop the carrying of slaves from one State to another or into a Territory than it has to stop the carrying of horses or any other property. So, in substance, says the decision. Speaking for a majority of the Court, the Chief Justice asserts that when the Constitution was adopted, colored men "had no rights which the white man was bound to respect." This decision, so at variance with the convictions and feelings of the great body of people at the North, comes with startling effect. It sends men into the Republican party, for there and only there, it seems to them, can the stride of slavery be arrested. It unites the Republicans in a more compact body, and makes them more resolute. It is one of the agents working to divide the Democratic party into two factions, and thus making a Republican victory possible in the next presidential election (Note, p. 298, and N. 30, Ap., p. 52).

The  
Dred Scott  
Decision.

3. Already the parties are getting ready for that contest. Meanwhile a blow is struck at slavery by John Brown, who, we remember, took part in the fight to make Kansas a free State (§ 141 p. 287). With about twenty men, including two of his sons, Brown crosses the Potomac into Virginia. His object is to make war upon slavery. He wants to free the slaves. At night he enters the village of Harper's Ferry (map 7), and seizes the arsenal there belonging to the general government (October, 1859). His plan is to make the arsenal a rallying place for slaves, with whose help he expects to begin the destruction of slavery. Before the close of the next day the arsenal is sur-

John  
Brown's Raid.

2. What was the Dred Scott decision? What was its effect?

3. Give an account of John Brown's raid. Where is Harper's Ferry (map 5)?

rounded by armed men from the Virginia militia and by United States forces. Brown is overpowered, some of his men are killed, and he, wounded, is made a prisoner. His two sons are among the slain. He is tried by the State of Virginia, found guilty on three charges, and hanged (Dec. 2, 1859). Two of his men succeed in making their escape; the rest, six in number, are hanged (§ 17). (Note 26, Ap., p. 50.)

4. Three States, all free, were admitted to the Union during Buchanan's administration. Minnesota (map 6), the North Star State, was the first (1858). Part of its territory lies east of the Mississippi; the greater part is west. It thus took to itself the last of the Northwest Territory (p. 218), and a part of the Louisiana Purchase (p. 233).

Minnesota.

5. The next State was Oregon (map 6). The region west of the Rocky Mountains, between California and British America, now belonging to the United States, was known as the Oregon Region. It was acquired, as we have seen, by discovery (p. 221), exploration (p. 234), settlement (p. 234), and treaty with Spain (p. 262). Though our title to it was without a flaw Great Britain claimed it. The English had made explorations along its coast; and an English fur company had trapped wild animals within its limits, and, by reports, had long contrived to make it appear to the outside world that the territory was not fit for the habitation of man.

Oregon.

6. Though the Indians were hostile, emigrants and missionaries from the United States made their way up the Missouri, and through the mountain passes to the far-off region. Only the strongest and the most persistent succeeded in getting there. Thousands never saw the promised land. They

---

4. What is said of Minnesota and its territory? Bound the State.

5. What was the Oregon region? Name the four steps that gave us our title to it. State how our claim was opposed. What did the fur company do and say?

6. How was the fur company baffled? How was the dispute with England settled? When did Oregon become a State of the Union? What are its boundaries (map 6)? How is the rest of the former Oregon region now divided?

fell by the way, and their comrades went on and left them. In 1843, Dr. Whitman conducted a caravan comprising two hundred wagons. Next year there were three thousand white settlers in the valley of the Columbia. In two years more there were twelve thousand, and they effectually decided the question of ownership. In that same year (1846) England gave up her claim to all the territory south of the 49th parallel. The State of Oregon, formed from this region, was admitted in 1859 (§ 64). (Read note 27, Appendix, p. 51.)

7. Next came Kansas (1861). The slavery strife there was at an end (p. 287). All the territory of the State, except Kansas. the corner south of the Arkansas River (map 6), had been derived from the Louisiana Purchase (p. 233). That corner, of less than eight thousand square miles, was a part of Mexico's cession in 1848 (p. 280).

8. The Southern leaders, believing that in the growing strength of the Republican party there was peril to slavery, Secession. and, as a consequence, to the power of the South, thought and talked of secession. They declared that in the event of Republican success at the next presidential election, their States would secede, that is, would leave the Union. The threat did not deter the Republicans. It was thought to be mere brag and bluster. The Republican candidate was Abraham Lincoln, "whose early teachers were the silent forest, the prairie, the river, and the stars," and he was elected (November, 1860).\*

9. It was soon seen that the threat of the Southern leaders

\* The candidate of the extreme pro-slavery party was John C. Breckenridge, who had been Vice-President under Buchanan. The "Squatter Sovereignty" party nominated Stephen A. Douglas. These two divided the Democratic party. The American party nominated John Bell, of Tennessee, with the simple party platform, "The Union, the Constitution, and the Enforcement of the Laws."

7. What is said of Kansas, its admission, and territory?

8. What threat did the Southern leaders make? Why did they make it? What is said of Lincoln and his election?

9. Give an account of the first movements toward secession.

was not an idle boast. They were sincere. At once the secession movement began, though Lincoln had nearly four months before him ere he could enter upon the duties to which he had been elected. South Carolina passed the first secession ordinance (December 20, 1860). The example was quickly followed by Mississippi, Florida, Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas. These seven States then formed a Confederacy. The doctrine of State Rights thus received practical illustration (p. 270). Said a distinguished South Carolinian: "My first duty is to my State." (Read note 28, App., p. 51.)

10. In Fort Moultrie, near one side of the entrance to Charleston harbor, was a garrison of United States troops, about eighty men in all, under the command of Major Anderson. On a little island near the

Fort Sumter.

other side of the entrance stood Fort Sumter in an unfinished condition. Seeing that preparations were being made to attack him, Anderson transferred his force secretly, at night, to Fort Sumter. There, he thought, his position would be more secure. This act made the people of South Carolina very angry. They demanded that Anderson should return at once to Fort Moultrie, but he refused. Then their State sent the demand to President Buchanan. He also refused, and, after some hesitation and with



10. Where is Fort Moultrie (map 2)? Fort Sumter? Give an account of Anderson's movement, why it was made, and what followed. What great battle took place at Fort Moultrie nearly ninety years before (p. 160)? Describe it.

reluctance, gave orders to have a steamer, the *Star of the West*, with supplies and troops, sent to Anderson. The steamer sailed from New York, but, as she was approaching Fort Sumter, she was fired upon by batteries from the shore, and driven back (January 9, 1861).

11. Thus South Carolina began the war. Following up her success, the State erected batteries and formed an army under General Beauregard (*bo-re-gard*) to drive Anderson away. These preparations were in progress when Lincoln set out from his home in Illinois to be inaugurated in Washington. Threats that he would not be allowed to take the oath of office had been made.

When Lincoln  
began his  
Administration.



ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

Secretly traveling the last few miles of his journey, he reached the city, where, protected by a large military force, he was inaugurated and began his administration (March 4, 1861).

12. In what a sad condition was the country! Seven States were united in a Confederacy, of which Jefferson Davis was the President, and Montgomery, Alabama, the capital. Events were moving other States to join the Confederacy; and four States, Virginia, Arkansas, Tennessee, and North Carolina, did join before the beginning of summer. Southern members of Congress had left their seats in that body to aid the secession movement, public trusts to a large extent were held by persons in sympathy

11. What further was done by South Carolina? What is related of Lincoln's journey to Washington and his inauguration?

12. In what condition was the country then? Give the facts about the formation of the Confederacy. How is Montgomery situated (map 5)?

with it, the few vessels belonging to the navy were scattered in distant seas, there was no army to depend upon, and the treasury was empty. (Read note 29, Appendix, p. 51.)

13. Fort Sumter was still held by Major Anderson, though its provisions were nearly gone. Lincoln determined to send relief to the suffering garrison. It was too late. On the 12th of April the South Carolinians opened fire upon the fort. "That shot was heard around the world." The defense was feeble, owing to the smallness of the garrison and the scanty supply of ammunition. More than three thousand shot and shell struck the fort. Its upper

Surrender  
of  
Fort Sumter.

part was knocked to pieces, flames issued from every opening, smoke filled every space within its walls, and its defenders had but little more ammunition. Anderson capitulated



PORT SUMTER, IN 1860.

(April 13). Next day, Sunday, the tattered flag of the United States was hauled down, and the flag of South Carolina, a silken emblem made by Charleston ladies, was run up in its stead. Anderson and his men sailed for New York.

14. In Charleston the event caused great rejoicing. Men cheered, ladies waved their handkerchiefs, bells were rung, and guns were fired. "It was regarded as the greatest day in the history of South Carolina," said one of the South's best writers. The news, as it was flashed by telegraph to other parts of the State and

Effect  
of  
the News.

13. Give an account of the attack upon Fort Sumter and its result. When did that occur? How many years ago?

14. How did the news of the event affect the South?



to other parts of the South, was everywhere greeted in like manner. There was great rejoicing in the South.

15. Far different was the effect at the North. There indignation, deep and wide-spread, took instant form. Party lines for the time were entirely swept away. In public meetings men denounced the South as being in rebellion. "We are not rebels," came a voice from the South. "We left the Union as we had a right to do, and formed a Confederacy. We are Confederates. This war is not between two parts of a country; it is between two countries." (See p. 270.) Lincoln issued a call for troops. The response was quick and hearty. Merchants, farmers, mechanics, and professional men jumped into the ranks. It was the feeling that the Union must be saved at all hazards and at every sacrifice. Two days after the call, Davis, by proclamation, offered to give authority to privateers to cruise against the commerce of the United States. Lincoln then declared the ports of the seceding States to be in a state of blockade, meaning that no commerce could be legally carried on with them.

16. The city of Washington, it was reported at the North, was in peril. A raid, so said the report, was about to be made against it from Virginia. Troops were hurriedly sent for its protection. The most direct route to the city from the North was through Maryland, where, it was known, the secession feeling was strong. A body of the advancing troops, a Massachusetts regiment, was attacked by a mob in the streets of Baltimore, and three of its members were killed and others injured. This took place on the 19th of April, the eighty-sixth anniversary of the battle of Lexington (p. 152). The first blood in the great Civil War was shed.

First  
Bloodshed.

15. How did the news affect the North? How did the South reason? What is said of Lincoln's call for troops? Of Davis's proclamation? Of Lincoln's counter act?

16. What report respecting the nation's capital was put in circulation? Give an account of what followed. How is Baltimore situated (map p. 254)?

17. Meanwhile the Virginians were not idle. An armed body marched to get possession of Harper's Ferry (map 7). The Union commander there, having heard of the movement against the place, blew up or set fire to the arsenal and workshops, and fled (April 18).<sup>\*</sup> At Gosport, near the city of Norfolk, there was a great naval station. It contained foundries, ships of war, cannon, powder, shot, and shells. Troops belonging to the Virginia militia paraded in the streets of Norfolk. Fearing that the naval station, with its workshops, ships, and war material, would be seized by these troops, the Union officer in charge set fire to its buildings, and did what he could to send the ships away or destroy them. One of the ships, the Merrimac, a fine steam frigate, he sunk. The Virginians, on gaining possession of the place, found that the buildings were not much injured, and that most of the war material was in good condition. The Merrimac was soon raised without difficulty (§ 29). In May (1861), Richmond, Virginia's capital, was made the capital of the Confederacy. Not all of Virginia, however, was willing to join the Confederacy. Its western counties opposed secession, and were supported by General George B. McClellan, who defeated Confederate troops and drove them from the region. The people of the counties had an election, chose a legislature, and organized a State of their own. This, under the name of West Virginia, was admitted into the Union in 1863.

Affairs  
in  
Virginia.

18. It was believed in the North that the capture of the Confederate capital would end the war. "On to Richmond"

---

<sup>\*</sup> Harper's Ferry by turns was in the hands of both parties (§ 35).

---

17. Where is Harper's Ferry (map 7)? Norfolk (map 7)? What was done at both places? What fine ship did the North lose? What was done by the people of West Virginia?

18. Give an account of the Battle of Bull Run. Describe the Bull Run Creek (map 7). What influence did the result of the battle have upon the North? What change in commanders was made? Give the previous history of General Scott (pp. 252, 271, 277).

was the daily cry in the newspapers. At last, influenced by public opinion, General Scott, the commander-in-chief of the Union troops, ordered an advance to be made under General McDowell. Near the little stream of Bull Run, a large Confederate army was encountered (map 7). At first the advantage was with the Northern army, but fresh troops coming to the aid of the Confederates, the ranks of the Union men were broken, and in a panic they fled. Not till they reached the fortifications around Washington did they stop (July 21, 1861). This great disaster was a lesson to the people of the North. The task before them, it was now seen, was not as easy as they had imagined. Consequently they were aroused to greater exertion. Congress voted to raise a large sum of money, and enlist more troops. The aged Scott retired because of his bodily infirmities, and McClellan was promoted to the command.

**Battle  
of  
Bull Run.**

19. Meanwhile Missouri was a battle-field. The Secessionists there tried to take the State out of the Union, but their plan was frustrated by General Lyon, who captured their camp near St. Louis, and defeated them at Boonville, west of Jefferson City, on the Missouri River (map 5). Near Springfield he was confronted by a vastly superior force. Fearing that a retreat would be fatal to the Union cause, he made an attack, but was defeated and slain (August 10). At Lexington, a little more than a month later, Colonel Mulligan, commanding a Union force, defended himself during four days against a force five times as large as his own, but at last was compelled to yield. General Fremont, the chief in command of the Union forces at the West, issued an order setting free the slaves of persons in arms against the United States. Believ-

**The War  
in  
Missouri.**

---

19. Give an account of the war in Missouri. Where is Springfield (map 5)? What action did Fremont take, and with what result? Where did we meet Fremont before (pp. 277, 278)? In what direction from St. Louis is Lexington (map 5)?

ing that the people were not ready for this measure, Lincoln would not allow it to go into effect. Said he: "The people are fighting for the Union, not to abolish slavery." Fremont was relieved of his command, but, not long after, was appointed to another command.

20. In the South were four or five million bales of cotton. This the Confederate Government had taken from the planters, giving them paper money in payment.\* As fast as possible the cotton was sent to Europe. For some time the blockade of the Southern ports was far from complete. In the darkness of night fast-sailing steamers, called blockade-runners, would manage to get away and get back again. In this way the South, during the early months of the war, received supplies of muskets, powder, clothing, and other needed things. Gradually the blockade became more effective; and when the end came, it was found that nearly twelve hundred blockade-runners, many of them fine steamers, had been captured or sunk. More than seven hundred of them had sailed from British ports (§ 23).

The  
Blockade.

\* "Money was so easily got, and its value was so utterly uncertain, that we were never able to determine what was a fair price for anything. We fell into the habit of paying whatever was asked, knowing that to-morrow we should have to pay more. I bought coffee at forty dollars and tea at thirty dollars a pound on the same day. My dinner at a hotel cost me twenty dollars, and for some wretched tallow candles I paid ten dollars a pound. A facetious friend used to say 'prices were so high that nobody could see them. Before the war,' he said, 'I went to market with the money in my pocket, and brought back my purchases in a basket; but now I take the money in a basket and bring the things home in my pocket.' I believe the highest price, relatively, I ever saw paid, was for a pair of boots. A cavalry officer, entering a little country store, found there one pair of boots which fitted him. He inquired the price. 'Two hundred dollars,' said the merchant. A five hundred dollar bill was offered, but the merchant, having no smaller bills, could not change it. 'Never mind,' said the cavalier, 'I'll take the boots anyhow. Keep the change; I never let a little matter of three hundred dollars stand in the way of a trade.'"  
—*Eggleston's Rebel Recollections.*

**21.** Before the war the bulk of the South's productions—cotton, tobacco, rice, and sugar—was sent to the North. If the South were an independent power, would not its productions be sent to Europe instead? The men who were managing Europe's great business enterprises were asking that question. They were not long in answering it, and their reply was a decided yes. This reply met with a favorable response from their governments on the Atlantic side of Europe. England was the first to acknowledge the Confederacy as a belligerent power, meaning a power having the right to carry on war (May 13, 1861). France, Spain, and Portugal quickly followed the example. These acts, it is true, did not give the South a place among nations, but they were the first step toward that end.\*

England's  
Conduct.

**22.** Thus encouraged, the Confederate Government appointed Mr. Mason and Mr. Slidell commissioners, to go to England and France for aid. By means of a blockade-runner, the two men succeeded in getting to Havana (map 3). There they were taken on board the British steamer *Trent*. Captain Wilkes (*wilks*), commanding the United States war steamer *San Jacinto* (*ja-sin'-to*), happening to be just then at Havana, determined to seize them. This, however, he could not do in a neutral port. He, therefore, sailed away, waited

---

\* During the war, the French Emperor, Napoleon III., made Mexico an empire with Maximilian, an Austrian Archduke, on its throne. On the withdrawal of the French army, the Mexicans gained control, and shot Maximilian. Said General Grant: "It is the fixed determination of the people of the United States that an empire shall not be established on this continent by the aid of foreign bayonets" (§ 95, p. 262). "He regarded the establishment of the Empire of Maximilian as a part of the attempt to subvert our own republic. The surrender of Lee (§ 54), it was believed, frustrated Napoleon's plan in Mexico."—*Adam Badeau*.

---

**21.** What is said of the course of England, France, Spain, and Portugal? Repeat what is stated in the note about affairs in Mexico and the Monroe Doctrine.

**22.** Give all the facts about the capture and release of Mason and Slidell. State how Havana is located (map 3).

outside the harbor for the Trent, stopped her, and by force carried off the commissioners. At the North, Wilkes's conduct was heartily commended. Men said it was right. In England it produced anger and resentment ; and preparations for war were at once begun. The wise Lincoln took the right view of the affair. Said he : " Captain Wilkes undoubtedly meant well, but it will never answer. This is the very thing British captains used to do. They claimed the right of searching American ships and taking men out of them. That was the cause of the War of 1812 (p. 239). Now, we cannot abandon our own principles." In accordance with this sensible decision, the commissioners were given up, and England had no cause for war.

23. The feeling of the North toward England was far from friendly. England had acknowledged the Confederates to be a war power, and her merchants were sending supplies to them. One of her leading statesmen made bold to say : " The South is fighting for freedom, the North for power." In England fast steamers were built for the Confederates. They were intended not only to run the blockade ; some were built to prey upon the commerce of the United States. The most destructive was the Alabama. Her commander was a Confederate, but " her crew, her guns, and her gunners were British, and she found a welcome in British harbors. She never was in Confederate waters, never saw Confederate land, and she used the Confederate flag only when in the last act of making a prize " (§ 48).

24. It is right to say that many Englishmen were in hearty sympathy with the North. This friendly feeling existed chiefly among the " middle classes," notably among the cotton spinners, who, though depending upon the cotton of

---

23. What was the feeling of the North toward England ? What reason was there for this feeling ? What is said of the Alabama steamer ?

24. What is said of the friendly and unfriendly feeling on the part of Englishmen ? What was said by an American statesman ?

the South for their daily bread, and at last thrown out of employment because Northern cruisers cut off the cotton supply, did not abate their sympathy. A few persons in high places sincerely shared in this feeling, but their number was small. It has been said that "the contest on the part of the North was threefold. It was a military one with the Confederates, a diplomatic one with England and France, and a financial one with the money powers of Europe."

**25.** At the beginning of the new year (1862), five hundred thousand soldiers were in the Union ranks. More than two hundred vessels, soon increased to six hundred, were employed in the blockade. From a point on the Mississippi, a few miles below Cairo (*kā'-ro*), to the Gulf of Mexico, a distance, as measured by the river, of a thousand miles, both sides of the stream were in the possession of the Confederates (map 5). Great preparations were made by both parties, the one to hold the river, the other to gain it. It was also the design of the Unionists, as a part of their plan, to drive the Confederates from Kentucky and Tennessee. The plan required that the two strongholds, Fort Henry, on the Tennessee, and Fort Donelson, on the Cumberland, should be captured first. A combined force, consisting of an army under General U. S. Grant, and a fleet of gunboats commanded by Commodore Foote, proceeded against the forts (map 5).

**26.** Fort Henry was attacked by the boats and captured (February 6). The next task was not so easy. Fort Donelson was besieged by land, and bombarded by the boats from the river. At last, after a four days' contest, the Confederates hoisted a white flag and asked for terms. Grant replied: "No terms other than an unconditional and immediate

**25.** What forces were arrayed against the Confederates? What is said of the preparations to control the Mississippi? Where is Cairo (map 5)?

**26.** Where was Fort Henry (map 5)? Fort Donelson? State how both were captured.

surrender can be accepted." This terse reply gained for its author the title of U(nconditional) S(urrender) Grant. The fort was surrendered (February 16).

27. The Confederates, losing the two forts, withdrew from other positions, and, at Corinth, Mississippi, formed a large army under the command of General A. S. Johnston. Pittsburgh Landing, about thirty miles from Corinth, was a steamboat station in Tennessee, on the Tennessee River (map 5). It was soon occupied by a large force of Union troops who stretched their encampment in the direction of Corinth, to the right and left of a little log-house known as Shiloh Church. Grant was in command. On the 6th of April his troops were attacked by Johnston, and, though they made a stubborn defense and attacked in turn, they were driven to the river's brink. Thus far in the battle the Confederates were the victors, but Johnston, "the choicest of their soldiers," was slain. They could have better spared thousands of their other soldiers. Night came on. General Buell\* having joined Grant with fresh troops, next day the Confederates, under Beauregard, were driven back. Twenty years afterward General Grant said: "This was the most severe battle fought at the West during the war." (Read Note 31, App. p. 52.)

Battle of Shiloh.
----------------------

28. On the Mississippi the Union cause was also success-

---

\* In January of this year Buell was in command of a military department. his head-quarters being in Kentucky. On the 19th, at Mill Spring, a division of his army under General Thomas defeated a Confederate force commanded by General Zollicoffer, who was killed. Six months after the battle of Shiloh, Buell and General Bragg fought a stubborn battle at Perryville, and, though the result was not decisive, Bragg retreated. A few days later, Buell was directed to transfer his command to General Rosecrans.

---

27. Give the particulars of the battle of Shiloh. By what other name is it known? *Ans.* Pittsburgh Landing. Where was that battle fought (map 5)? What said Grant about it?

28. What were Foote's further successes? How was Memphis captured? New Orleans? Where is Island Number 10 (map 5)? Fort Pillow? Memphis? New Orleans?



ful. Foote, with his gunboats, in co-operation with General Pope, captured Island Number 10; and, further down the river, defeated the Confederate flotilla before Fort Pillow (map 5). Foote having been wounded, Commodore Davis, taking command of the fleet, attacked the Confederate boats that were protecting the city of Memphis. He was successful, and the city, in consequence, fell into his hands (June 6). Near the mouth of the river the Union movements were attended with like result. A fleet, under Captain (afterward Admiral) Farragut, entered the river from the Gulf of Mexico, bombarded forts, ran by them, encountered rams and fire rafts, and, to the utter astonishment of the Confederates, anchored before New Orleans.\* On the first of May the city was occupied by Union troops commanded by General Butler.

29. Meanwhile important operations were going on at the East. Expeditions from the North were sent against forts and coast towns of the Carolinas and Georgia, and a wonderful naval battle was fought between two iron-clad ships, the Virginia and the Monitor. The former vessel was originally called the Merrimac. When the government property at Norfolk fell into the hands of the Confederates, she was a part of their gain (§ 17). They cut down her hull almost to the water's edge, covered it and her sides with a thick plating of iron, fastened an iron beak to her bow, and gave her the new name.

30. Steaming out of Norfolk, this iron-clad ram, the

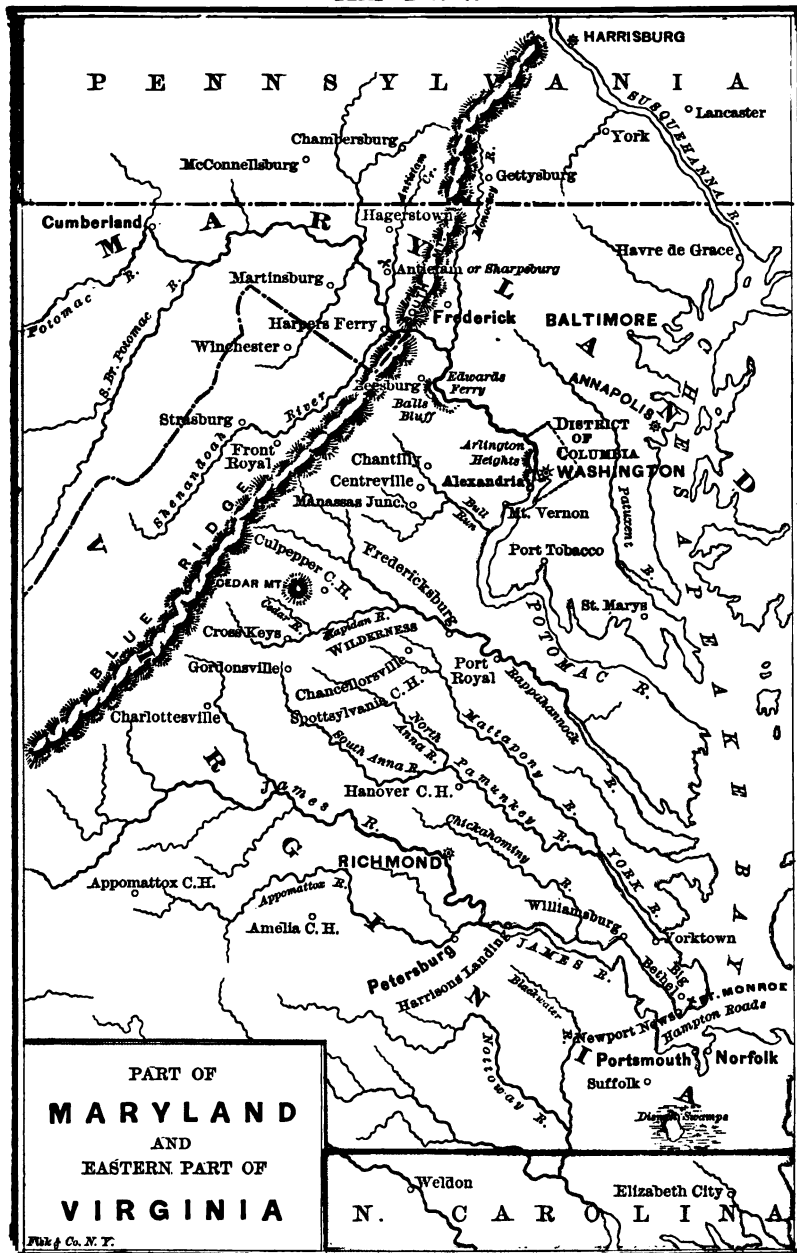
\* "The scene of confusion that ensued in New Orleans when the people awoke to the news that the enemy's fleet had passed the forts and was actually approaching the city, defies all description. They went to the various cotton-presses, rolled out thousands of bales and applied the torch. Countless cotton ships were also sunk or fired, and steamboats by the dozen were in like manner destroyed."—*Pollard's Lost Cause*.

29. State what is said of the iron ship Virginia?

30. What is said of the iron ship Monitor? Of the battle between the two ships? Where is Hampton Roads (map 7)?



MAP No. 7.



Virginia, attacked the Union fleet in Hampton Roads, and destroyed the Cumberland and the Congress, two of the finest ships in the navy (map 7). Night coming on, the Virginia retired, intending to continue the work of destruction in the morning. That night, however, a newly invented fighting ship, the Monitor, arrived from New York. Next day was Sunday. As the Virginia, in the early Sunday morning, steamed toward the Roads, her crew discovered the newcomer. Some said she was "a cheese-box on a plank," others that she was "a tin can on a shingle." On her deck of iron, which rose only a few inches above the water, was an iron tower containing two heavy guns. "Insignificant as she appeared, she was at that moment the most powerful war ship in the world." The two strange vessels met, and fought desperately. History calls it a drawn battle, but the Virginia, in a disabled condition, put back to Norfolk (March 9).\*

31. The result of this combat lifted a load of anxiety from the hearts of the Northern people. They had feared that the Confederate steamer, the Virginia, would be able to enter their ports one after another, and destroy warehouses and shipping with little hindrance. The combat marks a notable change in the world's naval warfare. The day of wooden navies was over. Nations began to build war ships of iron and steel, instead of wood.

32. Under the eye of McClellan a grand army had been formed. Its first object was the capture of the Confederate capital. "On to Richmond" was still the cry from the North. The troops went by boats to Fortress Monroe, whence they marched up the peninsula, on the one side of which is the York River, on the

McClellan's Peninsular Campaign.
--

---

\* The Monitor's commander was John L. Worden. The Virginia's, Franklin Buchanan, was wounded on the 8th, and was succeeded by Catesby Jones.

31. Of what fear was the North relieved? What notable change took place?

32. How did McClellan begin his campaign in Virginia? Give an account of its first events. What change in Confederate commanders was made?

opposite side is the James River (map 7). At Yorktown they met their first check (April 5). The Confederates, after suffering a month's siege, evacuated the place, but at Williamsburg were overtaken and attacked (May 5). At night they retreated. McClellan took a position on the east and west of the Chickahominy River, where he was attacked, but the Confederates, after hard fighting,—one day successful, the next defeated,—retreated toward Richmond (June 1). Their commander, General Joseph E. Johnston, being wounded, General Robert E. Lee was appointed in his place.

33. McClellan, while engaged in these operations, asked for more troops, but the President did not comply with the request. What was the reason? In the Shenandoah Valley a Confederate army under General T. J. Jackson was threatening Washington. This brilliant leader had performed signal service for the South at the battle of Bull Run. "Look at Jackson's brigade!" exclaimed a Confederate officer there. "It stands like a stone wall." And "Stonewall" Jackson was the name the people of the South thereafter delighted to call him. This skilful general so baffled the efforts of three Union generals, and so excited fears for the safety of the Federal capital, that no troops, it was thought, could be spared for McClellan. Jackson, having done the work required of him, joined his forces to Lee's for the defense of Richmond. A series of terrible contests, known as the Seven Days' Battles, followed. After the last, July 1st, though Lee was repulsed, McClellan's movement against Richmond was abandoned.

34. Richmond being now safe from capture, it was in Lee's power to menace Washington. A march northward and through Maryland was resolved upon. To oppose Lee

---

33. What is said of Jackson and his achievements? Name the three generals he baffled. *Ans.* Fremont, McDowell, and Banks. What is said of the Seven Days' Battles?

34. Give an account of the battles of Cedar Mountain and the Second Bull Run. Where are the two places (map 7)?

was an army under General Pope, who had been called from the West by General Halleck (§ 28), the General-in-chief of all the armies of the United States. At Cedar Mountain, Virginia (map 7), a division of Pope's army encountered a division of Lee's (August 9). The result was not decisive. In the latter part of the month the Second Battle of Bull Run, also known as the Second of Manassas, was fought (August 30). The contest was obstinate, but at length victory declared for Lee. More than twenty thousand men were killed or wounded.

Lee's  
First Invasion  
of the North.

35. Lee's victorious army crossed the Potomac into Maryland, a division of it, before doing so, capturing Harper's Ferry (§ 17) with eleven thousand men (September 15). McClellan, in command of a large army comprising Pope's and his own, was sent to oppose Lee. Severe fighting took place at South Mountain, the result being to the advantage of the Union troops (September 14), but the two great armies in full force did not meet before the 17th of September (1862). Then, near a small stream that flows into the Potomac, called Antietam (*an-te'-tam*) Creek, one of the most desperate battles of the war was fought. Nearly five thousand men were killed. Four times that number were wounded. The result being in favor of McClellan, it was thought that he would continue the contest next day, but Lee recrossed the Potomac without being molested. Then Lincoln, confessing that "events had controlled him," announced that if the seceding States continued the war a hundred days longer he would declare their slaves to be free.

36. Nearly two months passed when Lincoln, anxious to have operations against Lee carried on more rapidly, directed McClellan to turn over his command to General Burnside.

---

35. What is said of the battles of South Mountain and Antietam? State how both places are located (map 7).

36. Give an account of the battle of Frederickburg. On what river is Frederickburg (map 7)? What is said in the note about the two commissions?

The Union troops then marched southward, their object being to attack Lee and capture Richmond. At Fredericksburg another of the great battles of the war was fought. It lasted from morning till night (December 13). Burnside was defeated, losing in killed and wounded about eleven thousand men. "Lee was taken to

**Battle  
of  
Fredericksburg.**



**PREPARED FOR THE BATTLE.\***

\* The army and the navy were not the only great agents employed during the war to sustain the Union cause. Two commissions, the Sanitary and the Christian, sent men with litters, stretchers, and ambulances, into every battle-field, to care for the wounded. These commissions were supported by contributions from the people. The ladies, by means of fairs, took the lead in the noble work. Supplies worth nine million dollars were furnished, beside three million dollars in money. One-third of the money came from the Pacific States.

task for not advancing from his defenses, and completing the destruction of the army opposed to him. But he believed that Burnside would renew the attack, and did not know how heavy the Union losses had been, and he was unwilling to risk the advantage of position which had already gained him so much."

37. The first day of the third year of the war came (January 1, 1863). Remembering his promise, the faithful, patient, far-seeing Lincoln issued his Emancipation Proclamation. This declared all the slaves in the seceding States to be free. He had said: "If I could save the Union without freeing any slaves, I would do it. If I could save it by freeing all the slaves, I would do it. And if I could do it by freeing some and leaving others alone, I would also do that." As a consequence of the Proclamation, "black regiments" were formed, which did brave work for the Union cause. During the war nearly two hundred thousand colored men fought in the Union ranks.\*

Emancipation  
Proclamation.

38. The force that Burnside commanded was called the Army of the Potomac. Its next commander was General Hooker, known, because of his fearless, soldierly conduct, as "Fighting Joe." With little delay Hooker set out, fully expecting to capture Rich-

Battle  
of  
Chancellorsville.

\* "We remember with what fidelity, for four years, the negro guarded our defenseless women and children, whose husbands and fathers were fighting against his freedom. To his eternal credit be it said that whenever he struck a blow for his own liberty he fought in open battle, and when at last he raised his black and humble hands that the shackles might be struck off, those hands were innocent of wrong against his helpless charges, and worthy to be taken in loving grasp by every man who honors loyalty and devotion."  
—From the speech of Henry W. Grady, *Editor of the Constitution newspaper, Atlanta, Ga., at the annual banquet of the New England Society of New York, December 22, 1886.*

---

37. Repeat all that is said of the Emancipation Proclamation.

38. Who succeeded McClellan in the command? Who succeeded Burnside? Who succeeded Hooker (§ 39)? Give an account of the battle of Chancellorsville. State how that place is located (map 7).



mond, but at Chancellorsville he was utterly defeated by Lee. The slaughter on both sides was terrible. Though the victory was with the Confederates, the death of "Stonewall" Jackson, caused by a mistake on the part of his own men, was looked upon almost as an offset (May 2, 3).

39. Lee's success opened the way a second time for his invasion of the North. With one of the largest and best armies the Confederacy ever put into the field, he crossed the Potomac and marched across Maryland into Pennsylvania. The command of the Union army, which Hooker had given up, was now in the hands of General Meade. At Gettysburg (*get'-tiz-burg*) the two armies met, and a three days' battle, "the most stubborn in modern times," was fought (July 1-3). More than forty-five thousand men were killed or wounded (map 7). It proved to be the turning-point in the war. "Meade won the credit of defeating his enemy, but he lost the chance of destroying him." Lee, defeated, recrossed the Potomac, and was soon safe in Virginia.\*

Battle  
of  
Gettysburg.

\* A little more than four months after, a great concourse of men and women met on this battle-field of Gettysburg to consecrate a part of it as a national cemetery for the remains of the brave soldiers who had fallen. President Lincoln, addressing the sorrowing assemblage, said: "Fourscore and seven years ago our fathers brought forth upon this continent a new nation, conceived in liberty, and dedicated to the proposition that all men are created equal. Now, we are engaged in a great civil war, testing whether that nation, or any nation, so conceived and so dedicated, can long endure. We are met on a great battle-field of that war. We have come to dedicate a portion of that field as a final resting-place for those who here gave their lives that our nation might live. It is fitting that we should do this; but, in a larger sense, we cannot hallow this ground. The brave men, living and dead, who struggled here, have consecrated it far beyond anything we can do. The world will little note, nor long remember, what we *say* here; but it can never forget what they *did* here. It is for us, the living, rather to dedicate ourselves to the unfinished work which they, who fought here, have thus far so nobly

39. Give an account of the battle of Gettysburg. What is said of Meade's lost chance? Of Lee's retreat? Where is Gettysburg (map 7)? What took place there four months later (note)? Repeat Lincoln's speech.

40. Next day, the anniversary of American Independence, the telegraph sent news to the North that gave its people additional cause for celebrating "The Fourth." Lee was defeated; and Vicksburg, the Gibraltar of the West, which had been besieged about two months by Grant, had surrendered on that very fourth of July morning. Port Hudson, the only stronghold on the Mississippi remaining to the Confederates, held out five days longer, when it, too, surrendered. Within the next five days a steamboat, with a cargo of goods, sailed from St. Louis to New Orleans. The great river was open from its source to the gulf.

The  
Mississippi  
Opened.

41. In Tennessee the Union general, Rosecrans (*ro'-ze-krance*), was in command of a force called the Army of the Cumberland. He had won two victories in Mississippi, at Iuka and Corinth; and had fought General Bragg near Murfreesboro, Tennessee, and gained possession of that city (map 5). At Chickamauga he was in turn defeated by that leader, and but for the stand made by General Thomas would have been totally routed (Sept. 20). Rosecrans then fell back to Chattanooga, where Bragg besieged him. While the siege was in progress he was relieved from the command, and succeeded by Thomas. Grant, called from the West to take the com-

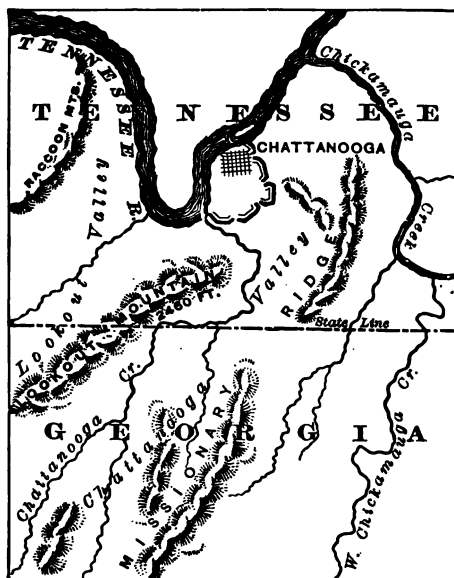
Battles  
in  
Tennessee.

advanced; to consecrate ourselves to the great task remaining; and to gather from the graves of these honored dead increased devotion to that cause for which they gave their lives. Here let us resolve that they shall not have died in vain; that this nation shall, under God, have a new birth of freedom; and that government of the people, by the people, and for the people shall not perish forever from the earth."

40. What was Grant's success at the West? To what did it lead? How is Vicksburg situated (map 5)? Port Hudson?

41. Give an account of Rosecrans's operations. State where Iuka, Corinth, and Murfreesboro are (map 5). What did Thomas accomplish at Chickamauga? What further can you state of that battle? *Ans.* It was fought on Chickamauga Creek (map, p. 318), the object of the Confederates being to regain Chattanooga. Bragg had previously held the town, but on the approach of Rosecrans abandoned it. Give an account of the battle of Chattanooga. Where is Chattanooga? Knoxville?

mand, on his way telegraphed to Thomas to "hold Chattanooga at all hazards." The prompt reply was: "We will



hold the town till we starve." The arrival of troops under Generals Hooker and Sherman put it into Grant's power to make an attack. The Confederates occupied positions on Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge, high hills behind the town. They also had a large force in the valley between these hills. Sherman began the attack in the valley, while

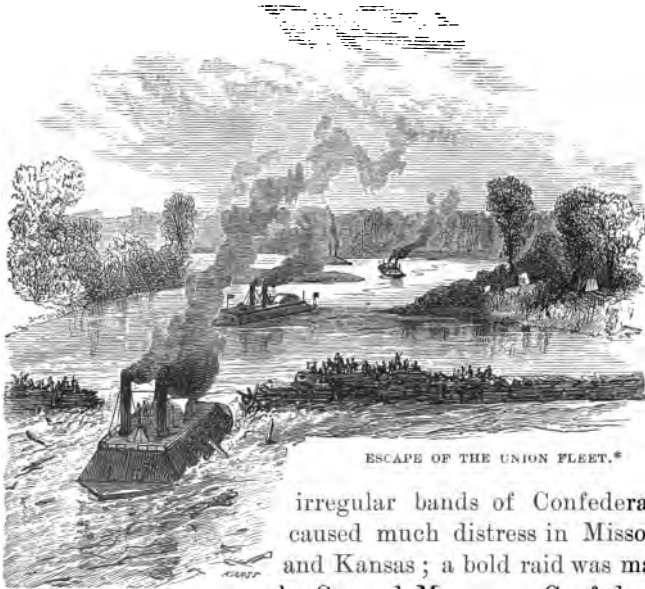
Hooker and Thomas advanced up the hills. With Hooker on Lookout Mountain, "it was a battle above the clouds." The Confederates were driven from every one of their positions and pursued several miles (November 23-26).

42. During the war there were many battles and other events, which the scope of this book will not permit us to notice. We may call them minor events, though some were by no means of small import-

**Minor Events.**

42. What took place at Knoxville? In the city of New York? In Missouri and Kansas? In Indiana and Ohio? How did the raid end? *Ans.* After burning saw-mills and factories, and killing, wounding, and capturing a great many men, Morgan and his force were captured. Give an account of the Red River expedition (note). Into what water does the Red River flow (map 5)? How is Knoxville situated (map 5)?

ance. Burnside repulsed an attack upon him at Knoxville ;



ESCAPE OF THE UNION FLEET.\*

irregular bands of Confederates caused much distress in Missouri and Kansas ; a bold raid was made by General Morgan, a Confederate partisan, into Indiana and Ohio ; and a riot, in opposition to a draft of men for the Union army, occurred in the city of New York. These took place in 1863.

---

\* Early in the following year a Federal expedition was planned to open the Red River region, Louisiana, for trade. To carry out the plan, General Banks commanded a large body of troops, and Admiral Porter sailed up the river with his fleet. Disaster and defeat attended the expedition, its one redeeming feature being a device conceived and carried out by Colonel Bailey, a Wisconsin lumberman. The vessels, in consequence of a fall in the river, were in danger of being captured. By means of a series of dams across the rocks in the river, the water was raised high enough to let the boats pass over the falls, and out of danger. "I do not believe there ever was a case where such difficulties were overcome in such a short space of time, and without any preparations."—*Admiral David D. Porter.*

**Grant in Command.** 43. General Grant had fought his way to the front. President Lincoln, the Federal Congress, and the people of the North, becoming convinced of his eminent worth, the great leader was raised to the position next in military rank to that of the President (March, 1864). His new title was Lieutenant-General. Now, his military authority extending over all the Federal armies, he controlled a greater number of men than had any other general since the invention of fire-arms. All the war movements on the part of the North were thenceforth so united as to be in harmony with his plans. His most able antagonist was General Lee. In a history of the war written by an officer high in rank in the army of the United States, the author says: "A dispassionate judgment places Robert E. Lee among the greatest generals of modern times." (N. 19, Ap., p. 48.)

44. At once Grant planned two campaigns, one against Atlanta, to be commanded by Sherman, the other against Richmond, to be conducted by himself, with Meade next in command (map 5). Atlanta, "the Gate City of the South," was a great railroad center. It was also a supply depot for the armies of the Confederacy. It had foundries and factories, from which were sent guns, shot, and shell.

**Sherman takes Atlanta.** 45. Early in May the two armies were ready to move. "Sitting on a fallen tree, Grant telegraphed to Sherman to advance." Sherman's march was begun in Tennessee. It was disputed by General Joseph E. Johnston, but in vain. Sherman won battles, and drove his adversary from one position to another, till, in July, he was not far from Atlanta. The Confederate Govern-

---

43. To what position was General Grant promoted? Why? Who had held that position before? *Ans.* No one but Washington. Scott held it by brevet only. Who is at the head of the army and navy (Appendix, p. 22)? What is said of General Lee?

44. What plan of action did Grant devise? What is said of Atlanta? How is Atlanta located (map 5)?

45. Give an account of Sherman's battles and capture of Atlanta. What change of Confederate commanders took place?

ment, disliking what was called "Johnston's retreating policy," gave his command to General Hood, who at once began a series of furious assaults. Again and again Hood was defeated, and finally compelled to abandon the city (September 2). "Atlanta is ours and fairly won," telegraphed Sherman; and Lincoln, in reply, sent a letter of thanks. "The campaign against Atlanta," said Grant, "will rank among the most memorable in history."

46. When Sherman began his march against Atlanta, Grant began his against Richmond. The capture of Richmond was not the first aim of Grant. "His object was to hammer at the Confederate army until he broke it to pieces." This, he knew, was not an easy thing to do. His antagonist was General Lee. The Battle of the Wilderness (May 5, 6) began a series of terrible battles in which Grant lost about sixty thousand men. While these battles were in progress, Grant, not daunted by ill-success, wrote to Edwin M. Stanton, Lincoln's Secretary of War: "I propose to fight it out on this line if it takes all summer." His troops often outnumbered his adversary's, but the latter "were on the defensive, and in a country in which every stream, every road, every obstacle to the movement of troops, and every natural defense were familiar to them." The end of June found Lee in strong positions before Petersburg and Richmond. There, till April of the following year, he was ever on the alert to anticipate every movement made by Grant.

Grant against  
Richmond.

47. During all this time, however, Lee was not unmindful of opportunities in other directions. The valley of the Shenandoah being open, he sent General Early to make a raid through it into Maryland and Pennsylvania. He hoped that the expedition would capture

Sheridan in  
Shenandoah  
Valley.

46. Give an account of Grant's march, his battles, and famous message.

47. Give an account of Early's invasion and his success in Maryland. Of his encounters with Sheridan. How is Chambersburg located (map 7)? What took place there?

Washington. In Maryland Early defeated a force sent against him from Baltimore; and a detachment of his army, invading Pennsylvania, set fire to Chambersburg, and most of the town was destroyed (July 30). Recrossing the Potomac, Early met his master. Grant had hurried off troops to the valley, placing General Sheridan over them. At Winchester, Sheridan routed the Confederates (September 19); and, three days later, routed them again, pursuing them several miles. About a month later Early turned about, and, while Sheridan was absent, drove the Union troops from their position. Sheridan, who had heard the firing, rode rapidly to the scene, rallied his men, charged the Confederates, and for the third time routed them (October 19). No Confederate force after that marched through the valley to invade the North.

**48.** The Alabama steamship, the terror of Northern commerce, commanded by Captain Semmes (*semz*), had been cruising nearly two years (§ 23). She had captured about seventy vessels, and destroyed the most of them by fire. The steamship Kearsarge (*keer'-sargj*), Captain Winslow, went in pursuit of her. Off the northern coast of France the two ships met, and in less than two hours the Alabama was sunk (June 19). The Confederate captain and forty of his crew were taken out of the water by a British yacht. By the rules of war it was the duty of the yacht to deliver the rescued men to the Kearsarge; instead of doing so she steamed away as fast as possible, and landed them on the English coast (§64).\*

Naval  
Operations.

---

\* "This Sunday naval duel was fought in the presence of more than fifteen thousand spectators, who, upon the heights of Cherbourg (*shair-boor*), France, and places in the vicinity, witnessed the last of the Alabama. An excursion train from Paris arrived in the morning, bringing hundreds of pleasure-seekers, who were unexpectedly favored with the spectacle of a sea-fight."—*John M. Browne.*

49. Not many days after, the Union navy scored another success. Admiral Farragut attacked the two forts at the entrance of Mobile Bay, forced an entrance into the bay, and gained a complete victory over a fleet of gunboats and an iron-clad ram resembling the Monitor's famous antagonist (August 5). During most of the fight he stood on the main-top of his flag-ship, the Hartford, that he might be able clearly to observe and direct the movements of his fleet. There he was lashed to the rigging. That famous ship, the Virginia, was no more. Fearing that she would fall into the hands of her enemies, the Confederates blew her up (May 11, 1862).



50. Sherman remained in Atlanta till the middle of November (1864). He was then ready to begin a march across Georgia to Savannah. By his orders every inhabitant of Atlanta had been compelled to leave the city; and everything, except the churches and a few dwellings, had been blown up or torn down. No city during the war was so nearly ruined. Now the Confederates could have but little motive for attempting to recapture it. It was worthless for military purposes. Thomas had been sent into Tennessee to watch Hood. When Sherman was well on his way from Atlanta, this "Rock of Chickamauga," Thomas (§ 41), who never lost a battle, waited at Nashville for his adversary. At Franklin, Hood overtook and attacked General Schofield, commanding a part of Thomas's army, but was repulsed with heavy loss (November 30). Schofield then joined Thomas. Hood following, invested Nashville. Now Thomas was ready to strike. The battle began on the 15th of De-

Atlanta  
Destroyed.

Battle  
of  
Nashville.

49. Give an account of Farragut's success. Where was Farragut during the contest? What became of the fighting ship Virginia?

50. What injury did Sherman inflict upon Atlanta? Give an account of Hood's two defeats. How is Nashville located (map 5)? Franklin?



ember. It ended in darkness on the 16th. The Confederates were defeated at every point, and their army was destroyed.

51. Sherman's army marched in four columns, leaving a waste track forty miles wide in their rear. It was a march to the sea. Two scouts were sent to communicate with the fleet at the mouth of the Savannah. It was a hazardous enterprise. Hiding in the rice swamps by day, and paddling down the river by night, they accomplished the task; and

Sherman's  
March  
to the Sea.



thus gave the first direct news of Sherman since his departure from Atlanta. Fort McAllister, which guarded Savannah, and in previous months had resisted several attacks from the sea, was now carried by assault in twenty minutes from the land (December 13). The city held out a few days. Its defenders fearing capture, escaped at night, and next morning it

was occupied by the Union troops (December 21). Sherman, sending a report to the President, said: "I beg to present to you as a Christmas gift the city of Savannah."

52. Sherman's next plan was to march northward, so as to co-operate with Grant against Richmond. On the 1st of February, 1865, he left Savannah. On the 17th, Columbia, South Carolina's capital, surrendered to him. The news of this reaching Charleston, the Confederate troops there, knowing that they would be captured if they did not leave at once, made a hasty retreat.

Sherman's  
March  
Northward.

51. Give an account of Sherman's march to the sea. Where is Savannah (map 5)? Fort McAllister?

52. Give an account of Sherman's march northward, its success, and consequences. Where is Columbia (map 5)? Charleston?

Union soldiers, from an island in Charleston harbor, entered the city, and the national flag was raised over the heap of stones that still went by the name Fort Sumter. The ruin of the fort had been effected the previous year by Union ships and batteries. Sherman pressed forward, and in North Carolina defeated an army commanded by General Joseph E. Johnston (March, 1865).

53. The end was near. It was evident to Lee that if he did not abandon Richmond, he would be captured. He therefore decided to join Johnston. Anticipating this, Grant ordered a general movement forward. Sheridan's advance led to the battle of Five Forks and to a victory for Sheridan (April 1). Two days later, in the early morning, a negro ran from Richmond to inform the Union troops that Lee's soldiers were leaving the city in great haste. Before noon the United States flag was floating over the Confederate capital.

End  
of the War.

54. The retreating troops were hotly pursued. There was no rest for them by day or by night. They had not a mouthful to eat, except some parched corn and what they were able to gather in dribblets along the road. They were glad to get even the buds of the forest trees. Federal soldiers were on their right, on their left, and on their rear. Sheridan's cavalry was near to cut off their advance. If they could gain the mountains they could prolong the war and be able to command favorable terms for the Confederacy. But they were near the end of their efforts. They were overtaken, and at Appomattox Court-House their faithful commander, General Lee, surrendered to General Grant (April 9), and in heartfelt words to his brave troops, said: "Men! we have

---

53. Give an account of Lee's retreat. Sheridan's victory, and the fate of Richmond.

54. Give an account of the pursuit of Lee, his surrender, and Grant's terms. Where is Appomattox Court-House (map 7)?

55. What is said of the rejoicing at the North? Of Lincoln's words? Who was the Secretary of War during most of Lincoln's administration (§ 46)?

fought through this war together. I have done the best I could for you." Not ten thousand of his men had muskets in their hands. Desertion, and losses by capture two days before, had reduced his army to about twenty-eight thousand men. These were paroled. Grant supplied them with food, and, allowing them to keep their horses, remarked: "They will need them for their spring plowing and other farm work." \*

55. On every side at the North were signs of gladness. Houses were illuminated, flags were waved, bells were rung, and guns were fired; but this great joy was soon and suddenly turned into mourning. Lincoln had been elected for a second term. Entering upon it (March 4, 1865), he said: "With malice toward none, with charity for all, with firmness in the right, let us finish the work we are in." More than half a million of men had laid down their lives in the war, three hundred thousand of them in defending the Union.

56. Four days had passed since the surrender of Lee. On the evening of the fifth day, Lincoln, accompanied by his wife, went to a theater in Washington and took a seat in a box overlooking the stage. An obscure actor stealthily entered the box, placed a pistol at the back of the President's head and fired. The assassin then leaped to the stage, and, brandishing a dagger, shouted "Sic semper tyrannis! the South is avenged." So saying, he rushed from the building. The dying President spoke not a word. In unconsciousness he lingered till morning, and then passed away (April 15, 1865).

57. The assassin was the leader in a small band of conspirators, one of whom at the very hour his chief was committing

---

\* "On this occasion Grant exhibited the greatest magnanimity. He declined to receive Lee's sword, and in his capitulation paroled him and his Confederates."—*Alex. H. Stephens, Vice-President of the Confederacy.*

---

56. Give the facts connected with Lincoln's death.

57. What is said of the assassins, their trial, and fate?

the terrible crime in the theater, forced his way into the home and to the bedside of Mr. Seward, the Secretary of State, and tried to kill him. The chief conspirator eluded pursuit for a few days. Being tracked to his hiding-place and refusing to surrender, he was shot. Eight persons were charged with being in the plot, and tried. The verdict was against four of them, including a woman, and they were hanged.

58. For the third time in the history of the United States, the Vice-President, by the death of the President, succeeded to the highest office. Andrew Johnson, of Tennessee, was now the President. The people, however, were slow to put aside their grief. The image of the wise, earnest, kind Lincoln was in their hearts. During many days their houses were draped in mourning ; and though the news of the surrender of Johnston (April 26) and of the capture of Davis (May 10) reached them, they would not be comforted.\*



ANDREW JOHNSON.

59. Congress had passed the Thirteenth Amendment to the

\* Davis fled to Georgia, was captured, and, after a long confinement in Fortress Monroe, was released. About twenty days before his capture he received a telegram announcing that Lincoln had been assassinated. This is what he says : " An influential citizen was standing near me at the time. After remarking to him in a low voice that I had received sad intelligence, I handed the telegram to him. \* \* \* The man who invented the story of my having read the dispatch with exultation, had free scope for his imagination. \* \* \* In view of its political consequences, it could not be regarded otherwise than as a great misfortune to the South."—*Davis's Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government.*

58. Who succeeded Lincoln in the presidency ? What is said of General Johnston and Jefferson Davis ? What information does the note contain ?

59. What was meant by the Reconstruction of the States ? What was the object of the Thirteenth Amendment ? Give its history,

Constitution, forbidding slavery in the land, and had sent it to the States for ratification. In the course of the year it was adopted by a sufficient number of States to make it a part of the Constitution. Now, the war being ended, the new condition of affairs must be met. As fast as possible the Union must be restored to its former condition, slavery excepted. This was called Reconstruction. How should this be done? In a certain way, thought Congress; in another way, thought the President. Congress was Republican. As Johnson had been elected Vice-President by Republicans, he was supposed to be in full accord with them.

**Reconstruction of the Union.** 60. Day by day Congress made progress in the direction of reconstruction, not, however, without stubborn opposition from the President. The latter held that the States in the late Confederacy had never been out of the Union, hence that representatives sent from them to Congress should be admitted into that body at once. Congress, not disputing the first part of this assertion, insisted as evidence of good faith on the part of such States that the negroes, including the former slaves, should be citizens of the United States, with the same right to vote that other citizens possessed. This led to the adoption by Congress and the States of two more amendments to the Constitution, the Fourteenth and the Fifteenth, and completed the legislation, so far as the Constitution goes, in relation to slavery. The Thirteenth Amendment emancipated the slaves, the Fourteenth made them citizens, and the Fifteenth gave them the right to vote (Appendix, p. 30).

61. So opposed was the President to the stand taken by Congress that he did not hesitate to call it a New Rebellion. The breach between him and Congress grew wider until the

---

60. Give an account of the dispute between Congress and President Johnson. What is said of the three amendments to the Constitution?

61. Give an account of the impeachment and trial of the President.

House of Representatives, believing that he had been guilty of acts contrary to law, impeached him. He was tried before the Senate, as provided by the Constitution (Appendix, p. 12). At the end of two months a vote was taken on some of the charges. A large majority of the Senators, but not two-thirds, were in favor of conviction. The Constitution says that "no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present." It being evident that so many would not vote against the President, the Senate as a court adjourned (May, 1868).

62. While Lincoln was President a part of the territory acquired from Mexico in 1848 (map 6) was admitted to the Union as the State of Nevada (1864). More than two years later, Johnson then being President, a part of the Louisiana Purchase was admitted as the State of Nebraska (1867). In the same year the territorial property of the United States was increased by the purchase of Alaska (map 8). This vast tract, larger by far than the thirteen original States, was bought of Russia for seven million two hundred thousand dollars. At first the American people looked upon the far-off region as nothing but rocks and ice. In derision, they called it "Seward's Purchase," Mr. Seward, as Secretary of State, having favored the bargain. Soon they began to know that its waters swarmed with fish, that millions of seals valuable for their furs resorted to its islands, and that its forests would furnish timber when all the near forests had been exhausted.

Nevada, Nebraska, and Alaska.
-------------------------------------

#### GRANT'S ADMINISTRATION.

63. General Grant, nominated by the Republican party for President, was elected by a large majority; and, on the

---

62. What is said of Nevada? Nebraska? Alaska? What are the boundaries of Alaska (map 8)?

63. What is said of Grant's election? Of Texas? Of Reconstruction?

4th of March, 1869, began his administration. Texas was the last State to accept the amendments to the Constitution, and, consequently, to be admitted to representation in Congress. The Reconstruction of the Union was then complete (1870).

**64.** And now the day of settlement with Great Britain could no longer be put off. There were several causes for just complaint, but overshadowing all others was the injury done to American commerce by the Alabama and other cruisers built in English ship-yards (§ 48). At length a treaty was concluded in the city of Washington, hence known as the Washington Treaty, for the settlement by arbitration of all causes of difference between the two countries (1871). Under this treaty, five arbitrators—one from each of the countries, Italy, Switzerland, Brazil, Great Britain, and the United States—met in Geneva, Switzerland, 1872. They had full authority to examine all the claims for losses inflicted by the Alabama and her English-built consorts, and to determine the damage. Their award amounted to fifteen and a half million dollars; and that sum was promptly paid by the British Government.



Next came the settlement of the dispute commonly known as the San Juan Question, respecting the northwestern boundary line (§ 6). This line, leaving the 49th parallel, bends southward around Vancouver Island, but the exact location of the bend was in doubt. The question was referred to the Emperor of Germany, who decided that the claim put forth by the United States was perfectly right (1872).

**64.** What was the Washington Treaty? State fully how the Alabama claims were settled. The San Juan dispute.

65. To settle the dispute respecting the right to fish off Newfoundland and its neighboring waters was not so easy. In order to understand that dispute we must go back to the treaty that ended our first war with England. The decision then reached gave to the people of the United States the right to fish in "all the sea waters" in and about the British possessions in North America (p. 201). From that time till 1814 there was no dispute concerning that right. When negotiations were carried on in 1814 to end our second war with England, the British commissioners, asserting that "all treaties are put to an end by a subsequent war between the two parties," maintained that this second war had destroyed all the fishing rights conceded to us by the first treaty. As the American commissioners would not assent to this doctrine no mention whatever was made of the subject in the new treaty (p. 257).



ULYSSES S. GRANT.

66. In consequence of this neglect the old controversy was soon revived. In 1818 a treaty was concluded which gave to the people of the United States the right to fish as formerly, but only outside of three miles from the land of the British domain. This, we see, was a concession to British demands. Our fishermen were observing the terms of this new treaty in good faith when their vessels in the fishing waters were molested and even seized. In 1845 another treaty was made, but, as it was not satisfactory to our fishermen, it was terminated twelve years later. This brings us to the Washington Treaty

---

65. Repeat what is said of the fishery dispute to the close of 1814.

66. Give the further history of that dispute.



of 1871, which provided for the formation of a commission of three persons to settle the dispute (§ 64). After a delay of six years one commissioner was appointed by President Grant, one by Queen Victoria, and one by the Emperor of Austria. By a majority vote, the American commissioner dissenting, it was decided that a treaty should be made for twelve years, during which time our fishermen should be allowed to fish as formerly ; but that for this privilege the United States should pay the sum of five and a half million dollars. This was at the rate of nearly four hundred and sixty thousand dollars a year. Though the award was known by our government to be far too much, the amount was paid (1878), and the dispute set aside for a time.

67. General Grant was the candidate of the Republicans for a second term, his competitor being Horace Greeley, "a distinguished journalist and leader of public opinion." Grant was elected (1872).\* In this second term occurred the centennial of the nation's birth (1876). One hundred years before, in Philadelphia's Old State House, the United States were declared to be free and independent. It was therefore fitting that in the Quaker City the centenary event should receive special attention. In that city's great park nearly two hundred buildings were erected, in which was held a World's Fair. Products from the farm and workshop of every State in the Union and from every important foreign country were exhibited in great profusion. Works of art, and other articles

The  
Nation's  
Centennial.

---

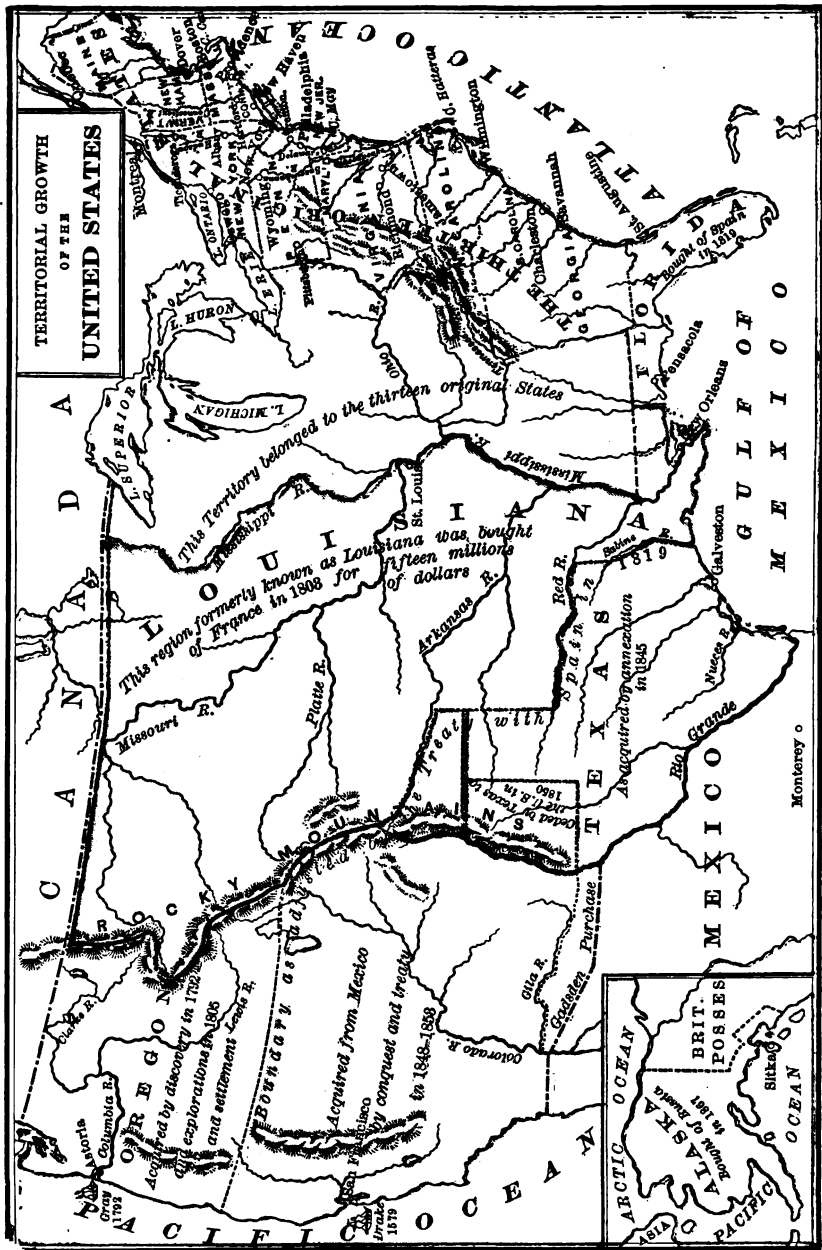
\* Greeley was nominated by Republicans who did not like Grant's administration. He was also nominated by a Democratic convention. Before the result was officially known, he died. The death of his wife, at whose bedside he had long watched day and night, added to the excitement and strain to which he had been subjected during the election canvass, broke him down.

---

67. What is said of Grant's second election ? What is said of Greeley (note) ? Of the nation's centennial ? Of the World's Fair ?



**MAP No. 8.**



designed to show the world's progress in science and education, were also exhibited. The fair was open six months, during which time ten million persons visited it.

68. The growth of the United States in population had been truly marvelous. In the first year (1776) the number of inhabitants did not reach three millions. Fourteen years later, when the first census was taken, it was four millions. The census taken in 1870 showed a population little short of thirty-nine millions. Many thousands of these had come from Ireland, Germany, the British Isle, France, Italy, and other countries of Europe. Even far-off Asia was beginning to send the unwelcome Chinaman to our Pacific coast. The original territory covered an area of 600,000 square miles. With the acquisitions since made, we now have 3,600,000 square miles. Colorado, "The Rocky Mountain Sister," has just become a member of the Union (map 6), earning for herself the title of the Centennial State, and raising the number of States to thirty-eight (1876).\*

<p>Growth of the Nation.</p>
--------------------------------------

69. It may justly be claimed that the discoveries of Franklin were among the important beginnings that led to the

---

\* There were several Indian troubles during Grant's administration. The Modocs, in Southern Oregon, refusing to go to a reservation set apart for them, massacred settlers, made war upon United States troops, and killed two peace commissioners sent to them. They found protection in the underground passages, miles in extent, among the lava beds of the volcanic region. Not till after a year's fighting were they subdued (1873). Three years later the Sioux (*sawz*), who had formally been hostile and killed hundreds of settlers, and then had become peaceful, renewed hostilities. General Custer, with only a cavalry regiment, suddenly came upon the whole tribe in Montana, and, rashly making an attack, he and all his men were killed. Other troops soon arriving, the Indians were pursued, and the few not captured escaped into British America.

---

68. What is said of the growth of the nation? What is said of Colorado? Of the Modoc War (note)? Of Custer's defeat?

69. What is said of Dr. Franklin's discovery? Of the cotton-gin? Of the sewing machine? Of the printing-press?

electro-magnetic telegraph (p. 204). In 1752 he made the memorable experiment that immortalized him. "He flew

**Inventors.**

his kite to the thunder clouds, practically asking the lightning whether or not it was electricity. The lightning came down the wetted twine to his hand, and proclaimed its identity." The cotton-gin, as we have seen,



ELIAS HOWE, JR.

was the invention of an American (p. 223). The name of Elias Howe is inseparably connected with the invention of the sewing-machine. American ingenuity has also brought the printing-press to its present wonder-working condition. In great newspaper establishments the cylinder, with its type face, has taken the place of the flat plate with its type form. It is not easy to see how the

great demand for newspapers could be met without this invention. The paper to be printed upon comes to the press in immense rolls, it being wound on a core just as silk ribbon is wound on a spool. The ribbon of paper is from four to five miles long. This the machine unwinds, prints on both sides, cuts and folds for mailing—all at the rate of eighteen thousand copies an hour. Five newspapers every second!

70. In this jubilee year, 1876, eight thousand magazines and newspapers are published, beside many thousand books and pamphlets. Nearly fifteen thousand books, big and little, are entered for copyright. Edgar Allen Poe, romancer and poet; William H. Prescott, a brilliant and artistic historian; J. Fenimore Cooper, author of novels

**Writers.**

70. What is said of magazines, books, and newspapers? Of Edgar Allen Poe Of Prescott? Of Cooper? Of Irving? Of Hawthorne? Of Simms?

intensely American in spirit, scenery, and characters; Washington Irving, "the father of American literature," the earliest classic and most popular American writer of his day; Nathaniel Hawthorne, one of the great modern masters of English prose; and William Gilmore Simms, whose brain produced fifty historic novels in twenty years;—these, all these, with others of note, have dropped their pens, and taken their places "in the silent halls of death." (N. 5, Ap., p. 43.)

71. We have still with us, in this year of rejoicing, a number of writers for whom we may justly claim a place with the most celebrated of all countries. Among our eminent historians are John L. Motley, John G. Palfrey, George Bancroft, and Francis Parkman. Motley is the author of the best history of Holland. Palfrey has written the most complete *History of New England*. Bancroft's great work is the standard *History of the United States*. "Parts of it," says an able critic, "may be reckoned among the most splendid in all historical literature." Parkman's volumes, under the general title of *France and England in America*, exhibit a charming combination of the talents of the historian with those of the novelist.

72. Of our poets we may also be justly proud. William C. Bryant's *Thanatopsis*, the English poet, Wordsworth, learned by heart, and often repeated. Henry W. Longfellow's *Evangeline*, his *Hiawatha*, and his minor poems, have, it is thought, made him the most popular poet in the land (p. 113). "The Quaker Poet," John G. Whittier, contends with Longfellow for the palm of popularity. "If Garrison may be considered the prophet of anti-slavery (p. 275), Wendell Phillips its orator, Mrs. Stowe its novelist (§ 73), and Charles Sumner its statesman, there can be no doubt that Whittier was its poet." Washington Allston, the greatest of American painters, is also a graceful poet. Said

---

71. What is said of Motley? Of Palfrey? Of Bancroft? Of Parkman?

72. What is said of Bryant? Longfellow? Whittier? Mrs. Stowe? Allston?

Edwin P. Whipple, "the best critic America has produced," "We cannot see that the American poet is one whit inferior to his accomplished English contemporary in tenderness, grace, and ideal charm." (Note 24, App., p. 50.)

73. Ralph Waldo Emerson, poet and essayist, "is the most incisive writer and the most original thinker in America." Oliver Wendell Holmes, as a writer of songs and lyrics, both humorous and serious, stands in the first rank. His novels and his magazine contributions are also of the highest order. The works of James Russell Lowell overflow with wit, fancy, and imagination. Harriet Beecher Stowe, of whom we have just spoken, is best known by her *Uncle Tom's Cabin*, the most widely circulated novel ever published in our country. It was a story of life at the South, intended to show the wrongs of slavery. By its appeal to the heart and imagination of the people, it overturned every argument on the other side of the question. It was one of the great agents that built up the Republican party and put Lincoln into the presidential chair (§§ 1, 2, 8).

74. The speeches of many of our great orators have not been preserved. Of the orations of Otis, which were described as "flames of fire," we have only meager reports (p. 144). We judge of the eloquence of Patrick Henry by the history of its effects (p. 144). The passionate appeals of John Adams, "which moved his hearers from their seats," are not in print (p. 161). Of the great orators of later days, Webster, Clay, Calhoun, Everett, and others, the reporter's skill and the newspaper's enterprise give us the means of forming correct opinions.

#### ADMINISTRATIONS OF HAYES, GARFIELD, AND ARTHUR.

75. The canvass for the next election for President took place in the latter half of this centennial year. The Repub-

73. What is said of Emerson ? Holmes ? Lowell ? *Uncle Tom's Cabin* ?

74. What is said of Otis ? Henry ? John Adams ? Webster ? Clay ? Calhoun ?

75. Give an account of the twenty-second election for President.

licans nominated Rutherford B. Hayes, of Ohio. The Democrats put in nomination Samuel J. Tilden, of New York. As all the Southern States took part in the election, and as many Republicans were not satisfied with their party managers, the contest was not so one-sided as before.

76. In several States the vote was so close as to give rise to serious disputes. These Congress agreed to refer to a commission consisting of Senators, Representatives, and Judges of the Supreme Court. The decision was in favor of Hayes, who, next day, March 3, 1877, took the oath of office. The following day was Sun-



RUTHERFORD B. HAYES.

day. On Monday the inaugural ceremonies took place in the open air in the presence of many thousand persons. The new President had been a general in the Union army in the late Civil War, and was afterward a member of Congress, and Governor of Ohio. One of his first acts as President was to relieve the South from the presence of Federal troops. These had been sent to protect the authorities in the work of reconstruction. All the States of the South were now in the full enjoyment of their rights as before the Civil War.

77. While that war was in progress, the banks as well as the government found that they did not have enough gold and silver money to meet the extraordinary demands upon them. They were, therefore, com-

Money Affairs.

76. What disputes grew out of that election, and how were they settled? What was one of the first acts of President Hayes? What did it accomplish?

77. What is said of the greenbacks, and fluctuating value of paper money?



pelled to stop making "specie payments," and, instead, to issue "paper money." These money notes of the government, being printed with green ink, came to be known as "greenbacks." They were freely used by the people, for they were a "legal-tender," that is, the law made them valid in the payment of debts. Gold, however, was regarded as the standard of value. Its value, as compared with the value of the notes, became very great. In the darkest hour of the war, two hundred and ninety dollars in paper could purchase only one hundred of gold. Gradually the difference in the two values became less. On the 1st of January, 1879, it was nothing, for on that day the government and the banks resumed specie payments. A paper dollar again bought as much as a gold dollar. (Read note 45, Appendix, p. 58.)

78. In one respect a great convenience had been secured. The government had established a system of National Banks. Before the war the bills issued by a bank were generally used only in its neighborhood. Nobody at a distance would take them, except at a discount. After the National Banks came into existence, their bills were received in every part of the land, and are so received at the present day.

79. Not the least important act of Hayes's administration was the making of a treaty with China. In California and other parts of the West a feeling of alarm had for some time existed because of the rapidly increasing immigration of Chinese. The new-comers were employed in building railroads, in working mines, and in many other ways. As they worked for small wages, they deprived American workmen of employment, except, as was asserted, "at starvation rates." Said Americans there: "The Chinese injure our country. They come here as seekers after the golden fleece. They acquire all the trades, and drive us out by underselling. They do not come here to stay. They

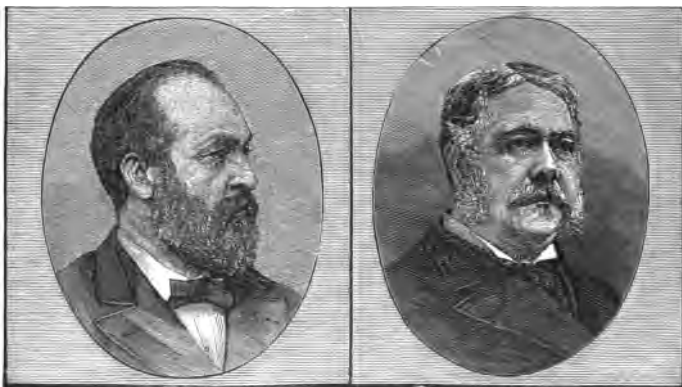
Treaty  
with China.

78. Explain the money conveniences now enjoyed.

79. What treaty was made with China, why was it made, and what are its effects?

do not become citizens. They get what they can and go back to their own country to spend it." The treaty with China puts it into the power of our government to check the emigration of the Chinese to our shores.

80. The twentieth President was James A. Garfield, of Ohio. This new President, affectionately called the "Teacher



JAMES A. GARFIELD.

CHESTER A. ARTHUR.

President," was a typical American. His early boyhood was spent on a farm. Later, he earned his bread by working in a carpenter shop, by chopping wood, and by driving horses on the canal towpath. His great ambition was to obtain a college education. At the age of eighteen he was a school-teacher, at twenty-five a college professor. Within the next six years he came to be in succession a college president, a State Senator, a general in the Union army during the Civil War, and a member of Congress. Now, on the 4th of March, 1881, he was the President of the United States.\*

\* His election was a Republican triumph. His competitor was General Winfield Scott Hancock, who won distinction in the Mexican War, and, for his good conduct at Gettysburg (§ 39), in which battle he was severely wounded, was awarded the thanks of Congress. He died in 1886.

80. Who succeeded Hayes as President? Repeat what is stated of Garfield's previous life. Of Hancock (note).

81. Less than four months later he accepted an invitation to visit friends in New England. With no thought of danger he reached the railroad station, when, without the least warning, he was shot down by a disappointed office-seeker. The wounded man was carried back to the White House, and there, more than two months, was tenderly cared for. Then, in the hope that a change of air would effect a change for the better in his condition, he was removed to Elberon, near Long Branch, a summer resort in New Jersey, on the Atlantic coast. It was all in vain. On the 19th of September he died. Not only did the people of his own land mourn. From every part of the civilized world came words of sympathy to the grief-stricken men and women of America. Never before was sorrow so universal.\*

82. As provided by the Constitution, the Vice-President, Chester A. Arthur, of New York, became the President. It is recorded of him that he was the only Vice-President, who, having succeeded to the presidency by the death of the President, did not disappoint those by whom he was elected. Just a month after he entered the White House, the centennial of the surrender of Cornwallis was celebrated at Yorktown (p. 199). Among the distinguished guests who honored the occasion with their presence were descendants of Lafayette and of other European soldiers, German as well as French, who at that place a hundred years before had periled their lives to win freedom for America.

Arthur as President.
----------------------------

#### CLEVELAND'S ADMINISTRATION.

83. The next presidential election was the twenty-fifth.

\* Guiteau, the assassin, was tried, convicted, and hanged (June 30, 1882).

81. State all the circumstances attending the death of Garfield. What became of the assassin (note)?

82. Who succeeded Garfield as President? What is said of the Yorktown celebration? Where is Yorktown (map 7)? State what took place there a hundred years before (p. 199).

83. What is said of the twenty-fifth presidential election and its result? When did Cleveland's term begin?

It took place in the fall of 1884. The candidate of the Republicans was James G. Blaine, of Maine; that of the Democrats was Grover Cleveland, Governor of the State of New York. The Temperance, or Prohibition party, opposed to the "liquor traffic," had also a candidate. Cleveland was elected, and, on the 4th of March, 1885, began his administration. Fifteen months later he was married, the ceremony being performed in the White House. Other weddings had taken place in that building, but this was the first there of a President. Queen Victoria sent "congratulations and good wishes."



GROVER CLEVELAND.

84. In the summer of this year, 1885, an event occurred which threw the people in every part of the country into mourning. This was the death of General Grant.\* From Mount MacGregor, near Saratoga Springs, where the hero died (July 23), his remains were conveyed to the city of New York, and, in solemn procession, were taken to Riverside Park, overlooking the Hudson. The procession numbered not less than fifty thousand men. In it were the President and two ex-Presidents of the United States, and representatives from every part of the Union and from distant lands. "He was a great soldier, a faithful pub-

Death of  
General Grant.

\* "He passed away quietly without a groan or a shudder, with no one but his wife and children and medical attendants by his side. He had done most of the great things of his life with calmness and composure, and in the same way he entered the long procession in which Alexander and Cæsar and Wellington and Napoleon had preceded him."—*Adam Badeau*.

84. What is said of the death, funeral, and character of Grant?

lic servant, a devoted defender of public faith, and a sincere patriot."



STATUE OF LIBERTY.

85. On Bedlow's Island, in the harbor of New York, is a Statue of Liberty, the largest statue in all America if not in all the world. It was the gift of the people of France to the people of the United States. Its "inauguration" took place on the 28th of October, 1886, amid a scene of great rejoicing. National ships and hundreds of other craft encircled the little island, and, with voice of gun and steam-whistle, joined in the glad demonstration. In the presence of a multitude of persons gathered at the foot of the statue, the formal presentation was made by that enterprising and untiring Frenchman, Count de Lesseps, the planner of

the Suez Canal route to India. The gift was accepted for the United States by President Cleveland. Said one of the orators: "We dedicate this statue to the friendship of nations and the peace of the world." (Read note 46, Appendix, p. 58.)

Statue  
of  
Liberty.

85. What is said of the Statue of Liberty? Where is Bedlow's Island?

**86.** Under the treaty made with China in 1880 (§ 79), laws were made to check the coming of the natives of that country to our shores. Still they came in large numbers, very much against the wishes of the people of California and other western States. A more stringent law being demanded, Congress declared that "it shall be unlawful for any Chinese person, whether a subject of China or of any other power, to enter the United States" (September, 1888). From this exclusion, "Chinese officials, teachers, students, merchants, or travelers for pleasure or curiosity," were excepted. These persons, the law said, "shall be permitted to enter the United States, they having first obtained the permission of the Chinese government or other government of which they may at the time be citizens or subjects." A supplementary act declares that all Chinese laborers, both skilled and unskilled, who have resided in this country and left it, shall not be permitted to return to it.

The Unwelcome  
Chinese.

#### ADMINISTRATION OF BENJAMIN HARRISON.

**87.** The Democratic Convention of 1888 nominated President Cleveland for a second term, associating with him the veteran statesman Allen G. Thurman, of Ohio, as a candidate for the Vice-Presidency. The Republican candidate for President was Benjamin Harrison, of Indiana, grandson of the ninth President (p. 272). He had obtained distinction as a general in the great Civil War, and had served as a member of the Senate of the United States. Levi P. Morton, of New York, was the Republican candidate for the Vice-Presidency. The Prohi-

Twenty-sixth  
Presidential  
Election.

**86.** What treaty was made in 1880? What objections were made against the Chinese at that time? What stringent law was passed in 1888? How was the law afterward made more stringent?

**87.** How many of the people's elections for President had there been up to the year 1888? How many Presidents had there been up to that time (App., p. 38)? How do you explain the fact that there were fewer Presidents than elections? What parties nominated candidates for President and Vice-President in 1888? Who were nominated? What can you state of the ancestors of Harrison (pp. 241, 250, 272, App. 6)? What were the leading questions at issue in the contest of 1888?

bition Party, opposed to the "manufacture, importation, exportation, transportation, and sale of alcoholic beverages;" and the Union Labor Party, "opposed to land monopoly in every form," and in favor of the "limitation of land ownership," also had candidates.

88. The canvass was an unusually exciting one. The chief question at issue between the Democrats and the Republicans concerned the tariff. The former favored certain changes which the latter opposed as being injurious to the Protective System (§ 109, p. 269). The election by the people took place on the 6th of November, 1888. Electors were then chosen (App., p. 20). On the 14th of January, 1889, the electors so chosen cast their votes for President and Vice-President. About a month later, February 13th, these votes were counted in the hall of



BENJAMIN HARRISON.

the House of Representatives in the presence of both Houses of Congress, when it was found that of the whole number for President, 401, Harrison had received 233, and Cleveland 168; and that of the whole number for Vice-President, 401, Morton had received 233, and Thurman 168.\*

\* The law prescribing the manner in which the electoral vote shall be counted was passed after the election of 1884. It requires that the envelopes containing the certificates of election from the several bodies of State electors, called electoral colleges, shall be opened by the President of the Senate in the presence of both Houses of Congress, and the result announced by him. The death of Thomas A. Hendricks, Vice-President of the United States, and President of the Senate, November 25, 1885, made it necessary for the Senate to choose a President *pro tem.* of that body (App., p. 12), and by him the envelopes were opened and the result announced.

88. What is said about the tariff? When was the first tariff law under the Constitution passed? (See § 6, p. 215. It was the second law enacted under the Constitution, and was approved by President Washington on the 4th of July, 1789.) What further can you state of the tariff legislation of Congress (pp. 241, 269, 271)? Describe the process by which Harrison was elected President and the votes counted for him.

89. Though a great rain storm prevailed in Washington during Inauguration Day, 30,000 persons stood in the open space before the east side of the Capitol to witness the inaugural ceremony. In the presence of the people under umbrellas Harrison took the oath of office, and delivered an address remarkable for simplicity, dignity, and moderation (March 4, 1889).

90. One part of the address had reference to "a shorter way between our eastern and our western sea-boards." During the preceding seven years a French company, with the aged Count de Lesseps, the "Napoleon of the Shovel," at its head (§ 85), had been engaged in the construction of a canal across the Isthmus of Darien, or, as it is now often called, the Isthmus of Panama. In November of 1888, after the work had cost many millions of dollars and less than a fourth of the task had been accomplished, De Lesseps and his colleagues, being unable to proceed for want of money, applied to the French government for aid. The news of this application coming to our Congress, the Senate, in the early part of 1889, declared "That the government of the United States will look with serious concern and disapproval upon any connection of any European government with the construction or control of any ship-canal across the Isthmus of Darien or across Central America, and must regard any such connection or control as injurious to the just rights and interests of the United States, and as a menace to their welfare." This declaration, as also the language of the new President, was intended to reaffirm the Monroe Doctrine (p. 262).\*

The  
Monroe Doctrine.

\*In February, 1889, Congress incorporated the "Maritime Canal Company of Nicaragua," for the construction of a canal north of the isthmus, the act being based upon concessions made by Nicaragua, through which country it is designed to construct the great waterway.

89. Give an account of the inauguration of Harrison.

90. What is said of De Lesseps and his American project? Of the action of the Senate in relation to the Monroe Doctrine? When, by whom, and under what circumstances was that doctrine first proclaimed (p. 262, & App. p. 49)? What is meant by it?



91. Another allusion in the President's message was to the Civil Service under the government (App. p. 23). At the beginning of the first presidential term, Washington, in a letter to an office-seeker, wrote: "I will, to the best of my judgment, discharge the duties of the office with that impartiality and zeal for the public good which ought never to suffer connection of blood or friendship to have the least sway on decisions of a public nature." Said Daniel Webster: "Offices are public trusts, not private spoils." President Jackson believed that "to the victors belong the spoils" (p. 268). The example which he set of removing political opponents from office and appointing political friends, was followed many years by his successors.\* For a long time the people had seen that the practice was fraught with danger to the country, but not till the death of Garfield (p. 340) did they in large numbers demand that a better system should be adopted. In 1883 Congress passed the Civil Service Act, by authority of which the Presidents since have appointed commissioners, under whose direction examinations have been made to test the fitness of applicants for public service, it being the duty of the President to be guided by the results of the examinations. Presidents Arthur and Cleveland did much to give the new law a trial, and now President Harrison expressed the "hope that beyond" his

\* While the quarrel between Congress and President Johnson was in progress (p. 328), the *Tenure of Office Bill* was passed by Congress over the President's veto. The bill declared that persons holding civil offices by consent of the Senate should not be removed except by consent of the Senate. Its object was to check Johnson from removing Republicans and appointing men who would support him in his quarrel with Congress. It was so modified during Grant's administration as to make it of little force.

91. What do you understand by the term Civil Service? What was Washington's attitude towards the service? Webster's? Jackson's? Through whose administrations did the wrong practice continue in full force? When was a change for the better begun? What is said of Arthur, Cleveland, and Harrison in connection with that change? Of how many members did Harrison's Cabinet consist? Name the departments of which they were the heads (App. p. 22).

"obvious duty," he would "do something more to advance the reform of the Civil Service." \*

92. A third allusion in Harrison's address was to the near approach of the centennial of the first inauguration of the first President of the United States. Congress had already declared that this centennial day should be a general holiday. On the 5th of April President Harrison, in a proclamation, recommended that on "Thursday, April 30, at the hour of nine in the morning, the people of the entire country repair to their respective places of Divine worship, to implore the favor of God that the blessings of liberty, prosperity, and peace may abide with us as a people." The recommendation met with general observance; and the illustrious event was also celebrated in all the large cities of the Union. In New York the celebration was so arranged as to keep in mind the interesting scenes attending the original ceremony (p. 214). A fleet of steamboats, decorated with flags, escorted President Harrison from New Jersey across the harbor of New York; a crew of shipmasters, as skilful with their oars as were their ancestors a century earlier, rowed him in a barge to the historic landing-place at the southerly end of the city; white-robed school-girls strewed flowers before him as he entered the City Hall (April 29); and from the spot where Washington took the oath of office just a hundred years before, he addressed a multitude of men and women, who, with upturned faces, stood in the streets before and about him (April 30, 1889). A hundred thousand men and five thousand school-boys marched in procession.

Centennial Celebration.
----------------------------

\*Less than a month before the end of Cleveland's term, Congress so enlarged the powers and duties of the Department of Agriculture, which had been in existence several years, as to make it one of the great executive departments. Cleveland had the honor of first having in his Cabinet a Secretary of Agriculture.

92. When and where was the first presidential inauguration (p. 214)? State fully how that event was celebrated a hundred years later.

**The  
Conemaugh  
Disaster.**

93. A month after these rejoicings, a terrible calamity fell upon a district west of the Alleghany Mountains. On a mountain slope in Cambria County, Pennsylvania, was an artificial lake whose overflow ran into the Conemaugh (*con'-e-maw*) River. The dam that held the lake in check gave way, and before the people in the valley below were fully aware of their danger, the waters were upon them. A wave thirty feet high carried everything before it. Villages were swept along, and a path of desolation half a mile wide was cut through the city of Johnstown (May 31). At the foot of the valley the accumulated mass—ruins of houses, uprooted trees, cattle, and human beings—became jammed in a mighty heap against a stone railway bridge that crossed the river. Over the bridge, from this heap, projected rafters and timbers. Under these were hot stoves that had been carried down in the houses. Suddenly from out of the heap burst forth a fierce flame of fire. Soon the news of this terrible disaster spread in every direction. Food and clothing were speedily sent to the destitute, and helping hands hurried to relieve the living and bury the dead. Five thousand men, women, and children had perished.

**Admission  
of Four  
New States.**

94. The closing part of this year saw four additions to the family of States. Montana, Washington, and Dakota, having outgrown their territorial childhood, assumed State manhood. From the last-named came two States, North Dakota and South Dakota. The region covered by the two Dakotas and Montana was once a part of the Louisiana Purchase (p. 233). Washington belonged to the Oregon Region that came to us by discovery, exploration, settlement, and treaty with Spain (p. 297). Dakota, an Indian word meaning a league, was the common name of the Sioux tribes. Montana is the Spanish word for mountain.

93. Give an account of the Conemaugh disaster. Where is Johnstown? (Conemaugh River is one of the head branches of the Alleghany River. See Map, No. 2.)

94. What new States were added to the Union in 1889? State what you can of their previous history. Of their names. Of the change as respects the national flag.

95. Closely following these came Idaho and Wyoming, both of which were admitted in July (1890). The former had been a part of the original Oregon Region (p. 297), the latter a part of the Louisiana Purchase (p. 234). While the bill for the admission of Idaho was before Congress, a member of that body, pleading for admission, said: "Two officials were traveling one bright morning over a lonely mountain of the Sierra Nevada range, when they suddenly emerged upon a small plateau, on the further end of which stood an Indian wigwam. An Indian woman came forth, and in a far-reaching voice called out several times the word Idaho, or, as it sounded, Ed-dah-hoo-oo-oo. The call was answered by the appearance of a comely Indian girl of about nine years of age. The travelers naturally inferred that the word was the name of the girl, but, on inquiry, could find no definition for it in the language of the tribes. Being impressed with the comely appearance of the Indian maiden in that lonely abode, they concluded that *Gem of the Mountains* would be a fitting translation, and it was so adopted, and subsequently accepted by Congress as the definition of the word Idaho."\*

Idaho  
and  
Wyoming.

96. Meanwhile the President of the United States, by authority from Congress, had invited all the other nations of America to send delegates to Washington, there to meet delegates representing the United States, for the purpose of conferring as to the best measures "to preserve the peace and promote the prosperity of the several American States." No act of the Conference,

Congress  
of the Three  
Americas.

\* According to another authority, the word was derived from *Ida*, the name of a little girl whose father was a member of Congress when the name Idaho was formed to designate the territory. The word Wyoming is derived from an Indian term meaning *large plain*. (See p. 183.) A part of Wyoming came from the cession made by Mexico in 1848. (See App., p. 40.)

95. What additions to the Union were made in 1890? What is said of their history?

96. What was the origin of the Pan-American Congress? Give the particulars in relation to that Congress. What important declaration was made?

however, was to pass into law before its ratification by the various governments themselves. Eighteen nations were represented. The first meeting was held on the 2d of October, 1889; the last, on the 19th of April, 1890. Reports were adopted relating to commerce, banking, facilities for travel, a uniform system of weights and measures, and to the settlement of disputes for preventing war.

97. As far back as 1834 a large domain was set apart for the abode of Indian tribes and called the Indian Territory.

**Oklahoma.**

In 1889, by cession from the Indians, for which about \$4,200,000 were paid, a part of this domain was created into a temporary government by the name of the territory of Oklahoma, meaning, in the Indian language, beautiful land. Within a few hours after it was open for settlement, a large population rushed to it. Soon after it was enlarged and given a more stable government.\*

98. In Chili a civil war had ended in the placing of a new set of men at the head of the government. During the war's

**Trouble  
with Chili.**

progress the United States, by continuing to hold official relations with the government in power till that government was overthrown, gave offence to its foes. In the harbor of Valparaiso was the United States steamship Baltimore. With permission from her commanding officer, a party of sailors went ashore. While walking in the streets of the city, they were set upon by hundreds of armed Chilians, some of whom were of the city's police. One of the sailors was killed, another was mortally and several

---

\* POPULATION.—Omitting Alaska, the population of the United States in 1890 was 62,622,250, of whom 7,470,040 were colored, 107,475 were Chinese, 2,039 were Japanese, and 58,806 were civilized Indians. Alaska's population was 32,052. In addition, 325,464 Indians and other persons were living in the Indian territory and on Indian reservations.

---

97. Give the history of the Indian Territory. Of Oklahoma. What is said of the name Oklahoma? How is the Indian Territory bounded? (Prog. Map No. 6.)

98. Where is Chili? What are its boundaries? What is said of a civil war there? Give an account of troubles growing out of that war. How is Valparaiso situated?

were seriously wounded, and others were cruelly beaten as they were taken to prison (October 16, 1891). For a time war with Chili was imminent, but that power was brought to make full and explicit expressions of regret, and to pay \$75,000 for the families of the dead sailors and among the injured men, and war was averted.

99. The 400th anniversary of the discovery of America by Columbus occurring in 1892, it was decided to celebrate the event with a World's Fair and by various demonstrations of rejoicing. To impart to the fair a national reputation, the aid of Congress was invoked.

Anniversary  
of the Discovery  
of America.

By that body Chicago was named as the place for the fair, and in order to give sufficient time for the erection of the necessary buildings, the holding of it was put off till the next year, 1893. Under authority of Congress, President Harrison proclaimed the 21st of October, 1892, as a general holiday. On that day and other days of the celebration the national flag floated over school houses and public buildings in every part of the Union; and in the principal cities were immense processions of men and school children. In the cities of New York and Brooklyn, boys from the public schools, girls and boys from parochial schools, and college students, to the number of 30,000 in all, took part in the processions. The harbor of New York witnessed a parade of steam vessels, including war ships of the United States, Spain, Italy, and France.

100. In this same year the twenty-seventh presidential election took place. Harrison was again the candidate of the Republicans, and Cleveland of the Democrats. James B. Weaver was the candidate of a new party styled the People's Party, the members of

Second election  
of Cleveland.

99. For what anniversary is the year 1892 noted? How was the event celebrated? Why is Chicago particularly mentioned? New York?

100. What election took place in 1892? What parties and candidates are mentioned? What do you know of the previous history of Cleveland (pp. 340, 341)? Repeat what is said of the "McKinley Bill."

which were called Populists. There were also other parties with candidates, but the contest was mainly between the two old parties; and the protective tariff law then in existence, enacted by a Republican Congress in 1890, was the chief question at issue in the canvass (p. 269). Men called it the "McKinley Bill," from the name of the chairman of the committee in Congress that framed it. It permitted the President to make reciprocal treaties with other nations, concessions being made in return for concessions, the object being to increase the export trade of the United States. Several such treaties were accordingly made.

101. The Democrats denounced the tariff law, declaring "all tariff duties except for the purposes of revenue" to be "unconstitutional." The Populists, making no direct reference to the tariff, favored an income tax, unlimited coinage of silver and gold, and government ownership of railroads, telegraphs, and telephones. The election resulted in favor of the Democrats. On the 4th of March, 1893, Cleveland began a second term; and Adlai E. Stevenson of Illinois, who had been elected Vice-President by the Democrats, took his seat as the President of the national Senate.

#### CLEVELAND'S SECOND ADMINISTRATION.

102. We have seen how the ownership of Alaska passed from Russia to the United States (p. 329). The transfer brought with it a valuable property in the fur seals that live for a third of their life on certain islands of Alaska in Behring Sea. So long as Alaska was a Russian possession the property in the seals was not disputed; but, soon after the transfer, British vessels, called "seal-catchers," began to appear in the sea, and their expeditions for seals were repeated year after year. Thousands of these animals were shot, more than half of which

Seal-Fishery Dispute.
--------------------------

---

101. For what measures did the parties contend? What was the result of the election? Who succeeded Morton as Vice-President?

sunk before they could be reached. The young seals on the islands, whose mothers were thus slaughtered, being now left without care, died in great numbers, and a loss of millions of dollars was consequently inflicted upon American interests.

**103.** Our government complained, asserting that Russia's rights in the sea previous to the transfer were superior to those of any other nation, and that these rights, by the transfer, had been conferred upon the United States. Our claims extended only so far as was necessary to protect the seals from extermination. England refusing to admit these assertions and claims, the dispute was submitted to arbitration.

**104.** The arbitrators, seven in all, met in Paris in 1893. Their decision, August 15, so far as it related to jurisdiction in Behring Sea, was against the United States. The rights of Great Britain are equal to those of the United States. But as respects the most essential point, the protection of seal-life, the decision was the other way. It forbids the use of fire-arms in sealing, forbids the killing of seals anywhere in Behring Sea during the breeding season, and forbids the killing of seals at any time within sixty miles of the seal islands. Unfortunately, the contracting parties could not, in this decision, bind other nations in like manner; but other nations have been requested to respect the decision.

**105.** Serious and wide-spread business depression occurring, the President, and business men generally, believed that it was largely due to the law requiring the government to purchase 4,500,000 ounces of silver every month. The President called an extra session of Congress, and the law was repealed (1893). Still

Business and the Tariff.
--------------------------------

**102.** When and how did the United States acquire Alaska? Of what advantage to us is that Territory? How were our interests interfered with? What destruction and loss as a consequence followed? What do you know of the habits of seals?

**103.** What rights did our government claim, and with what object? England objecting, what followed?

**104.** Give the particulars as to the number of arbitrators, when and where they met, and the decision reached. What is in the way of this decision being fully carried out as desired?



the depression continued, owing, as many thought, to uncertainty as respects the duration of the tariff law, the Democrats having gained the ascendancy in Congress. In August, 1894, a tariff law was enacted less protective than the one it displaced. In addition to the usual features of such a law, it imposed a tax of two per cent. on every income, whether of individual or corporation, in excess of \$4,000, but the Supreme Court soon decided such imposition to be unconstitutional, and in consequence it had only a brief existence. One effect of the new tariff law was to put an end to the reciprocal treaties (p. 352).

106. We have seen how Utah was settled by the Mormons (p. 285). The Utahs, or Eutes, preceding the Mormons, were a tribe of Indians that roamed over Utah, Colorado, Nevada, and New Mexico. Their descendants, numbering about three thousand, are now living on reservations in Utah and Colorado. The Pueblos, or Cliff Dwellers, preceded the Utahs, as the ruins of the cell-like homes in the counties touching New Mexico abundantly testify (p. 14).<sup>\*</sup> Beginning with the year 1849, several attempts were made to change Utah from a Territory to a State, but up to 1895 these were not successful, Congress being unwilling to sanction polygamy, which the Mormons, the ruling class there, avowed and practiced (App., p. 50). When, in 1895, a convention in Utah of duly elected delegates framed a Constitution for the State, in which plural marriages were forever prohibited, the door for the admission of Utah into the Union was opened. Congress approved the Constitution, and early in the following year President Cleveland signed the bill that made Utah a State. The population, excluding Indians,

---

<sup>\*</sup> "Another people used the caves or burial places before the Cliff Dwellers. I call them Basket Makers, as we found no pottery with the dead, but many fine baskets. These relics with mummies found by us we know antedate the Cliff Dwellers, because in so many instances the cliff dwellings had to be removed to get to them."—*Richard Wetherill.*

of this new State, the forty-fifth in the Union, was then about 247,000, of whom more than 167,000 were Mormons.

107. The next presidential election was drawing near. The Republicans were the first to move. In a convention of delegates held in St. Louis they adopted a plat-

Twenty-eighth Presidential Election.
--

form of "facts and principles," and nominated William McKinley, of Ohio, for President, and Garret A. Hobart, of New Jersey, for Vice-President. Their platform favored a protective tariff, and opposed "the free coinage of silver except by international agreement with the leading commercial nations of the world." A few of the delegates, not liking the declaration as to the coinage of silver, left the convention to act with other parties.

108. The Democrats held their convention in Chicago. Asserting that "the money question is paramount to all others at this time," they "demanded the free and unlimited coinage of both gold and silver at the present legal rate of 16 to 1, without waiting for the aid or consent of any other nation."\* Their candidates were William J. Bryan, of Nebraska, for President, and Arthur Sewall, of Maine, for Vice-President. About a third of the delegates voted against "the free coinage of silver," took no part in naming candidates, and united with other "Sound Money Democrats" in calling a Democratic National Convention. The delegates to the convention so called, the first convention of the National Democratic party, whose adherents called themselves National Democrats, met in Indianapolis, "denounced the free coinage of silver," and made nominations. They did not expect to win. They wanted to help the Republicans.

109. The Populists, meeting in St. Louis, "demanded the

---

\* The Director of the United States mint, R. E. Preston, said: "The free coinage of silver means the right of individuals to deposit standard silver in any amount at the mints and have it coined into full legal tender coins. The ratio in coinage of 16 to 1 means that 16 ounces of pure silver shall have the same value as 1 ounce of pure gold coined, namely, \$20.67."

free and unrestricted coinage of silver and gold at the present legal rate of 16 to 1," and nominated Bryan, the nominee of the Democrats, for President. Their candidate for Vice-President was Thomas E. Watson, of Georgia. Other parties made nominations, but the contest was mainly between the Republicans and the Democrats. Bryan made about four hundred speeches in twenty-nine States, many of them from the rear platform of a railroad train. More than three millions of voters heard him. McKinley remained at home, and from his front doorsteps made from five to ten addresses a day to gatherings that stood on the lawn before him. Each of these gatherings was of men from some location, generally outside of Ohio, or was a deputation belonging to some craft, or calling, or interest. It was no uncommon experience for him to address from ten thousand to twenty-five thousand visitors a day. After the most exciting canvass since the great Civil War, the Republicans were victorious (November 3, 1896).

110. A month later President Cleveland's last annual message was sent to Congress. In it he announced that the long-standing dispute between Great Britain and Venezuela in regard to the boundary between the latter republic and British Guiana was about to be settled by arbitration, as had been proposed by our government. In a previous message he had declared "that this government is firmly opposed to a forcible increase by any European power of territorial possessions on this continent." This was said under a conviction that the English meant to seize the lands in dispute, and thus set at defiance the Monroe Doctrine (p. 262). Congress at that time consenting, Cleveland appointed a commission of four persons to determine "the true division line between Venezuela and British Guiana," but before the commission was ready to report, he was glad to make the announcement as stated above.

Venezuela  
and the  
Monroe Doctrine.

## MCKINLEY'S ADMINISTRATION.

111. More than 50,000 visitors were in the city of Washington on the 4th of March, 1897. They were there to see William McKinley inaugurated President of the United States, and to hear an address from him. The oath of office was administered by Chief Justice Fuller (p. 294), in the open air, under a cloudless sky, followed by the address (p. 345). This new President had been a Union soldier in the great Civil War, a representative in Congress (p. 352), and governor of Ohio. Now he was the President of a nation of more than 70,000,000 men, women, and children.



WILLIAM MCKINLEY.

112. In his message to Congress nine months later, McKinley declared that "the most important problem with which the country is now called upon to deal concerns its duty toward Spain and the Cuban insurrection," an insurrection that, with the efforts to suppress it, had been desolating Cuba since February, 1895. Cuba, Pearl of the Antilles, the largest of the West India islands, belonged to Spain, and was governed by officials sent from Spain. The people were treated as serfs and vassals, and taxed with the most burdensome taxes—hence their insurrection. They had rebelled several times before, the last of these struggles covering a period of ten years (1868–1878). In the early part of this period our Government offered, "in the name of humanity," said General Grant, then President

War with Spain.
--------------------

to put an end to the strife," but Spain declining the offer, the war dragged on till peace was brought about by a truce. Fourteen months after the insurrection of 1895 broke out, President Cleveland made an effort such as had been made in Grant's administration, but without success. Spain would not consent, except on terms which Spain herself might see fit to grant. (Map facing page 11.)

**113.** Havana is the largest city of Cuba. In its harbor, February 15, 1898, was anchored the United States battle ship *Maine*. Between nine and ten o'clock in the evening an explosion destroyed the ship. Two of her officers and 264 of her men perished. As the news was flashed to every part of the United States it produced intense excitement, for it was believed that the destruction had been effected by Spanish officials. By direction of the President, a Court of Inquiry was at once formed, which, after twenty-three days of continuous labor, reported that the *Maine* was destroyed by the explosion of a submarine mine, but that no evidence had been obtained fixing the responsibility upon any person or persons. Officials on the part of Spain made an investigation, giving less time and care to it. They reported that the explosion was from the inside of the ship.

**114.** The war in Cuba continuing, McKinley sent a special message to Congress (April 11, 1898). After more than three years of fighting, the end, said he, "seemed as far distant as at the outset. The long trial has proved that the object for which Spain has waged the war cannot be attained." As many as 300,000 of the agricultural population had been herded within the places held by Spanish troops, and there, deprived of means of support and without shelter, more than half had died from starvation and disease. Nearly \$200,000 in money and supplies had been sent by the American people to the sufferers. In addition, \$50,000 were voted by Congress. "The right to intervene," declared McKinley, "may be justified by the very serious injury to the commerce, trade, and

business of our people, and by the wanton destruction of property and devastation of the island. The present condition of affairs in Cuba is a constant menace to our peace, and entails upon this government an enormous expense by compelling us to keep on a semi-war footing with a nation with which we are at peace."

115. Congress was ready to act. On the 18th of the month the following resolutions were adopted :

First. That the people of the Island of Cuba are and of right ought to be free and independent.

Second. That it is the duty of the United States to demand, and the Government of the United States does hereby demand, that the Government of Spain at once relinquish its authority and government in the Island of Cuba and withdraw its land and naval forces from Cuba and Cuban waters.

Third. That the President of the United States be, and he hereby is, directed and empowered to use the entire land and naval forces of the United States, and to call into the actual service of the United States the militia of the several States, to such extent as may be necessary to carry these resolutions into effect.

Fourth. That the United States hereby disclaims any disposition or intention to exercise sovereignty, jurisdiction, or control over said island except for the pacification thereof, and asserts its determination when that is accomplished to leave the government and control of the island to its people.

116. The President having signed the resolutions (April 20), and sent the demand of the government to the Spanish Minister in Washington, that person asked for his passports and left the country. The Spanish Government at once decided to have no further communication with our Minister in Spain, thus, "by the usage of nations," declaring that a state of war existed between the two countries. On the 25th of the month Congress passed a bill declaring "that war has existed since the 21st day of April, 1898, including said day, between the United States and the kingdom of Spain," and the President at once signed the bill. Warships were bought in Europe, the principal ports of Cuba

were blockaded, Spanish ships were captured in the waters about Cuba, the regular army was increased, and an army of many thousand volunteers was formed. The war "in the interest of humanity" had begun.

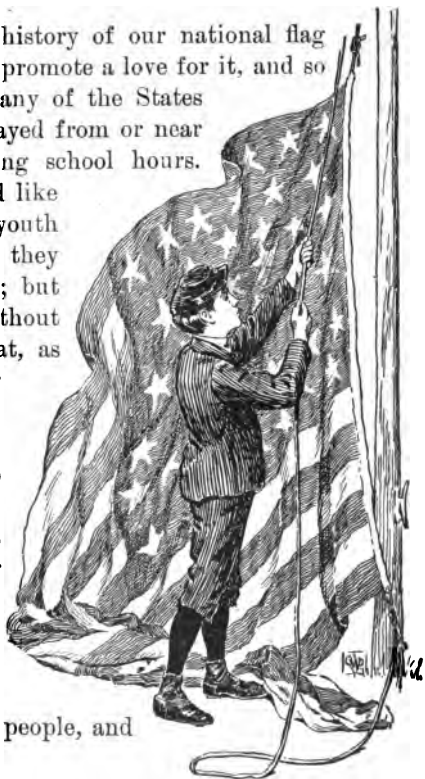
117. Its first battle was between two fleets of iron ships in the harbor of Manila, the largest city of the Philippines, a group of islands in the Pacific Ocean belonging chiefly to Spain. In the early morning of the first day of May, the American fleet, under the command of Commodore Dewey, advanced to the attack, and though the Spanish ships were aided by forts and shore batteries, in three hours they were completely destroyed. Not an American ship was disabled : not an American was killed. The victory was the greatest in the annals of modern naval war.

## THE AMERICAN FLAG.

“Our flag is as much the gift of heaven  
As though it fell from the skies.”

“When the standard of the Union is raised and waves over my head—the standard which Washington planted on the ramparts of the Constitution—God forbid that I should inquire whom the people have commissioned to unfurl it and bear it up. I only ask in what manner, as an humble individual, I can best discharge my duty in defending it.”—*Daniel Webster.*

1. We have given the history of our national flag (p. 180, App. p. 46). To promote a love for it, and so a love for our country, many of the States require the flag to be displayed from or near their school houses during school hours. The great aim in these and like schools is so to educate the youth under their influence that they shall become good citizens; but this cannot be attained without patriotism. Believing that, as a rule, “the pen is mightier than the sword,” such citizens will stand for peace; but when peace can no longer be maintained with honor, they will be the first to rally around the flag they love in defence of their country, and for the preservation of their government, a “government of the people, by the people, and for the people” (p. 317).





2. Who suggested the stars for the flag is not known, nor is it known who suggested the stripes. The design for the flag having been approved by a committee of Congress, the question occurs, Who, expert with needle and thread, was chosen to carry it out, or, in other words, Who made the first American Flag, the first Star-Spangled Banner? No answer came before 1870. A paper was then read before the Historical Society of Pennsylvania, in which it was asserted that to Mrs. John Ross, known among her friends as Betsey Ross, a widow living in Philadelphia, belonged the honor. The writer of the paper was her grandson. The evidence, as presented in the paper, showed that the committee of Congress, accompanied by Washington, went to the home of Mrs. Ross, taking with them a drawing of the proposed flag. Objection being made to the formation of the stars, each being six-pointed, a change was made to five-pointed stars. Then, at the suggestion of the Widow Ross, Washington made a pencil drawing of the flag for her guidance. She was then asked: "Can you make it?" Her reply was: "I will try."

3. We do not know how many times this brave reply, so full of meaning, has been made by earnest doers in every land; but we do not forget that when it came from the will and mouth of the hero, Colonel Miller, in the crisis of the brilliant battle of Lundy's Lane, it became famous (p. 253). The flag as ordered by the committee was made in the widow's back parlor, the thirteen stars being arranged in a circle (p. 180); and this, it has been claimed, was the model flag before Congress when the resolution of June 14, 1777, was adopted. Then, for the first time, the soldiers in Washington's army had a flag every part of which they could call their own.\*

---

\* The story crediting Mrs. John Ross with the making of the first American flag rests upon the assertions made by the grandson alluded to, supported by the testimony of his brother and of other descendants

4. In 1795, after Vermont and Kentucky had joined the Union, two stars and two stripes were added to those already on the flag. In 1818 a second and last change was made. The flag as then adopted, restoring the number of stripes to thirteen and adding a star for every new State, was designed by Captain Reed, distinguished for his gallant defence of the brig General Armstrong against a superior British force four years previous (App. p. 57).

5. American ships have carried the American flag around the world and to every seaport of the world. "Wherever it has gone it has been the herald of a better day, the pledge of freedom, justice, order, and civilization. In all the world there is not such another flag that carries within its ample folds such grandeur of hope as our dear American flag, made by and for liberty." In 1820, Captain Palmer, in a little Connecticut sloop of only ninety tons burden, discovered the island south of Cape Horn, that has ever since been known as Palmer's Land. In 1839, a New York pilot boat attached to the United States Exploring Expedition, commanded by Captain Wilkes (p. 306), carried the American flag within twenty degrees of the South Pole; and, in expeditions to reach the North Pole, the American flag has occupied an advanced position. It has been unfurled over the Lake of Galilee and the Dead Sea. It has floated over the highest mountain peaks in Europe and America. It has been carried to the heart of Africa and across the Dark Continent; and

"Around the globe through every clime  
Where commerce wafts or man has trod,  
It floats aloft, unstained with crime,  
And hallowed by heroic blood.  
O glorious flag! red, white, and blue,  
Bright emblem of the pure and true."

of the lady. The Journals of Congress throw no light upon the matter; they are silent as to the making of the first flag; but they show conclusively that Betsey Ross made many flags for the army during the War of the Revolution.

6. "It is a piece of bunting lifted in the air; but it speaks sublimely; and every part has a voice. Its stripes of alternate red and white proclaim the original union of the United States to maintain the Declaration of Independence. The stars, white on a field of blue, proclaim that Union of States constituting our national constellation, which receives a new star with every new State. The two together signify union, past and present. The very colors have a language which was officially recognized by our fathers. White is for purity, red for valor, blue for justice, and all together—bunting, stripes, stars, and colors—blazing in the sky, make the flag of our country, to be cherished by all our hearts, to be upheld by all our hands."—*Charles Sumner.*

7. "When Freedom from her mountain height,  
Unfurled her standard to the air,  
She tore the azure robe of night,  
And set the stars of glory there.  
She mingled with its gorgeous dyes  
The milky baldric of the skies,  
And striped its pure celestial white  
With streakings of the morning light;  
Then from his mansion in the sun,  
She called her eagle bearer down,  
And gave into his mighty hand  
The symbol of her chosen land."

8. "Flag of the free heart's hope and home!  
By angel hands to Valor given!  
Thy stars have lit the welkin dome,  
And all thy hues were born in heaven.  
Forever float that standard sheet!  
Where breathes the foe but falls before us;  
With Freedom's soil beneath our feet,  
And Freedom's banner streaming o'er us?"  
—*Joseph R. Drake.*

## REVIEW OUTLINE.

**Cause-Events of the Civil War.**—At the breaking out of the war there were fifteen slave States, which contained nearly 4,000,000 slaves. The South, believing that slavery was right, but that the growing sentiment against it in the North was imperiling its existence, tried to increase its security by increasing the number of slave States from the Territories. The North objecting, a conflict of words and acts was carried on, which culminated in war.

**Fighting-Events of the War.**—Before Lincoln took his seat as President a Confederacy of Southern States was formed. In the streets of Baltimore the first blood was shed. The first deliberate blow was struck in Charleston harbor. There a few men were holding a fort. Confederate guns drove away relief intended for them, and drove them out of the fort. In Virginia, in Missouri, along the Carolina coast, and elsewhere, the war raged. Eleven States were in the Confederacy. They were the South.

The North believed that the capture of Richmond, the Confederate capital, would bring the war to a close. The thousands of brave men left on the battle-fields of Bull Run, Fair Oaks, Fredericksburg, Chancellorsville, and the Wilderness, were terrible evidences of the sincerity of that belief. The South believed that the capture of Washington, the Federal capital, would bring the North to terms. The thousands of brave men left on the battle-fields in Maryland, in the Shenandoah Valley, and at Gettysburg, testify to the earnestness of that belief.

In the Mississippi Valley, Grant, Foote, Pope, Farragut, and others, contended against A. S. Johnston, Beauregard, Pemberton, and others, for the mastery of the great river. The North gained Donelson, Shiloh, New Orleans, and Vicksburg, and thus gained the river. The South believed that for their cotton they could get in exchange from Europe ships to bring powder, shot, guns, food, and clothing. To prevent this the North blockaded Southern ports and captured the supply ships. The Confederates built great expectations upon their iron-clad ship Virginia. She, they felt certain, would destroy the blockade, and then turn her destructive powers against Northern ports. The Monitor spoiled their plan. Confederate cruisers, built in English shipyards, drove the ships of Northern merchants from the ocean. Not till the Kearsarge sunk the Alabama did the scourge cease.

Sherman's operations and march, compelling the Confederates to aban-

## *Constitutional Period.*

---

don Atlanta, Savannah, Columbia, and Charleston, brought Sherman within threatening distance of Richmond on the southeast. Grant, after desperate fighting, unfaltering determination, and long patience, was closing in upon the city from the north, east, and west. Lee retreated, was overtaken, and surrendered.

**Emancipation.**—Lincoln's proclamation at the beginning of the third year of the war did not set free the slaves of Delaware, Maryland, and such other parts of the South as were not in arms against the Union. Thousands of colored men joined the ranks of the Union army after the appearance of that proclamation. Many of these had been slaves. They were now free. Thousands of colored men were yet in bondage. To set free every slave in the land the Thirteenth Amendment to the Constitution was adopted. This was followed by two other amendments, their object being to make colored men citizens, with all the rights of other citizens.

**Death in the White House.**—The death of Lincoln by the hand of an assassin was the saddest event of the war. The death of Garfield, also by the hand of an assassin, sixteen years after, is the only event in the history of our country that can be compared to it in sadness.

**Formation of States.**—Many States came into the Union during this period. Oregon was from what was previously known as the Oregon region. One part of Minnesota belonged to the original domain, the other part to the Louisiana Purchase. All Nebraska, and part of Kansas and Colorado, were from the Louisiana Purchase; the other part came from Mexico (p. 280). West Virginia was cut off from the mother State (p. 303). (See pages 348, 349.)

**Population.**—In 1880 the population was 50,155,783, including 66,407 Indians, and 105,465 Chinese.

**Treaties.**—The most important were those made with Russia for the purchase of Alaska, with China for the regulation of immigration, and with England for the settlement of the Alabama claims and the boundary and fishery disputes.

**Tariffs.**—During the Civil War a tariff for revenue and protection was in force. Some of its duties were afterward lowered. Taxes were also imposed on incomes and manufactures; and revenue stamps were required for bonds, deeds, receipts, and other written instruments.

**Political Parties.**—During a period of twenty-four years, up to the first election of Cleveland, the Republicans were in control of the executive department of the government; but both branches of Congress were not always Republican. When Cleveland was so elected, the Senate was Republican and the House of Representatives was Democratic.

## CHRONOLOGICAL SUMMARY.

1857.	JAMES BUCHANAN WAS INAUGURATED PRESIDENT (§ 1).....	March 4.
	The Dred Scott decision was made known (§ 2).....	March 6.
1858.	MINNESOTA WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 4).....	May 11.
1859.	OREGON WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 6).....	Feb. 14.
	John Brown made a raid into Virginia (§ 3).....	Oct. 16.
1860.	SOUTH CAROLINA PASSED A SECESSION ORDINANCE (§ 9).....	Dec. 20.
	1861. Steamer Star of the West was fired upon (§ 10).....	Jan. 9.
1861.	MISSISSIPPI (Jan. 9), FLORIDA (Jan. 10), ALABAMA (Jan. 11), GEORGIA (Jan. 19), LOUISIANA (Jan. 26), TEXAS (Feb. 1), VIRGINIA (April 17), ARKANSAS (May 6), TENNESSEE (May 7), and NORTH CAROLINA (May 20), PASSED SECESSION ORDINANCES.	
	KANSAS WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 7).....	Jan. 29.
	CONFEDERATE STATES ADOPTED A CONSTITUTION (§ 12).....	Feb. 8.
	JEFFERSON DAVIS INAUGURATED PRESIDENT OF CONFEDERACY (§ 12).....	Feb. 18.
	ABRAHAM LINCOLN INAUGURATED PRESIDENT OF U. S. (§ 11).....	March 4.
	Fort Sumter was surrendered to the Confederates (§ 13).....	April 13.
	Davis offered letters of marque and reprisal (§ 15).....	April 17.
	Lincoln proclaimed a blockade of Southern ports (§ 15).....	April 19.
	Union troops attacked by mob in Baltimore (§ 16).....	April 19.
	England (May 13), France (June 10), Spain (June 17), and Portugal (July 28), acknowledged the Confederate States as belligerents (§ 21).	
	Battle of Philippi, Va.—the South defeated (§ 17).....	June 3.
	Battle of Booneville, Mo.—the South defeated (§ 19).....	June 17.
	Battle of Carthage, Mo.—the North defeated (§ 19).....	July 5.
	Battle of Rich Mountain, Va.—the South defeated (§ 17).....	July 11.
	BATTLE OF BULL RUN, VA.—THE NORTH DEFEATED (§ 18).....	July 21.
	(Many battles followed, of which only the most important are noted.)	
	Mason and Slidell taken from a British steamer (§ 22).....	Nov. 8.
1862.	FORT HENRY, TENN., CAPTURED—THE SOUTH DEFEATED (§ 26).....	Feb. 6.
	FORT DONELSON, TENN., CAPTURED—THE SOUTH DEFEATED (§ 26).....	Feb. 16.
	FIGHT BETWEEN THE VIRGINIA AND THE MONITOR (§ 29).....	March 9.
	BATTLE OF SHILOH, TENN.—THE SOUTH DEFEATED (§ 27).....	April 7.
	Island No. 10, Mississippi River, taken from Confederates.....	April 7.
	NEW ORLEANS WAS CAPTURED BY A UNION FLEET (§ 28).....	April 25.
	Battle of Williamsburg, Va.—the South defeated (§ 32).....	May 5.
	Memphis, Tenn., was captured by Union gunboats (§ 28).....	June 6.
	The Seven Days' Battles before Richmond (§ 32).....	June 25-July 1.
	Battle of Manassas, 2d of Bull Run—the North defeated (§ 34).....	Aug. 30.
	Harper's Ferry, Va., captured—the North defeated (§ 35).....	Sept. 15.
	Battle of Antietam, Md.—the South defeated (§ 35).....	Sept. 17.
	BATTLE OF FREDERICKSBURG, VA.—THE NORTH DEFEATED (§ 36).....	Dec. 13.
1863.	LINCOLN ISSUED THE EMANCIPATION PROCLAMATION (§ 37).....	Jan. 1.
	Battle of Murfreesboro, Tenn.—the South defeated (§ 41).....	Jan. 2.
	BATTLE OF CHANCELLORSVILLE, VA.—THE NORTH DEFEATED (§ 38).....	May 3.
	WEST VIRGINIA WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 17).....	June 20.
	BATTLE OF GETTYSBURG—THE SOUTH DEFEATED (§ 39).....	July 3.
	Vicksburg, Miss., surrendered—THE SOUTH DEFEATED (§ 40).....	July 4.
	Port Hudson, La., surrendered—the South defeated (§ 40).....	July 8.
	Draft riot occurred in New York City (§ 42).....	July 13-18.
	Battle of Chickamauga, Tenn.—the North defeated (§ 41).....	Sept. 20.
	BATTLE OF CHATTANOOGA, TENN.—THE SOUTH DEFEATED (§ 41).....	Nov. 25.
1864.	GENERAL GRANT WAS MADE LIEUTENANT-GENERAL (§ 43).....	March 3.
	The Red River expedition—the North defeated (note to § 42).....	March-April.
	BATTLE OF THE WILDERNESS—result not decisive (§ 46).....	May 5, 6.

1864.	THE KEARSARGE FOUGHT AND SUNK THE ALABAMA (§ 48) .....	June 19.
	Chambersburg, Pa., was fired by the Confederates (§ 47) .....	July 30.
	Battle in Mobile Bay—the South defeated (§ 49) .....	Aug. 5.
	ATLANTA, GA., CAPTURED—THE SOUTH DEFEATED (§ 45) .....	Sept. 2.
	NEVADA WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 62) .....	Oct. 31.
	Battle of Nashville, Tenn.—the South defeated (§ 50) .....	Dec. 16.
	SAVANNAH CAPTURED—THE SOUTH DEFEATED (§ 51) .....	Dec. 21.
1865.	Columbia, S. C. surrendered—the South defeated (§ 52) .....	Feb. 17.
	Charleston was occupied by Union troops (§ 52) .....	Feb. 18.
	PETERSBURG AND RICHMOND SURRENDERED TO UNION TROOPS (§ 53) .....	April 3.
	LEE SURRENDERED TO GRANT AT APPOMATTOX COURT-HOUSE (§ 54) .....	April 9.
	PRESIDENT LINCOLN WAS ASSASSINATED (§ 56) .....	April 14.
	ANDREW JOHNSON WAS INAUGURATED PRESIDENT (§ 58) .....	April 15.
	Thirteenth Amendment to Constitution was adopted (§ 59) .....	Dec. 18.
1867.	NEBRASKA WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 62) .....	March 1.
	ALASKA WAS BOUGHT OF RUSSIA (§ 62) .....	March 30.
1868.	HOUSE OF REP. IMPEACHED PRESIDENT JOHNSON (§ 61) .....	Feb. 24.
	Johnson, after trial, was not found guilty (§ 61) .....	May 26.
	Fourteenth Amendment to Constitution was adopted (§ 60) .....	July 28.
1869.	ULYSSES S. GRANT WAS INAUGURATED PRESIDENT (§ 63) .....	March 4.
	1870. Fifteenth Amendment to Constitution adopted (§ 60) .....	March 30.
1871.	THE WASHINGTON TREATY (Alabama Claims) made (§ 64) .....	May 8.
	Fire in Chicago destroyed 18,000 houses. . . . .	Oct. 8-10.
1876.	CENTENNIAL EXHIBITION HELD IN PHILADELPHIA (§ 67) .....	May-Nov.
	COLORADO WAS ADMITTED INTO THE UNION (§ 68) .....	August 1.
1877.	RUTHERFORD B. HAYES INAUGURATED PRESIDENT (§ 76) .....	March 5.
	1880. Emigration Treaty was made with China (§ 79) .....	Nov. 17.
1881.	JAMES A. GARFIELD WAS INAUGURATED PRESIDENT (§ 80) .....	March 4.
	PRESIDENT GARFIELD WAS ASSASSINATED (§ 81) .....	July 2.
	CHESTER A. ARTHUR WAS INAUGURATED PRESIDENT (§ 82) .....	Sept. 20.
1885.	GROVER CLEVELAND WAS INAUGURATED PRESIDENT (§ 83) .....	March 4.
	Death of General Grant (§ 84) .....	July 23.
1889.	BENJAMIN HARRISON WAS INAUGURATED PRESIDENT (§ 88) .....	March 4.
	North Dakota (Nov. 2), South Dakota (Nov. 2), Montana (Nov. 8), and Washington (Nov. 11), were admitted into the Union (§ 94).	
1890.	Idaho (July 3) and Wyoming (July 10) were admitted into the Union (§ 95).	
1892.	The 400th anniversary of the discovery of America (§99) .....	Oct.
1893.	Second inauguration of Grover Cleveland (§101) .....	March 4
1896.	Utah was admitted into the Union (§106) .....	Jan. 4.
1897.	WILLIAM MCKINLEY WAS INAUGURATED PRESIDENT (§111) .....	March 4.

## TOPICS FOR REVIEW.

**Biographical.**—*Tell who they were, for what they were noted, and with what events they were connected.*

Anderson ... 299, 301	Douglas ..... 296	Lesseps..... 342, 345	Seward ..... 327, 329
Banks ..... 312, 319	Dred Scott..... 296	Lyon..... 304	Slidell..... 306
Bell, John..... 296	Early..... 321, 322	McDowell... 304, 312	Stanton ... 321
Bragg ..... 309, 317	Fremont ... 295, 304	Mason..... 306	Semmes ..... 322
Brown, John ... 296	Foote ..... 308, 310	Meade..... 316	Thomas .... 309, 317,
Buell..... 309	Greeley .... 322	Pope.. .... 310, 313	318, 323
Burnside.... 318, 319	Hooker ..... 315, 318	Porter..... 319	Tilden ..... 337
Butler..... 310	Hood..... 321, 323	Rosecrans... 309, 317	Whitman..... 296
Blaine..... 341	Hancock ..... 339	Schofield .... 323	Wilkes ..... 306
Davis... 300, 302, 327	Jackson ... 312, 316	Scott, General.. 304	Winslow ..... 322

**Geographical.**—*Tell where they are located, and with what events they were connected.*

Antietam .... 313	Elberon ..... 340	Montgomery ... 300	Shenandoah Val-
Appomattox ... 325	Five Forks..... 325	Memphis ..... 310	ley ..... 321
Atlanta..... 320, 323	Fredericksburg. 314	Murfreesboro... 317	Sumter, Ft. 299, 300,
Baltimore ..... 302	Franklin..... 323	Mobile Bay..... 323	301, 325
Bedlow's Island, 342	Geneva..... 330	Mt. MacGregor. 341	Shiloh..... 309
Boonville ..... 304	Gettysburg ..... 316	McAllister, Ft.. 324	South Mountain, 318
Bull Run... 304, 313	Harper's Ferry. 296,	New York... 319, 341	Savannah..... 324
Chambersburg.. 322	303, 313	New Orleans, 310, 317	Vancouver Is -
Chancellorsville, 316	Havana ..... 306	Norfolk ..... 303	land..... 330
Charleston ... 301, 325	Henry, Ft ..... 308	Nashville ..... 323	Vicksburg..... 317
Chattanooga ... 318	Hampton Roads, 311	Petersburg ..... 346	Wilderness .... 321
Columbia..... 324	Iuka ..... 317	Pillow, Ft..... 310	Williamsburg ... 312
Corinth ..... 309, 317	Knoxville..... 319	Port Hudson.... 317	Winchester.... 322
Donelson, Ft.... 306	Lexington..... 304	Richmond... 303, 325	Yorktown... 312, 340

**Historical.**—1. The Oregon region, and the five successive steps by which the United States acquired a perfect title to it.—2. Minnesota, its territory before it belonged to the United States, when the State was admitted into the Union, and other facts relating to it.—3. Same of Kansas.—4. Of West Virginia.—5. Nevada.—6. Nebraska.—7. Colorado.—8. Alaska, its early history and productions, and how and when acquired by the United States.—9. Slavery, where it existed, what it produced, and how it brought on the Civil War.—10. The Southern Confederacy, when and by whom formed, its object, names of its President and two successive capitals.—11. Particulars of the first two acts of actual war.—12. An outline in chronological order of McClellan's connection with the war.—13. Same of Beauregard's.—14. Farragut's.—15. A. S. Johnston's.—16. J. E. Johnston's.—17. Sherman's.—18. Sheridan's.—19. Lee's.—20. Grant's.—21. The blockade.—22. The Alabama steamer,



her origin, career, and end.—23. The Alabama claims.—24. The Monitor and the Merrimac, their history and fight.—25. England's conduct during the war.—26. The Mississippi, how it was closed and opened.—27. Emancipation Proclamation, why, when, and by whom issued, and with what consequences.—28. The four successive commanders of the Army of the Potomac, their successes and failures.—29. The three most important battles fought by that army, with the commanders on both sides, and the results.—30. The process by war, President, and Congress, by which slavery was entirely banished from the United States.—31. Reconstruction, and the contest between Congress and the President.—32. The Fishery Dispute.—33. Compare the death of Lincoln with the death of Garfield.—34. Names of all the Presidents, beginning with Buchanan, to the present time, when the term of each began and ended, and the most important event in the term of each.—35. An account of four important events in Grant's administration.—36. The facts as to Hayes's election, and the events of his administration.—37. Name, in chronological order, all the Presidents from Washington to the present time, stating which were soldiers, which died in office, which were killed by assassins, and which are still living.—38. Three great wars in which the United States have been involved since the Revolution, their cause, when they began and ended, and which one was fought on foreign soil.—39. How many and what wars Washington, Montgomery, Wayne, Scott, Taylor, and Harrison were engaged in.—40. Five Americans who have gained distinction as inventors, naming their inventions, and the benefits derived from them.—41. Name seven who have gained distinction as historians.—42. Ten, as statesmen.—43. Five as poets and five as novelists. Repeat the notable sayings of which the following clews are given, stating when, where, by whom, and under what circumstances each was uttered: A sharp medicine (50), Here will I build (95), Great Spirit guards his life (112), God be praised (116), Cæsar had his Brutus (143), Our last drop of blood (151), I am an American (151), In the name of the Great Jehovah (154), The white of their eyes (156), The liberties of the country (158), These are the times (161), I have but one life (166), The boy cannot escape (171), Molly Stark (178), I will make a lord of him (189), Northern laurels (191), Not for ten thousand (195), The most wonderful work (205), Aloof from European wars (226), Not a cent (228), Free trade (244), Don't give up the ship (248), We have met the enemy (250), I'll try, sir (253), War of movements (261), The Union must be preserved (271), Liberty and Union (271), Never surrenders (277), Rough and Ready (282), The white man was bound to respect (296), Unconditional surrender (309), Like a stone wall (312), On this line (321).

## TABULATED REVIEWS.

---

### FORMER INHABITANTS OF OUR COUNTRY.

<b>Voyages.....</b>	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="font-size: 4em; margin-right: 10px;">{</div> <div> <p>From Africa.</p> <p>From Asia.</p> <p>From Iceland.</p> <p>From Norway.</p> </div> </div>
<b>Antiquities.....</b>	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="font-size: 4em; margin-right: 10px;">{</div> <div> <p>Stone Ruins.</p> <p>Earth Mounds.</p> <p>Other Things.</p> </div> </div>
<b>Indians .....</b>	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="font-size: 4em; margin-right: 10px;">{</div> <div> <p>Their Houses.</p> <p>Domestic Life.</p> <p>Employments.</p> <p>Disposition.</p> <p>Weapons.</p> <p>Dress.</p> <p>Wars.</p> <p>Money.</p> <p>Barter.</p> </div> </div>
<b>Northmen.....</b>	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="font-size: 4em; margin-right: 10px;">{</div> <div> <p>Where from.</p> <p>Explorations.</p> <p>Settlements.</p> </div> </div>

## DISCOVERIES.

By Columbus.	His early life....	{	When and where he was born. His studies and occupations.
	His great theory..	{	Shape of the earth and route to India. Evidences of the correctness of the theory. Attempt to rob him of the honor of discovery.
	His efforts for aid.	{	In the republic of Genoa. With the kings of England and Portugal. With Isabella, Queen of Spain.
	His voyages.....	{	FIRST.... { His outfit and departure. Length of voyage and incidents. Land discovered and when. Return to Spain and reception.  OTHERS. { How many after the first. Lands discovered. Wrong idea about them.
	Closing events...	{	Mistreatment to which he was subjected. The time and place of his death. The several burials of his body. The injustice done to his memory.
By the Cabots.	Of what country the Cabots were natives. Their names and their relation to each other.		
	1st voyage.....	{	From what country they sailed. By what motive they were prompted. Land discovered and time of discovery. Return to England and reception there.
	2d voyage.....	{	By whom commanded. Explorations that were made. Their importance to England.
By De Leon.	The place of his birth. His first business in America.		
	1st voyage.....	{	Why he sailed from Porto Rico. Land discovered by him and when the discovery was made. Name given to the land and why so given. His further explorations.
	2d voyage.....	{	Why he made this voyage. His experience in Florida. His death, burial, and tomb.

EXPLORATIONS.

For Spain.....	By Narvaez.	
	By De Soto.	
	By Coronado.	
	By Cabrillo.	
	By Cortes.	
For England...	By Drake.	Object in View.
	By Gilbert.	
	By Raleigh.	
	By Gosnold.	
	By Smith.	
For France....	By Cartier.	Starting Place.
	By Champlain.	
	By Marquette.	
	By La Salle.	
For Holland...	By Hudson.	Preparations.
	By May.	
		Regions Explored.
		Time of Exploration
		Important Facts.
		Incidents.
		Direct Result.
		Consequences.

## FORMATION AND DEVELOPMENT OF THE COLONIES.

Kind of Government.		Kind of government.
<div>Provincial.</div> <div>Proprietary.</div> <div>Charter.</div>	<div>New Hampshire.</div> <div>New York.</div> <div>New Jersey.</div> <div>Virginia.</div> <div>North Carolina.</div> <div>South Carolina.</div> <div>Georgia.</div>	<div>When</div> <div>Where</div> <div>Why</div>
		<div>Settled.</div>
		<div>Character of settlers.</div> <div>Noted persons among them,</div> <div>and why noted.</div>
		<div>Religious</div> <div>Political</div> <div>Indian</div>
		<div>Troubles.</div>
		<div>Cause</div> <div>Date</div> <div>Battles</div> <div>Results</div>
		<div>Of wars.</div>
		<div>Agricultural</div> <div>Mechanical</div> <div>Commercial</div> <div>Fishing</div>
		<div>Employments.</div>
		<div>Education,</div> <div>Tobacco,</div> <div>Slavery,</div> <div>Servants,</div> <div>Population.</div>
		<div>Facts about</div>
		<div>Other important facts.</div>

WAR OF THE REVOLUTION.

Causes.	Remote.....	{ England's laws of navigation, trade and manufacture. Writs of Assistance. Taxation without representation.
	Near.....	{ Stamp Act. Tea Tax.
Preliminary Events.	The Boston Massacre. The Boston Tea Party. The Boston Port Bill.	{ When, where, consequences.
	First Continental Congress...	{ How composed. Where assembled. Measures.
Events of 1776.	Battle of Lexington.....	{ When, Where, Result and effect.
	Capture of Ticonderoga. ....	{ Its hero, Consequence.
	Election of Washington to command the army.	
	Battle of Bunker Hill .....	{ When, Where, Commanders, Result and effect.
	Montgomery's operations and defeat in Canada. Evacuation of Boston by the British.	
Events of 1776.	Battle of Fort Moultrie.....	{ Where fought, Forces engaged, Commanders, Result and effect.
	Declaration of Independence.	{ By whom, when, and where made. Effect.
	Battle of Long Island.....	{ Loss of Brooklyn and New York Battle of Harlem Heights. Battle of White Plains. Battle of Fort Washington. Execution of Hale. Retreat of Washington.
	Battle of Trenton.....	{ Washington's motive. His crossing the Delaware. Capture of Hessians. Effect of the victory.
	Aid extended by Morris to the cause.	

## Events of 1777.

Battle of Princeton.

Burgoyne's  
Invasion.Cause  
events.

Capture of Ticonderoga.  
Battle of Hubbardton.  
Battle of Oriskany.  
Arnold's operations.  
Battle of Bennington.  
Battles of Stillwater.

Surrender of Burgoyne.

Result  
events.

Northern part of New York in pos-  
session of the Americans.  
New England freed from isolation.  
Alliance with and help from France.

Expedition  
against  
Philadelphia.

By whom conducted.  
By what route taken.  
At what place landed.

Battle of  
Brandywine.

Where and when,  
Commanders,  
Foreign officers,  
Result.

Battle of Paoli.

Battle of  
Germantown.

When, where,  
and why fought,  
and result.

Washington's army at Valley Forge.

## Events of 1778.

Massacres at Wyoming and Cherry Valley.

Capture of Savannah by the British.

Alliance  
with  
France.Consequence  
of

British evacuate Philadelphia.  
Battle of Monmouth.  
Battle near Rhode Island.  
Battle to recover Savannah (1779)  
Surrender of Cornwallis (1781).

Events of 1779.	Capture of Stony Point.	
	Expedition against the Indians.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Why made,</li> <li>By whom conducted,</li> <li>Result.</li> </ul>
	Victory on the Ocean.....	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Where,</li> <li>When,</li> <li>Ships engaged,</li> <li>Commanders,</li> <li>Result.</li> </ul>
	French and Americans defeated at Savannah.	
Events of 1780.	Capture of Charleston by the British.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Preliminary events,</li> <li>Commanders,</li> <li>When accomplished,</li> <li>Result and effect.</li> </ul>
	Gates's Campaign at the South.	
	Arnold's Treason.....	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Why he turned traitor.</li> <li>His correspondence and offer.</li> <li>When, where, how, and with whom he conferred.</li> <li>André's route, capture, and execution.</li> <li>Arnold in Virginia and Connecticut. His after life.</li> </ul>
	Battle of Cowpens.....	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When and where,</li> <li>The commanders,</li> <li>Result.</li> </ul>
Events of 1781.	Greene's Campaign at the South.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Retreat from Cornwallis,</li> <li>Battle of Guilford C. H.,</li> <li>Battle of Hobkirk's Hill,</li> <li>Battle of Eutaw Springs.</li> </ul>
	Surrender of Cornwallis.....	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When and where,</li> <li>Forces engaged,</li> <li>Commanders,</li> <li>Result and effect.</li> </ul>

1783. Treaty of Peace.

1787. Constitution of the United States framed.



## SECOND WAR WITH ENGLAND.

Causes.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>England's right-of-search claim.</li> <li>Impressment of American seamen.</li> <li>Seizure of American ships as prizes.</li> </ul>
Events of 1812.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>War declared against England.</li> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>"Surrender of Hull."</li> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>What was</li> <li>When was it</li> <li>Where was it</li> <li>Why was it</li> <li>By whom was it</li> </ul> </li> <li>Hull's trial and pardon.</li> </ul> </li> <li>Battle of Queenstown.</li> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Naval victories.</li> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Captures by the Essex.</li> <li>By the Constitution (first).</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> </ul>
Events of 1813.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Recovery of Michigan</li> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Battle of Lake Erie....</li> <li>Battle of the Thames..</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Operations at Lake Ontario.</li> <li> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Capture of York.....</li> <li>Sackett's Harbor saved.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> </li> <li>Action between the Shannon and Chesapeake.</li> </ul>

Events of 1814

Events of 1814	Invasion of Canada.	Capture of Fort Erie.	
		Battle of Chippewa....	How begun.
			Forces engaged.
			Commanders.
	Campaign against Washington and Baltimore.	Battle of Lundy's Lane	Result.
			How begun.
			Commanders.
			Forces engaged.
		Evacuation of Fort Erie.	Miller's act.
			Result.
	Campaign against Washington and Baltimore.	By whom conducted.	
		When Washington was captured.	
		Excesses of the captors.	
		Destruction of buildings.	
Events of 1814	Campaign against Washington and Baltimore.	Forces against Baltimore.	
		Events with the land force.	
		Bombardment .....	Name of fort.
			Length of attack.
			Result.
	Jackson's campaign against the Creeks.	His campaign against the British in Florida.	Star-Spangled Banner
Events of 1814	British invasion of New York.	By way of Lake Champlain.	
		Commanders on the Lake.	
		Battle in Plattsburg Bay.	
		Operations on the land.	
	Treaty of Peace.	Result and effect.	
		Where and when made.	
		Names of Peace Commissioners.	
		Terms of the treaty.	
	1815. Battle of New Orleans.	Defects of the treaty.	
		When.	
Events of 1814	1815. Battle of New Orleans.	Commanders.	
		Result.	
	1815. Battle of New Orleans.	When.	
		Commanders.	
	1815. Battle of New Orleans.	Result.	
		When.	
	1815. Battle of New Orleans.	Commanders.	
		Result.	
	1815. Battle of New Orleans.	When.	
		Commanders.	

**WAR WITH MEXICO.**

**Cause of the War.** { Annexation of Texas,  
Invasion of territory,  
Mexico's claim to territory.

**Taylor's Campaign.** { Battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma. { When,  
Where,  
Forces engaged,  
Incidents,  
Results.  
  
Taylor takes possession of Matamoras.  
Taylor captures the city of Monterey.  
  
Battle of Buena Vista... { When,  
Where,  
Commanders,  
How begun,  
Taylor never surrenders,  
Result.

**Scott's Campaign..** { How, when, and where he reached Mexico.  
Capture of Vera Cruz.  
  
Battle of Cerro Gordo .. { When,  
Where,  
Commanders,  
Incidents,  
Result.  
  
Occupation of the city of Jalapa.  
Operations around the City of Mexico.  
The city entered by Scott's army.

Overland expeditions.

Operations on the Pacific coast.

**Treaty of Peace...** { Where made,  
When made,  
Its terms.

**GREAT CIVIL WAR.**

Cause of the War.

Its first military contest... {  
Near what city.  
Name of the fort.  
Commanders.  
Length of contest.  
Result and effect.

First Battle of Bull Run .. {  
When and where.  
How begun.  
Commanders.  
Result and effect.

Capture of Fort Henry  
and Fort Donelson. {  
Where and when.  
Importance of the forts.  
By whom defended.  
By whom attacked.  
Incidents and result.

Battle of Shiloh ..... {  
When and where.  
Commanders first day.  
Result first day.  
Reinforcements.  
Commanders second day.  
Final result, and effect.

Capture of Island No. 10.

Capture of New Orleans.. {  
Union commander.  
His forces engaged.  
How he proceeded.  
Forces opposed to him.  
The contest and result.  
Union commander in the city

Siege of Vicksburg ..... {  
Location of Vicksburg.  
Commander of its defenses.  
Union commander.  
Incidents of the siege.  
When ended and result.  
Surrender of Port Hudson.

The war in Missouri.

McClellan's campaign against Richmond.

Battle between the two iron ships.

Lee's first invasion of the North.	{	Second Battle of Bull Run.	{	When, where.
		Battle of South Mountain.		Commanders.
		Capture of Harper's Ferry.		Result.
		Battle of Antietam .....		When, where.
				Commanders.
				Result.
				Lee's Retreat.
Battle of Freder- icksburg.	{	When and where.	{	When and where.
		Union commander.		Commanders.
		His object.		Result.
		Confederate commander.		Lee's Retreat.
Emancipation Proclamation.	{	When and where.	{	When and where.
		Union commander.		Commanders.
		His object.		Result.
		Confederate commander.		Lee's Retreat.
Battle of Chancel- lorsville.	{	Where and when.	{	Where and when.
		Union Commander.		Commanders.
		His object.		Result.
		Confederate commanders.		Importance of result
Lee's second inva- sion of the North.	{	Battle of Gettysburg....	{	Lincoln's speech.
Contest in Tennes- see and Georgia.	{	Battles of Chickamauga and Chattanooga.	{	Where and when.
				Commanders.
				Incidents.
				Distinguished officers.
				Result.
				Its importance.

	{	From what place started.
		At what time.
		Its first object.
		Battles.
		Capture of Atlanta.
		Fate of the city.
Sherman's Campaign .....	{	March to the Sea.
		Incidents of the march.
		Fort McAllister.
		Capture of Savannah.
		Capture of Columbia.
		Capture of Charleston.
	{	Northward march.
Union victories at Franklin and Nashville.	{	When,
		Where,
	{	Commanders.
Battle between the Kearsarge and the Alabama.	{	Previous history of the Alabama.
		When and where did the battle take place.
	{	Incidents of the battle.
		Result and consequence.
	{	The Alabama claims.
Sheridan and Early in the Shenandoah Valley.		
Grant's Campaign in Virginia.....	{	When and how begun.
		Object of the campaign.
	{	Battles and incidents.
		Petersburg, Richmond.
	{	Appomattox Court-House
Closing events of the war.		

## FREMONT IN THE CONQUEST OF CALIFORNIA.

1. What motives prompted President Polk to send Fremont across the great mountains of the West in 1845, and what instructions, if any, were afterward sent to Fremont (p. 277), were long a mystery to the public. In 1890, the learned author, H. H. Bancroft, put forth the last volume of his "History of the Pacific States of North America." In that same year occurred the death of Fremont. Next year Mrs. Fremont published a narrative based upon records left by her husband; and now this narrative, in connection with Bancroft's great work and other recent publications, enables us to see through the mystery that so long enveloped the Fremont expedition.

2. We are told that "President Polk entered on his office (in March, 1845) with a fixed determination to acquire California, if he could acquire it in an honorable and just manner;" and, further, that "private instructions" were given to Fremont "to foil England by carrying the war, then imminent with Mexico, into Mexico's territory of California" (p. 278). Fremont's ostensible object was "to explore what had hitherto been believed to be an uninhabitable desert, and thence to find the most direct routes to the Pacific coast."

3. Reaching Monterey, in California, Fremont obtained permission from General Castro, the Mexican official in charge there, "to bring his party into the settlements, in order to refit and obtain supplies." Permission was given, but about a month later, Fremont was ordered by Castro to leave the country, whereupon he withdrew to a mountain peak, and there built a log fort, over which he raised the American flag. Not being attacked, as had been threatened, he moved northward, and just as he had entered the Oregon region, was overtaken by Lieutenant Gillespie, who had been sent to him by James Buchanan, Polk's Secretary of State. This meeting between the two men took place, as it happened, on the 9th of May, the very next day after the first battle of the war (p. 276).

4. The letters brought by Gillespie, and his verbal communications, whatever they were, satisfied Fremont that the time had come for him to act in conformity with the "private instructions" which he had received in Washington nine months before. So he turned about, and as he proceeded southward, a number of American settlers joined his party. Counting upon the approval and support of the "Pathfinder," a band of Americans took possession of the town of Sonoma (June 14, 1846), and raised a flag on which they had painted the picture of a bear. This emblem was known as the Bear Flag. Fremont thwarted hostile movements of Mexicans and Indians, and, in co-operation with the naval forces under Commodore Stockton, was a prominent agent in gaining possession of California.

# APPENDIX.

---

## THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

*A Declaration by the Representatives of the United States of America in Congress assembled, July 4th, 1776.*

WHEN, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal ; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights ; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed ; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established, should not be changed for light and transient causes ; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown, that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But, when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having, in direct object, the establishment of an absolute



tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world :

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.\*

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operation till his assent should be obtained ; and, when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.†

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature; a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only. ‡

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures. §

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people. ||

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected; whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise ; the state remaining, in the meantime, exposed to all the danger of invasion from without, and convulsions within. ¶

\* That is, laws passed by the Colonial Assemblies, in relation to commerce, finance, etc.

† Some of the Provincial governors endeavored to conciliate the Indian tribes by treaties of alliance and other measures ; but the king, fearing that the colonists would thus acquire too much strength, and be less dependent upon the British crown, instructed the governors to desist from all such measures till his consent should be given ; and failed subsequently to give such consent.

‡ In 1774, a bill was passed which took the government of Massachusetts out of the hands of the people, vesting the nomination of judges, etc., in the crown. It also abridged the privilege of popular election. The people then demanded the passage of laws for the " accommodation of large districts of people," but were told that they must first " relinquish the right of representation in the legislature."

§ This has reference to the passage of the Boston Port Bill, by which the Custom-house, Courts, etc., were removed to Salem ; while the public records were kept at Boston.

|| The Colonial Assembly of Massachusetts, in 1768, invited by circular the other Assemblies to join it in opposing the urgent measures of Great Britain, and was dissolved for so doing. Other Assemblies were dissolved for similar reasons, and in the same arbitrary manner.

¶ This was the case in regard to the Assemblies of New York and Massachusetts, which were dissolved by royal authority, and not permitted to reassemble for several months, the States in the mean time being in great peril of " invasion from without, and convulsions within."

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States ; for that purpose, obstructing the laws for the naturalization of foreigners ; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.\*

He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.†

He has made judges dependent on his will alone, for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.‡

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people, and eat out their substance.§

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislatures.¶

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.¶

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws ; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation : \*\*

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us ; ††

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment, for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States ; ‡‡

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world ; §§

For imposing taxes on us without our consent ; ||

\* The king dreaded the increasing power of the colonies, as well as the advance of democratic ideas in them. The German immigration was especially checked by obstacles and discouragements.

† By the act of 1774, Massachusetts was deprived of its own judiciary, the judges being appointed by the king.

‡ The salaries of the judges were paid under the royal authority, from moneys obtained from the people.

§ The passage of the Stamp Act, and the other similar acts, gave rise to the appointment of swarms of tax-collectors, etc.

¶ The armies employed in the French and Indian War were continued in the colonies after the treaty of 1763.

¶ Thus General Gage, a military commander, was made governor of Massachusetts ; and the military were employed to enforce the Boston Port Bill.

\*\* The Board of Trade was created to act independently of colonial legislation, and almost absolute power was conferred on the king.

†† Large forces were levied and sent over by vote of the English Parliament, to control the inhabitants.

‡‡ In 1768, some mariners were tried in Annapolis, Md., for the murder of two citizens, and in the face of clear proof of their guilt were acquitted. Similar instances occurred in other places.

§§ Such had been the result of the Navigation Acts. The British navy was also employed to break up the colonial trade with the French and Spanish West Indies.

|| Such as the Stamp duties, the tax on paper, painters' colors, tea, etc.

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefit of trial by jury ; \*

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offences ; †

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies ; ‡

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the powers of our governments ; §

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever. |

He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us. ¶

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people. \*\*

He is, at this time, transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny already begun, with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation. ††

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands. ‡‡

\* In trials for violation of the revenue laws, under the Commissioners of Customs, the accused were not allowed the benefit of a jury.

† Persons charged with riot, resistance to the magistrates, might, by a law passed in 1774, be transported to Great Britain or other places for trial.

‡ The law of 1774 (referred to on p. 159) abolished the popular legislature in Canada, and appointed royal officers to make laws for the province, except to raise taxes. This gave the British a firm hold of Canada, and enabled them to use it to advantage against the colonies during the Revolution : hence the efforts of Congress to gain possession of that province in 1775.

§ This was done in the case of the judiciary of Massachusetts, already referred to. Other officers besides judges were made dependent on the crown, in opposition to the chartered rights of the people.

| After the dissolution of the colonial legislatures, before mentioned, several of the governors presumed to legislate arbitrarily for the colonies, giving to their proclamations the force of laws.

¶ The king, in 1775, declared the colonies in open rebellion ; and he sanctioned the acts of the governors in employing Indian warfare against them. He also employed German mercenaries to war against them. In these acts he abdicated the proper functions of government, and placed the colonies beyond the pale of his protection.

\*\* These acts were performed by the naval commanders. Charlestown was burned by the British fleet.

†† This is covered, in a general way, in the article already referred to.

‡‡ The crews of American ships captured by the British, were, by Act of Parliament, treated not as prisoners of war, but as *slaves*, and were impressed into the king's service.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.\*

In every stage of these oppressions, we have petitioned for redress, in the most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince, whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attention to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts made by their Legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, enemies in war, in peace, friends.

We, therefore, the representatives of the United States of America, in general Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, that these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as free and independent States, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which independent States may of right do. And, for the support of this declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

The foregoing Declaration was, by order of Congress, engrossed, and signed by the following members:

JOHN HANCOCK.

---

\* Dunmore, in Virginia, endeavored to excite the slaves to rise against their masters. The Indians were, under instructions from the British ministry, instigated by several of the colonial governors to attack the colonists. Dreadful massacres were the consequence.

The Declaration was signed by the president (John Hancock) and secretary of Congress, and so published. The other signatures were afterward appended.

*New Hampshire.*

Josiah Bartlett,  
William Whipple,  
Matthew Thornton.

*Massachusetts Bay.*

Samuel Adams,  
John Adams,  
Robert Treat Paine,  
Elbridge Gerry.

*Rhode Island.*

Stephen Hopkins,  
William Ellery.

*Connecticut.*

Roger Sherman,  
Samuel Huntington,  
William Williams,  
Oliver Wolcott.

*New York.*

William Floyd,  
Phillip Livingston,  
Francis Lewis,  
Lewis Morris.

*New Jersey.*

Richard Stockton,  
John Witherspoon,  
Francis Hopkinson,  
John Hart,  
Abraham Clark.

*Pennsylvania.*

Robert Morris,  
Benjamin Rush,  
Benjamin Franklin,  
John Morton,  
George Clymer,  
James Smith,  
George Taylor,  
James Wilson,  
George Ross.

*Delaware.*

Cæsar Rodney,  
George Read,  
Thomas M<sup>c</sup>Kean.

*Maryland.*

Samuel Chase,  
William Paca,

Thomas Stone,  
Charles Carroll, of Carrollton.

*Virginia.*

George Wythe,  
Richard Henry Lee,  
Thomas Jefferson,  
Benjamin Harrison,  
Thomas Nelson, Jr.,  
Francis Lightfoot Lee,  
Carter Braxton.

*North Carolina.*

William Hooper,  
Joseph Hewes,  
John Penn.

*South Carolina.*

Edward Rutledge,  
Thomas Heyward, Jr.,  
Thomas Lynch, Jr.,  
Arthur Middleton.

*Georgia.*

Button Gwinnett,  
Lyman Hall,  
George Walton.

## THE CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

**Steps that led to the Union of the Colonies.**—In 1643, four of the New England colonies united to protect themselves against the hostility of the Indians, Dutch, and French. More than a hundred years later, delegates from the seven colonies north of the Potomac met at Albany, N. Y. (1754). Their object was to make a treaty with the Six Nations of Indians, also to agree upon some concert of action against the inroads of the French. A plan for a union of all the colonies, proposed by Benjamin Franklin, a delegate from Pennsylvania, was accepted, but, being submitted to them and to the king, was rejected. The colonies thought it gave too much power to the king; the king thought it gave too much power to the colonies.

The Stamp Act, passed by Parliament in 1765, was followed the same

year by a Congress in the city of New York, in which nine of the colonies were represented. A Declaration of Rights was adopted, and appeals were made to king and Parliament. The wrong measures of Parliament, particularly the claim of the right to tax the colonies, were followed in 1774 by what is known as the First Continental Congress, in which all the colonies, except Georgia, were represented. Philadelphia was the meeting place. As before, a Declaration of Rights was adopted, and a petition was sent to the king. No redress coming from England, but, instead, regiments of the king's troops to overawe the colonists, the Second Continental Congress was held in Philadelphia. All the colonies being represented, the title of *The Thirteen United Colonies* began to be used (Sept., 1775); and ten months later (July 4, 1776), they were declared to be *The Thirteen United States of America*.

**Colonial Forms of Government.**—Up to this time the colonies had not been ruled alike. When they threw off the king's yoke, New Hampshire, New York, New Jersey, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia were under the control of governors appointed by the king, who did their royal master's bidding. This kind of government was called *provincial or royal*. Pennsylvania, Delaware, and Maryland, having been granted to persons called proprietors, were under *proprietary rule*. To Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut had been given charters which secured to them certain political rights, hence they were under *charter rule*.

**Articles of Confederation.**—The Declaration of Independence made the colonies States. Eight days after, a committee of Congress reported a draft of Articles of Confederation for the government of the thirteen States. These were discussed and amended, but not approved before November of the following year (1777), when they were submitted to the States for ratification. They could not go into effect without the approval of every State. Maryland was the last to meet the requirement, and when her delegates signed the Articles, March 1st, 1781, the Confederacy was complete.

**Defects of the Articles.**—The war had been carried on already nearly six years. The Articles, it had been expected, would give to Congress the necessary power to procure all the money needed to carry on the war with vigor. They did not, nor did they give Congress power to regulate commerce, or even to punish law-breaking. Several years passed, the war was over, when delegates from all the States except Rhode Island met in Philadelphia to so alter the Articles as to remove their great defects. Discussion soon proved that it would be far better to reject the Articles entirely, and in their place adopt something very

different. The result was the *Constitution of the United States*, the same, with amendments made in after years, that we now have.

**Adoption of the Constitution.**—The Constitution, completed by its framers on the 17th of September, 1787, was at once submitted to the States for ratification, the approval of nine States being necessary before it could go into operation. It met with stout opposition. Its friends, the friends of a strong federal government, were called Federalists. Its opponents, unwilling to take certain great powers from the States and give them to the general government, were called Anti-Federalists. Three of the States, Delaware, Pennsylvania, and New Jersey, adopted the Constitution before the end of the year. All the others, North Carolina and Rhode Island excepted, adopted it the next year.

**First Congress under the Constitution.**—The Second Continental Congress, though changed from time to time in its membership since its first session fourteen years before, was still in existence. After nine States had adopted the Constitution, this old Congress ordered an election for President and Vice-President, and for members of a new Congress; and decided that its own existence should end on the 4th of March, 1789. On that day the new Congress ought to have met, but a quorum of its members had not arrived. A quorum at length appearing, the electoral votes were counted. Washington had received every vote. He was declared the President elect. John Adams had received a sufficient number to entitle him to the next place. He was declared the Vice-President elect. On the 30th of April, 1789, in the city of New York, Washington was inaugurated.

#### THE CONSTITUTION WAS ADOPTED AS FOLLOWS BY:

Delaware.....Dec. 7, 1787	Maryland.....April 28, 1788
Pennsylvania.....Dec. 12, 1787	South Carolina.....May 23, 1788
New Jersey.....Dec. 18, 1787	New Hampshire.....June 21, 1788
Georgia.....Jan. 2, 1788	Virginia.....June 26, 1788
Connecticut.....Jan. 9, 1788	New York.....July 26, 1788
Massachusetts.....Feb. 6, 1788	North Carolina.....Nov. 21, 1789
Rhode Island.....May 29, 1790.	

“The inauguration of Washington was delayed for several days by a question which had arisen as to the title by which the President elect was to be addressed. The question had been mooted without Washington’s privity, and contrary to his desire, as he feared that any title might awaken the sensitive jealousy of Republicans at a moment when it was all-important to conciliate public good will to the new form of government. It was a relief to him, therefore, when it was finally resolved that the address should be simply ‘the President of the United States.’”—IRVING’S *Life of Washington*.

# THE CONSTITUTION.

## PREAMBLE.

WE, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this CONSTITUTION for the United States of America.

## ARTICLE I. THE LEGISLATIVE DEPARTMENT.

### SECTION I. *Congress in General.*

All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

---

PREAMBLE.—What gives to the Constitution of the United States its supreme importance? *Ans.* It is the foundation law of the United States: no other law can come in conflict with it. By whom was it ordained and established? How is that true? *Ans.* The men who framed the Constitution, and those who voted to adopt it in the State legislatures, represented the people. What do we learn from its Preamble? How many and what purposes are named? What may we therefore infer as respects the discarded Articles of Confederation?

How many and what are the most common forms of government in the world? *Ans.* Three: the monarchic, in which the supreme power is in one person; the aristocratic, in which the supreme power is in a few persons; and the democratic, in which the supreme power is in the people. Under which form do we live? Is ours a perfect or pure democracy? Why not? *Ans.* All the people do not meet in one assembly to make and execute the laws. What particular form of government is ours? *Ans.* It is called a democratic-republic, the supreme power being in the hands of persons chosen by the people. By what name is our government commonly called? *Ans.* The Federal Government. Why is it so called? *Ans.* Because several States are federated or united into one union under it. By how many and what great departments is the Federal Government carried on? *Ans.* Three: the legislative, the judicial, and the executive. What are their duties? *Ans.* The legislative department makes the laws, the executive puts them into execution, and the judicial decides cases in dispute under them: the Articles of Confederation had no executive or judicial departments.

ARTICLE I.—SEC. I. By what name do we call the legislative department of the United States? Of how many and what parts does it consist? Whom do they represent? *Ans.* Both represent the people; the Senate in addition represents the States. Are we in the habit of saying the Senate and the House of Representatives when speaking of the two bodies? *Ans.* We oftener say the Senate and the House. What is the object of having two houses rather than one? *Ans.* To prevent hasty legislation. Of how many houses did Congress consist under the Articles of Confederation? *Ans.* Only one.



---

## SECTION II. *House of Representatives.*

**1st Clause.** The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States, and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State legislature.

**2d Clause.** No person shall be a Representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

**3d Clause.** Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and, excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons. (See Article XIV. of the Amendments.) The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of Representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one Representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

---

**Sec. II.—1st Clause.** Of whom is the House of Representatives composed? What do you understand by an elector? What qualifications give him the right to vote for a member of the House?

**2d Clause.** What three qualifications must a Representative possess?

**3d Clause.** How were Representatives apportioned before the Constitution was amended? By what rule was the apportionment then determined? State, again, who were and who were not included. What was meant by "all other persons"? *Ans.* Slaves. How do you understand the count as regards the slaves? *Ans.* Five of them counted as three free men. Why was that so arranged? *Ans.* Though slave-owners called their slaves "property," they were unwilling to lose representation in Congress: the three-fifth arrangement was a compromise. Is that now the law? (See the 14th Amendment.) What change did the 14th Amendment effect? When was the first census taken? The second? How often is the census taken? When will the next be taken? With what objects is it taken? How does the census, as last taken, help the people? Can a State be deprived of representation in the lower house of Congress? What is the exact law on that point? How many members were in the first House? Which State sent the largest number? Which the smallest? How many members are in the present House?

*4th Clause.* When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

*5th Clause.* The House of Representatives shall choose their speaker and other officers ; and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

### SECTION III. •The Senate.

*1st Clause.* The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, chosen by the legislature thereof, for six years ; and each Senator shall have one vote.

*2d Clause.* Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the Senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year, of the second class at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year ; and if vacancies happen, by resignation or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any State, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

*3d Clause.* No person shall be a Senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

*4th Clause.* The Vice-President of the United States shall be presi-

---

*4th Clause.* In what manner are vacancies in the House filled ?

*5th Clause.* How does the House get its presiding officer ? By what title is he known ? *Ans.* The Speaker. What are his duties ? What sole power does the House possess ? What is meant by impeachment ? *Ans.* The act of accusing an officer of misconduct in office. Who are subject to impeachment ? *Ans.* The President, the Vice-President, and all civil officers of the government. What notable impeachment case can you recall ? (History, p. 329.)

*Sect. III.—1st Clause.* How many members compose the present United States Senate ? How do you know that ? Who sent them to the Senate ? For how long are they sent ? How does the process of choosing a Senator differ from the process of choosing a Representative ? What difference is there in their terms of office ? What right has a Senator as respects voting ?

*2d Clause.* Did every Senator chosen for the first Congress serve six years ? Explain what was done, and give the reason. How are vacancies in the Senate filled ? Explain how the Senate is a continuous body.

*3d Clause.* What is required as to the age of a Senator ? His citizenship ? His residence ? How do these requirements compare with those for a Representative ? Why should they be greater in one case than in the other ?

*4th Clause.* What connection has the Vice-President of the United States with Congress ? When may he vote ?

dent of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

*5th Clause.* The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president pro tempore, in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

*6th Clause.* The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall all be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the chief-justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

*7th Clause.* Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit under the United States; but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

#### SECTION IV. *Both Houses.*

*1st Clause.* The times, places, and manner of holding elections for Senators and Representatives, shall be prescribed in each State by the legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time by law make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing Senators.

*2d Clause.* The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

#### SECTION V. *The Houses Separately.*

*1st Clause.* Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns,

*5th Clause.* Has he a right to vote in the Senate when he acts as President of the United States? Who then takes his place in the Senate? How long can the Senate's presiding officer, so elected, occupy the place? *Ans.* He may be removed any time by a vote of the Senators. Now state how under three different circumstances the presiding officer of the Senate is elected.

*6th Clause.* What is the Senate's position respecting impeachment? What preliminary act must the Senators perform? How many votes are necessary to a conviction? How is the Senate organized when the President of the United States is on trial? (*HISTORY*, p. 329).

*7th Clause.* What punishment may be inflicted by the Senate in impeachment cases? What further punishment may be inflicted?

*Sec. IV.—1st Clause.* How is the power of Congress limited in the matter of choosing Senators? What has Congress done in respect to the election of Representatives? *Ans.* The election is now by districts in every State and Territory on the first Tuesday after the first Monday in November of every "even year."

*2d Clause.* How often must Congress meet? On what particular day? What is said about changing the day?

*Sec. V.—1st Clause.* Of what is each House the judge as respects its members?

and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business ; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner and under such penalties as each house may provide.

*2d Clause.* Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

*3d Clause.* Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy ; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house on any question shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

*4th Clause.* Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

#### SECTION VI. *Privileges and Disabilities of Members.*

*1st Clause.* The Senators and Representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases, except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same ; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

*2d Clause.* No Senator or Representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority

---

How many members are a quorum ? What power does a quorum possess ? What two things may a less number do ? What is the difference between a plurality and a majority ?

*2d Clause.* What power does each House possess over its rules and members ?

*3d Clause.* What is the duty of each house as respects its journal and vote of its members ?

*4th Clause.* What restriction is imposed respecting adjournment ?

SEC. VI.—*1st Clause.* What pay does a member of Congress receive ? *Ans.* \$5,000 a year ; he also receives mileage, that is, a certain sum per mile for his travelling expenses to and from Congress. Who pays him ? What special privileges has he ? In what cases has he no such privileges ? What is treason ? (See Art. III., Sec. III.) What is felony ? Why have members of Congress those privileges ? *Ans.* That the people who elected them may not be deprived of their services. How far are they responsible for what they say in Congress ? Why is this ? *Ans.* That they may be perfectly free to say what they think ought to be said.

*2d Clause.* How are they shut out from other office ? What check is imposed upon national office-holders ?

of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time ; and no person holding any office under the United States, shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

### SECTION VII. *Mode of Passing Laws.*

*1st Clause.* All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives ; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments as on other bills.

*2d Clause.* Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of the United States ; if he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such reconsideration two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

*3d Clause.* Every order, resolution, or vote to which the concurrence

---

SEC. VII.—*1st Clause.* May a revenue bill be started in the Senate ? What is the law on the subject ? Why is this so ? *Ans.* Because the House represents the people more directly. What control has the Senate over revenue bills ? What is meant by revenue bills ?

*2d Clause.* After a bill has been passed by Congress, what is done with it at once ? Why is it sent to him ? Is he compelled to sign it ? How does his signature affect the bill ? Can a bill become a law without his signature ? Name the two events. If the President returns a bill to Congress with his objection, what is the act called ? *Ans.* A veto. If he permits it to die after the adjournment of Congress without act on his part, what is his course called ? *Ans.* A pocket veto. Now state the difference between a veto and a pocket veto. Describe the proceedings of Congress when a vetoed bill is considered. State fully the three ways in which laws are made. In what ways may bills passed by Congress fail to become law ? Which has the higher authority, the Constitution or the laws enacted by Congress ? Why ?

*3d Clause.* What papers of Congress besides law bills are sent to the President ? What further is done with them ? Why should such papers be sent to the President ? *Ans.* To prevent wrong legislation : Congress might pass a law calling it an order, resolution, or vote, and so put it beyond danger of being vetoed. What act of Congress need not be referred to the President for his approval ?

of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States ; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

### SECTION VIII. *Powers granted to Congress.*

The Congress shall have power—

*1st Clause.* To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States ; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States ;

*2d Clause.* To borrow money on the credit of the United States ;

*3d Clause.* To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes ;

*4th Clause.* To establish a uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States ;

*5th Clause.* To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures ;

Sec. VIII.—*1st Clause.* What is a tax ? *Ans.* A duty laid by the government, for its use, on persons, or on the property or income of persons. Why are the words *taxes, duties, imports, and excises* used in the Constitution ? *Ans.* To cover all the usual methods of taxation. What power has Congress in this matter ? How many kinds of taxes are there ? *Ans.* Two ; direct and indirect. What do we commonly mean when we use the word taxes ? *Ans.* Direct taxes, such as are laid on persons, the same being called poll-taxes, and on property and incomes. Duties ? *Ans.* Indirect taxes, meaning such as are laid on goods imported or exported. (See Sec. IX., 5th clause.) Imports ? *Ans.* Taxes on goods imported. Excises ? *Ans.* Taxes on goods produced and used in this country. How were taxes paid in Virginia in the early colonial times ? (See p. 123.) How are taxes now imposed by the United States Government ?

*2d Clause.* What power has Congress in respect to borrowing money ?

*3d Clause.* In respect to regulating commerce ?

*4th Clause.* In respect to naturalization ? What is meant by naturalization. *Ans.* The act of giving to aliens the rights and privileges of citizens. Who are aliens ? Who are citizens of the United States ? (See 14th Amendment, p. 30.) When may an alien become a citizen of our country ? *Ans.* After he has lived here five years. Now, state fully how a foreigner may become a citizen. What power has Congress in respect to bankruptcies ? What are bankruptcies ? *Ans.* Cases in which persons are not able to pay their debts ; by the action of a bankrupt law, a bankrupt, on giving up all his property to his creditors, is discharged from the payment of his debts.

*5th Clause.* What power has Congress as to the coinage and value of money, and over foreign money ? How has Congress exercised this power ? *Ans.* In place of the awkward system of pounds, shillings, and pence, we now have in every part of our land the convenient decimal system of dollars and cents : no State can coin money. What is a mint ? *Ans.* The place where money is coined. Is coin the only money we have ?

*6th Clause.* To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States ;

*7th Clause.* To establish post-offices and post-roads ;

*8th Clause.* To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries ;

*9th Clause.* To constitute tribunals inferior to the supreme court ;

*10th Clause.* To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations ;

*11th Clause.* To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water ;

*12th Clause.* To raise and support armies ; but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years ;

*13th Clause.* To provide and maintain a navy ;

*14th Clause.* To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces ;

*15th Clause.* To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions ;

*16th Clause.* To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the

*Ans.* United States notes, national bank notes, State bank bills, and other currency used in buying and selling come under the term money. What may Congress do in respect to weights and measures ?

*6th Clause.* What, in respect to counterfeiting ?

*7th Clause.* In respect to post-offices and post-roads ? What is a post-road ? *Ans.* One over which the mail is carried : by law all railroads are post-roads.

*8th Clause.* In what way does Congress help science and useful arts ? What are the laws for that purpose called ? *Ans.* Copyright Laws and Patent Laws. How is an author encouraged ? *Ans.* A copyright gives him the sole right to print and sell his work in the United States for a period of twenty-eight years, at the end of which time he can have it continued fourteen years longer. How is an inventor encouraged ? *Ans.* His patent secures to him the sole right to make, use, or sell his invention in the United States for a period of seventeen years, and, if renewed, for the additional period of seven years.

*9th Clause.* What may Congress do in respect to inferior courts ?

*10th Clause.* What is said about piracy, felony, and other offences ? What is piracy ? *Ans.* Robbery on the high seas. What is understood by the term high seas ? *Ans.* The ocean to low water-mark.

*11th Clause.* What is said about war, letters of marque, and captures ? What are letters of marque and reprisal ? *Ans.* Letters granted by the government during war, giving authority to the ships named in them to prey upon the enemy's commerce : such ships, not belonging to the government, are called privateers. By whom is war declared ?

*12th to 16th Clause.* What is said about armies and appropriations for them ? About a navy ? Rules for army and navy ? Employing the militia ? Fitting and governing them ? What is the ordinary way of securing men for both services ? *Ans.* By voluntary enlistments. When there is not a sufficient number, what may Congress do ?

militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;

*17th Clause.* To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the government of the United States; and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings;—and

*18th Clause.* To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

#### SECTION IX. *Powers denied to the United States.*

*1st Clause.* The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

*Ans.* Order a conscription or draft. What can you state of a draft made during the great Civil War? (See the HISTORY, p. 319.) What wise restriction enables Congress to keep control of the armies? What is meant by the militia? *Ans.* Soldiers enrolled by State authority for service in emergencies only. To what extent does the power of Congress extend over the militia? What rights are reserved to the States? Who is the head of the army and navy? (Art. II., Sec. II., 1st Clause.) Did President Lincoln exercise such command during the Civil War? Why not?

*17th Clause.* What is the capital of the United States? How is it located? Where is the District of Columbia? Why was it so named? *Ans.* In honor of Christopher Columbus. Give its early history. *Ans.* At first it comprised two plots of land, one on the north side of the Potomac, that had been a part of Maryland, the other on the south side, that had been a part of Virginia; Maryland ceded her part to the United States in 1788; next year Virginia ceded her part. The District was then a square, each side of which was ten miles long; in 1846, the part south of the Potomac was ceded back to Virginia. What large city is in the District? What control has Congress over the District? Over what places has Congress like authority? Before government can acquire land in any of the States, what process is necessary to make the title good?

*18th Clause.* What general law-making power does Congress possess?

SEC. IX.—*1st Clause.* What was meant in this clause by the term *such persons*? *Ans.* Slaves. What was the object of the clause? *Ans.* To put an end to the importation of slaves. What did Congress do to give effect to it? *Ans.* Passed an act prohibiting the importation of slaves after the 1st of January, 1808. Was not this legislation another compromise?



**2d Clause.** The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

**3d Clause.** No bill of attainder or ex post facto law shall be passed.

**4th Clause.** No capitation, or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration herein before directed to be taken.

**5th Clause.** No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State.

**6th Clause.** No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

**7th Clause.** No money shall be drawn from the treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

**8th Clause.** No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

**2d Clause.** What is the meaning of the term *habeas corpus*? *Ans.* You may have the body. What says the Constitution on this subject? What is eminently true of the writ? *Ans.* It is the most famous in the law. What is its great object? *Ans.* To bring to a speedy end illegal imprisonments of every kind. How does it operate? *Ans.* Under it a person restrained of his liberty is taken before a court of justice, and if it is found that he is wrongly imprisoned, he is set free. When may a prisoner not be able to avail himself of the writ?

**3d Clause.** What is said of a bill of attainder? Of an *ex post facto* law? What is a bill of attainder? *Ans.* An act of the legislature, inflicting the punishment of death, without trial, upon persons supposed to be guilty of high crimes. What is an *ex post facto* law? *Ans.* A law that makes an act punishable which was not punishable before the law was passed.

**4th Clause.** What is a capitation tax? *Ans.* A poll-tax. How is Congress restricted in the matter of direct taxes?

**5th Clause.** In respect to export duties? (See Sec. VIII., 1st Clause.)

**6th Clause.** In respect to port favoritism? In respect to vessels bound from one State to another?

**7th Clause.** What check is put upon payments of money? What is required as respects receipts and expenditures?

**8th Clause.** What is said about titles of nobility? About presents to office-holders? Why are these restrictions imposed? *Ans.* To prevent distinctions of rank such as exist in many countries, also undue foreign influence upon our officials. Under what circumstances might an office-holder accept a gift from a king, prince, or foreign power?

SECTION X. *Powers denied to the States.*

*1st Clause.* No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debt; pass any bill of attainder, ex post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

*2d Clause.* No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress.

*3d Clause.* No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops, or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

## ARTICLE II. THE EXECUTIVE DEPARTMENT.

SECTION I. *President and Vice-President.*

*1st Clause.* The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows :

---

SEC. X.—*1st Clause.* How are the States restricted respecting treaties, alliances, and confederations? Respecting letters of marque and reprisal? Coining money? Bills of credit? Legal tender for debt? Bill of attainder? *Ex post facto* laws? Obligation of contracts? Title of nobility? What are bills of credit? *Ans.* Notes issued as money.

*2d Clause.* What duties may a State lay on goods? Does not this interfere with the power of Congress? (See Sec. VIII., 1st Clause.) How burdensome are the State duties? *Ans.* Only sufficient to pay for the inspection of such commodities as flour and meat. What is the object of the State inspection laws? *Ans.* To protect purchasers from deception. How may the abuse of this power be checked?

*3d Clause.* What restriction is imposed upon the States in the matter of tonnage duty? As to the keeping of troops? As to war ships? Agreements or compacts? War operations? What is a duty of tonnage? *Ans.* A duty on ships reckoned on the number of tons of freight they can carry.

ART. II.—SEC. I.—*1st Clause.* Who is the chief executive officer of the United States? What is the length of his term of office? Can he serve only one term? *Ans.* The Constitution does not limit the number of terms. Who was the first President of the United States? How many terms did he serve? Why did he not serve longer? (See HISTORY, p. 224.) What has been the effect of his example? Mention the Presidents who have served two terms each. (See Table.) One term. Who is now the President? Who Vice-President? How and when was the Vice-President elected? Whose term is the longest, the President's, a Senator's, or a Representative's? What is the difference?

**2d Clause.** Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress; but no Senator or Representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

THE TWELFTH AMENDMENT TO THE CONSTITUTION.\*

**1st Clause.** The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted

\* THE FORMER METHOD OF ELECTING A PRESIDENT.—The original clause of the Constitution, prescribing the mode in which the President and Vice-President were to be elected, was repealed in 1804, and the twelfth amendment (as given above) was adopted in its place. By the original clause, the electors voted for two persons without naming their choice for the higher position, "the person having the greatest number of votes" being declared President, and the next, Vice-President. Washington, John Adams, and Jefferson (for first term) were so elected.

**2d Clause.** What is the duty of the States in the matter of appointing electors? How many electors are appointed? What do we understand as the meaning of the word *appoint* in this case? *Ans.* At first, some of the State legislatures appointed or chose electors: now, by law of Congress, all the electors are elected by the people. When does the election take place? *Ans.* On the Tuesday next after the first Monday of November, in all the States. Who are then elected? *Ans.* The Presidential electors. What persons cannot be such electors?

**12TH AMENDMENT.—1st Clause.** When do the Presidential electors meet? *Ans.* On the second Monday of January. Where? At what place in New York? *Ans.* Albany, the capital of the State. Describe their process of voting, for whom they vote, the lists they prepare, and how the lists are made valid and disposed of. What restriction is imposed upon the electors as to the two persons for whom they vote? May the electors of one State, as Ohio, vote for two inhabitants of another State, as New York? What does the President of the Senate do with the electors' certificates? How, then, is the result ascertained? When does the House of Representatives choose the President? How are the votes then taken, and how many States and votes are necessary to a choice? What length of time is given the House for the purpose? What follows in the event of the House making no choice? When and why was the 12th Amendment to the Constitution adopted? *Ans.* In 1804, to take the place of the original clause which compelled the electors to vote for two persons without naming their choice for either position: the one who received the largest number of votes, such number being a majority, was declared the President elect; the person who received the next largest, such number being a majority, was declared the Vice-President elect. Which of the Presidents were elected by the first method? *Ans.* Washington, twice; John Adams, once; and Jefferson, once. Give the particulars of the two elections made by the House. (See the Hist. pp. 230, 263.) In what emergency can another such election occur?

for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate ;—the president of the Senate shall, in presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted; the person having the greatest number of votes for President, shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President.

*2d Clause.* The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President, shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice.

*3d Clause.* But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

*4th Clause.* The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

*5th Clause.* No person except a natural-born citizen or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President; neither shall any person be eligible

---

*2d Clause.* Describe the manner of electing the Vice-President.

*3d Clause.* How do the qualifications for President and Vice-President compare?

*4th Clause.* What may Congress do as to the time for choosing electors, and the electors' time for voting? What uniformity as to the voting day must be observed? What has Congress done in that respect? (See above.)

*5th Clause.* What are the three requisites to make a person eligible to the office of President? How do they compare with those for Vice-President? United States Senator? Representative? Alexander Hamilton was born on one of the West India islands: could he have been elected President? Give the reason.

to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

*6th Clause.* In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President; and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the President and Vice-President, declaring what officer shall then act as President, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

*7th Clause.* The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

*8th Clause.* Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation :—

“I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States.”

## SECTION II. *Powers of the President.*

*1st Clause.* The President shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive

*6th Clause.* What four causes are named, any one of which would be sufficient to vacate the office of President? If there should happen to be no President or Vice-President, who would act as President? *Ans.* The succession passes to and through the cabinet in the following order: 1. Secretary of State; 2. Secretary of the Treasury; 3. Secretary of War; 4. Attorney-General; 5. Postmaster-General; 6. Secretary of the Navy; and 7. Secretary of the Interior. How long would such officer continue to act?

*7th Clause.* What is said about the President's salary and his other gain? What is his salary? *Ans.* \$50,000 a year, together with the use of the “White House” and its furniture. What is the Vice-President's salary? *Ans.* \$8,000 a year.

*8th Clause.* By what solemn obligation is the President bound? Repeat it.

*SEC. II.—1st Clause.* What is the President's relation to the army and navy? To the State militia? What may he require of the heads of departments? Is he compelled to be governed by such opinions? What executive departments are referred to? *Ans.* The seven established by Congress, namely: Of State, of the Treasury, of War, of the Post-Office, of the Navy, of the Interior, and of Agriculture; the heads of these, with the Attorney-General, compose the President's Cabinet. By whom are these heads appointed? *Ans.* By the President, with the advice and consent of the Senate. Why were those great departments created? *Ans.* To aid the President in the performance of his duties. What power has the President in respect to reprieves and pardons? What is the limit of his power?

departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

*2d Clause.* He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the Senators present concur ; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, judges of the supreme court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law ; but the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

*3d Clause.* The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions, which shall expire at the end of their next session.

### SECTION III. *Duties of the President.*

He shall from time to time give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient ; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper ; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers ; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

### SECTION IV. *Impeachment of the President.*

The President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United

*2d Clause.* By whom are treaties made ? Why are they made ? *Ans.* For peace, promotion of commerce, transportation of the mail, return of escaped criminals, and for other objects. Name some important treaties. (See pp. 287, 288.) How are ambassadors appointed ? What other officers are in like manner appointed ? How are inferior officers appointed ? Who are public ministers ? *Ans.* Officers sent to foreign courts to represent their government. Who are consuls ?

*3d Clause.* What may the President do as respects vacancies ? How long do such appointments hold ?

Sec. III. What is the President's duty in respect to information and recommendations for Congress ? To the reception of foreign ambassadors ? To the execution of the laws ? To the granting of commissions ? In what way does the President give information and advice to Congress ? *Ans.* By means of written messages. What was the previous practice ? *Ans.* Washington and John Adams read their messages in the presence of both houses of Congress. Jefferson commenced the practice of sending written messages.

Sec. IV. What is meant by the term Civil Service ? *Ans.* It includes all the persons

States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

### ARTICLE III. THE JUDICIAL DEPARTMENT.

#### SECTION I. *The United States Courts.*

The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

#### SECTION II. *Jurisdiction of the United States Courts.*

*1st Clause.* The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more States; between a State and citizens of another State; between citizens of different States; between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States, and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens, or subjects.

in the employ of the United States, except those in the army and navy. Senators, Representatives, and Territorial Judges are also excepted. When must a civil officer be removed from his position?

ART. III.—SEC. I. Which of the judicial courts is the highest in our land? What other national courts have we? *Ans.* Circuit Courts and District Courts. By whom were these courts established? How long do the judges remain in office? Can they not be removed in any event whatever? (Art. II., Sec. IV.) What is said about their compensation? Of how many judges does the Supreme Court consist? *Ans.* Nine, one Chief Justice and eight Associate Justices. What compensation do they get? *Ans.* The Chief Justice gets \$10,500 a year; the others get \$10,000 each. By whom are they appointed? (Art. II., Sec. II.) What can you state of the inferior courts? *Ans.* The District Courts, of which there are about sixty, are the lowest in grade; they hear the smaller cases: there are nine Circuit Courts. Appeals are taken from the District Courts to the Circuit Courts, and thence to the Supreme Court. What amendment has been made to the clause of the Constitution that we are considering? *Ans.* The eleventh. Repeat it (page 30).

SEC. II. *1st Clause.* To how many kinds of cases does the judicial power of United States Courts extend? *Ans.* Nine. Name them? What is admiralty jurisdiction? *Ans.* It belongs to cases arising at sea, or in connection with ships: piracy and collisions between ships come under this head.

*2d Clause.* In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, and those in which a State shall be a party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

*3d Clause.* The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

### SECTION III. *Treason.*

*1st Clause.* Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

*2d Clause.* The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture except during the life of the person attainted.

## ARTICLE IV. MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS.

### SECTION I. *State Records.*

Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may by general laws prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

---

*2d Clause.* In what cases does the Supreme Court have original jurisdiction? Appellate jurisdiction? *Ans.* But few cases have their beginning—original start—in the Supreme Court: most cases come from the Circuit Courts on appeal, hence the term *appellate jurisdiction*.

*3d Clause.* How are impeachments tried? (See before.) How are all other crimes tried? What is required as to the place for trial?

SEC. III.—*1st Clause.* How is treason defined in the Constitution? How is a person accused of treason tried? (See before.) What advantage respecting testimony does the accused have?

*2d Clause.* What is the punishment for treason? *Ans.* Death, or, if the Court so decide, imprisonment and fine. What is meant by "No attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood"? *Ans.* Guilty persons only shall be punished, not their innocent relatives.

ART. IV.—SEC. I. How are a State's acts, records, and court proceedings treated outside the State? Repeat the law.



SECTION II. *Privileges of Citizens.*

*1st Clause.* The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States.

*2d Clause.* A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

*3d Clause.* No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due. (See Article XIII. of the Amendments.)

SECTION III. *New States and Territories.*

*1st Clause.* New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.

*2d Clause.* The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

SECTION IV. *Guarantees to the States.*

The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and on application of the legislature, or of the executive (when the legislature cannot be convened), against domestic violence.

---

SEC. II.—*1st Clause.* To what State privileges are citizens of any State entitled? What is the object of this provision? *Ans.* That the citizens of every State may as citizens be on an equality in every part of the land.

*2d Clause.* What is said about fugitives from justice?

*3d Clause.* What can you say of this clause? *Ans.* It referred to slaves; under its authority, a law for the capture of runaway slaves was passed in 1850. (See 13th Amendment to the Constitution, p. 30.)

SEC. III.—*1st Clause.* In what two ways shall not new States be formed? Has not this provision been violated? (See the HISTORY, p. 303.) Give the particulars of that case. How many States belong to the Union now?

*2d Clause.* What control has Congress over United States territory? Over other United States property? What other property is meant?

SEC. IV. What guarantee is given respecting the State forms of government? What protection is each State entitled to?

## ARTICLE V. POWERS OF AMENDMENT.

The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the legislatures of two-thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid, to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress : provided that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article ; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

## ARTICLE VI. PUBLIC DEBT, SUPREMACY OF THE CONSTITUTION, OATH OF OFFICE, RELIGIOUS TEST.

*1st Clause.* All debts contracted and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the Confederation.

*2d Clause.* This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land ; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, anything in the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

*3d Clause.* The Senators and Representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution ; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

---

ART. V. In how many and what ways may the first steps be taken to amend the Constitution ? In how many and what ways may amendments be ratified ? Now state fully how the Constitution may be altered. How is a State protected in its Senate rights ?

ART. VI.—*1st Clause.* What old debts and engagements are referred to ? How were they protected ?

*2d Clause.* What is the supreme law of the land ? If a State law should be passed contrary to it, what duty is imposed upon judges ? What is the highest duty of every judge ?

*3d Clause.* By what act or form are judges so bound ? What other officials are bound in like manner ? What is said about religious tests ? What is the object of that provision ? *Ans.* To secure to every citizen the full enjoyment of religious liberty.

## ARTICLE VII. RATIFICATION OF THE CONSTITUTION.

The ratification of the conventions of nine States shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

## AMENDMENTS,

PROPOSED BY CONGRESS, AND RATIFIED BY THE LEGISLATURES OF THE SEVERAL STATES, PURSUANT TO THE FIFTH ARTICLE OF THE ORIGINAL CONSTITUTION.

ARTICLE I. *Freedom of Religion.*

Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

ARTICLE II. *Right to Bear Arms.*

A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

ARTICLE III. *Quartering Soldiers on Citizens.*

No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

ARTICLE IV. *Search-Warrants.*

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue but upon probable cause, supported by

ART. VII. If eight States only had ratified the Constitution, what would have been the consequence? What ratifications were necessary to its establishment?

AMENDMENTS. What binding force have amendments to the Constitution? *Ans.* When accepted by three-fourths of the States, they are binding on all. When were the first amendments made? *Ans.* The first ten, in 1791, the eleventh in 1793. What alterations did they effect? *Ans.* None: they only made more clear the rights of the people and the States.

ART. I. What is made certain respecting religion and church worship? Freedom of speech? Of the press? People's assemblages? Right of petition?

ART. II. The right to have and use arms? Repeat the article.

ART. III. The quartering of soldiers in private houses? (See Declaration of Independence, Appendix p. 3.)

ART. IV. Unreasonable searches and seizures? When only shall warrants issue? What is a search-warrant? *Ans.* A paper issued by a court, directing a person's premises to be searched, usually for stolen goods.

oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

#### ARTICLE V. *Trial for Crime.*

No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation.

#### ARTICLE VI. *Rights of Accused Persons.*

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.

#### ARTICLE VII. *Suits at Common Law.*

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States than according to the rules of the common law.

#### ARTICLE VIII. *Excessive Bail.*

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

---

ART. V. What protection is at first given to persons accused of infamous crimes? When may such protection be withheld? How many times may an accused person be tried? What is the meaning of that? *Ans.* After a person has been legally tried and acquitted on a criminal charge, he shall not be tried again on the same charge. When may a witness be excused from giving testimony? What protection is given to life, liberty, and property? What is said about taking private property? By what term is such government right known? *Ans.* The right of eminent domain.

ART. VI. In respect to a jury, what are the rights of an accused person? What information is he entitled to? What are his rights in respect to witnesses? Respecting counsel for his defence?

ART. VII. In what civil cases is the right of trial by jury secured? What is the effect of a jury's verdict when reviewed in other courts?

ART. VIII. What is said about excessive bail? Excessive fines? Cruel and

**ARTICLE IX. *Rights Retained by the People.***

The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

**ARTICLE X. *Reserved Rights of the States.***

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

**ARTICLE XI.**

The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit, in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

**ARTICLE XIII. *Slavery.***

SECTION I. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

SEC. II. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

**ARTICLE XIV.**

SECTION I. All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property without due process of law, nor deny any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

unusual punishments? What is meant by bail? *Ans.* Security for the prisoner's appearance in court. Why should not the bail be very large? *Ans.* Innocent persons, not being able to get large bail, might suffer long imprisonment. What rights belong to every citizen not a criminal?

ART. IX.-XII. What was the object of the 9th amendment? Is not the 10th a repetition in effect of the 9th? What is the meaning of the 11th? (For the 12th, see p. 20.)

ART. XIII. When was the 13th adopted? *Ans.* In 1864. What does it assert? How far did the force of Lincoln's famous proclamation extend? (*HISTORY*, p. 244.)

ART. XIV.—SEC. I. When was the 14th amendment adopted? *Ans.* In 1868. What does it assert as to who are citizens? As to laws respecting the rights of citizens? As to their life, liberty, and property? Their protection under the laws?

SEC. II. Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, Representatives in Congress, the executive and judicial officers of a State, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being twenty-one years of age, and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

SEC. III. No person shall be a Senator or Representative in Congress, or elector of President and Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath, as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may, by a vote of two-thirds of each house, remove such disability.

SEC. IV. The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave ; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

SEC. V. The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

---

SEC. II. How were Representatives in the lower House of Congress formerly apportioned ? (Art. I., Sec. II., 3d clause.) What is the present method ? What is the difference between the two methods ? In what event shall the basis of representation be reduced ? What persons did the 1st and 2d sections of this amendment particularly aim to help ? *Ans.* Colored persons, including all formerly in slavery. What important end has in consequence been accomplished ? *Ans.* A citizen of the United States is a citizen of any State in which he may reside. Caste is abolished.

SEC. III. What disabilities are put upon insurgents and rebels ? Who are included among such great offenders ? How may they recover their former rights and standing ?

SEC. IV. What is said about the validity of certain public debts ? What debts are meant ? What debts are declared to be illegal and void ? What particular claims can never be paid ?

## ARTICLE XV.

SECTION I. The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

SEC. II. The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

ART. XV. When was the 15th amendment adopted? *Ans.* In 1870. What does it declare? What was its main purpose? *Ans.* To give to all colored men who are citizens the unquestioned right to vote in the States in which they reside. Does the article declare positively that they shall have that right under all circumstances? *Ans.* No, but it puts them on the same footing with other citizens: if a State should adopt an educational, property, or other test, its law would exclude all the men in it, white as well as colored, who could not comply with the test.

## ADDITIONAL QUESTIONS.

1. Mention two particulars in which a limited monarchy differs from a republic.
2. What is the difference between a republic and a pure democracy?
3. What is a nation?
4. Why are laws necessary in society?
5. From what source does the United States Government derive its authority?
6. Which has the higher authority, the Constitution of the United States or the laws passed by Congress, and why?
7. Write the preamble of the Constitution.
8. Give the distinction between the legislative and judicial departments of government.
9. Mention the three branches of the United States Government, and show why they should be separate and distinct.
10. Name the seven executive departments of the government that make up the President's Cabinet, stating how their heads are chosen, and for what length of time.
11. Give the conditions of eligibility to the Presidency in regard to age, citizenship, and time of residence in the United States.
12. Describe the usual process by which a person is elected President, and state by what other process he may be elected.
13. Mention the qualifications for a citizen entitled to vote for presidential electors, as to sex, age, residence, and character.
14. How are judges of the United States Supreme Court appointed, how long do they hold office, what is their compensation, and how many are there?
15. State how Congress is organized, for how long the Senators and Representatives are elected and by whom, what is their compensation, and how the presiding officer of each house is chosen.
16. Why is a Senator's term of office longer than a Representative's?
17. Name the three classes of persons who cannot vote for presidential electors, stating why.
18. In which house of Congress must bills for revenue originate, and why was this provision made?
19. Mention three ways in any one of which a bill passed by both houses may become law.
20. To what cases does the judicial power of the United States extend?
21. What powers are vested in the President?
22. Under what circumstances is the general government authorized to interfere in the domestic concerns of a State?
23. Explain how the Senate is a continuous body.
24. Name five personal rights guaranteed by the Constitution.
25. Explain the process by which treaties are made with other nations.
26. How war may be declared.
27. When does the official year of the government begin?
28. Mention two prohibitions enjoined upon a State by the Constitution, and two things which it guarantees to each State.
29. Explain the writ of *habeas corpus*, and give a case that will show its application.
30. State how the Constitution may be altered.

# SETTLEMENT AND ADMISSION OF THE STATES.

THE STATES.	SETTLED.			ADMITTED.	
	When.	Where.	By whom.		
1 Virginia.....	1607	Jamestown....	English .....		
2 New York.....	1614	New York.....	Dutch .....		
3 Massachusetts.....	1620	Plymouth.....	English .....		
4 New Hampshire.....	1623	Little Harbor..	English .....		
5 Connecticut.....	1633	Windsor .....	English .....		
6 Maryland.....	1634	St. Mary's.....	English .....		
7 Rhode Island.....	1636	Providence.....	English .....		
8 Delaware.....	1638	Wilmington....	Swedes.....		
9 North Carolina.....	1650	Chowan River..	English .....		
10 New Jersey.....	1664	Elizabeth .....	English .....		
11 South Carolina.....	1670	Ashley River....	English .....		
12 Pennsylvania.....	1682	Philadelphia....	English .....		
13 Georgia.....	1733	Savannah .....	English .....		
14 Vermont.....	1724	Fort Dummer..	English .....	1791	Washington.
15 Kentucky.....	1775	Boonesboro'....	English .....	1792	
16 Tennessee.....	1757	Fort Loudon....	English .....	1796	
17 Ohio.....	1788	Marietta.....	English .....	1803	Jefferson.
18 Louisiana.....	1699	Iberville.....	French .....	1812	Madison.
19 Indiana.....	1790	Vincennes .....	French .....	1816	
20 Mississippi.....	1716	Natchez .....	French .....	1817	Monroe.
21 Illinois.....	1682	Kaskaskia.....	French .....	1818	
22 Alabama.....	1711	Mobile.....	French .....	1819	
23 Maine.....	1625	Bristol.....	French .....	1820	Jackson.
24 Missouri.....	1764	St. Louis.....	French .....	1821	
25 Arkansas.....	1685	Arkansas Post..	French .....	1836	
26 Michigan.....	1670	Detroit.....	French .....	1837	Tyler.
27 Florida.....	1565	St. Augustine..	Spaniards....	1845	
28 Texas.....	1692	San Antonio....	Spaniards....	1845	Polk.
29 Iowa.....	1838	Burlington.....	English .....	1846	
30 Wisconsin.....	1669	Green Bay.....	French .....	1846	Fillmore.
31 California.....	1769	San Diego.....	Spaniards....	1850	
32 Minnesota.....	1846	St. Paul.....	Americans....	1853	Buchanan.
33 Oregon.....	1811	Astoria.....	Americans....	1859	
34 Kansas.....	1850	Leavenworth....	Americans....	1861	Lincoln.
35 West Virginia.....	1774	Wheeling.....	English .....	1863	
36 Nevada.....	1850	Genoa.....	Americans....	1864	Johnson.
37 Nebraska.....	1810	Bellevue.....	Americans....	1867	
38 Colorado.....	1858	Denver.....	Americans....	1876	Grant.
39 North Dakota.....	1780	Pembina.....	Fr. traders....	1889	
40 South Dakota.....	1857	Sioux Falls....	Americans....	1889	Benjamin Harrison.
41 Montana.....	1840	Bitter Root Val.	Jt. Missions..	1889	
42 Washington.....	1845	Washougal.....	Americans....	1889	
43 Idaho.....	1834	Fort Hall.....	Americans....	1890	Cleveland.
44 Wyoming.....	1834	Fort Laramie....	Americans....	1890	
45 Utah.....	1847	Salt Lake City..	Mormons .....	1896	

OHIO.—In the case of every State except Ohio, Congress passed a distinct act of admission, or provided for admission on the issue of a proclamation by the President. Ohio's constitution, adopted by a convention in the State, came first, and in January, 1803, the President approved the first act that recognized the new State.



## THE STATES.

### THE ORIGIN OF THEIR NAMES, AND THEIR PET NAMES.

---

VIRGINIA was so called by Queen Elizabeth because it was discovered during the reign of the virgin queen. (See the History, p. 48.) Its popular name is the *Old Dominion*, the origin of which has not been determined. It is also called the *Mother of States*, because from its extensive original domain a number of States were formed, in whole or in part. The name *Mother of Presidents* is likewise given to it, because so many of the early Presidents were born in it.

NEW YORK.—The name was bestowed in compliment to the Duke of York (p. 89). This, the *Empire State*, is the most populous and the wealthiest in the Union. It is also known as the *Excelsior State*, the motto *Excelsior* being on its coat of arms.

MASSACHUSETTS.—“The name probably arose from the name of a tribe of Indians formerly at Barnstable, or from two Indian words, *mas*, signifying an *Indian arrow-head*, and *wetuset*, a hill.” Massachusetts, before the Revolution, was called the Massachusetts Bay Colony (p. 73), hence its popular name of the *Bay State*, or the *Old Bay State*.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.—The province was named after the county in England, Hampshire, in which John Mason lived (p. 72). New Hampshire is known as the *Granite State*, its mountains being largely composed of granite.

CONNECTICUT.—This was the Indian name of the river, meaning the long river. Connecticut is often alluded to as the *Land of Steady Habits*, in allusion to the staid deportment of its inhabitants. Also, the *Nutmeg State*, “the inhabitants of which have such a reputation for shrewdness that they have been jocosely accused of palming off wooden nutmegs on unsuspecting purchasers, instead of the genuine article.”

MARYLAND.—In the charter granted by Charles I. the province was named *Terra Mariae*, Mary's Land, in honor of his wife, Henrietta Maria (p. 82).

RHODE ISLAND.—The island itself, says one authority, “was so called from a fancied resemblance to the Island of Rhodes in the Mediterranean Sea.” Another authority says that, in consequence of the reddish appear-

ance of the island, it "was soon known by the Dutch as *Roodde*, or Red Island. From this is derived the name of the island and State." Rhode Island is called *Little Rhody*, it being the smallest of the States.

DELAWARE.—This State takes its name from Lord De la Warc, one of the governors of Virginia (p. 56). It is sometimes called the *Diamond State*, from its small size and great importance. Also, the *Blue Hen State*, an officer in the war of the Revolution, commanding a Delaware regiment, having asserted that no fighting cock could be truly game whose mother was not a blue hen.

NORTH CAROLINA.—The name Carolina was given to the region in honor of King Charles (*Carolus*, in Latin) II. (p. 46). When we hear any one speak of the *Old North State* we know that North Carolina is meant. It is also called the *Turpentine State*, immense quantities of turpentine being produced there.

SOUTH CAROLINA is called the *Palmetto State*, "from its arms, which contain a picture of a palmetto tree."

NEW JERSEY derived its name from the Island of Jersey (p. 90). The pet name applied to its people is the *Jersey Blues*.

PENNSYLVANIA.—The word means *Penn's woods* or *Penn's forest* (p. 94). Pennsylvania is called the *Keystone State*, "from its having been the central State of the Union at the time of the formation of the Constitution. If the names of the thirteen original States are arranged in the form of an arch, Pennsylvania will occupy the place of the keystone."

GEORGIA.—The colony was so called in honor of the king, George II. (p. 104). Georgia has been spoken of as the *Empire State of the South*, but the term more properly belongs to Texas.

VERMONT.—When the French were in possession of the St. Lawrence Valley they called the Green Mountains Vermont, *vert* meaning green, and *mont*, mountain (p. 217). This is the *Green Mountain State*, and its male inhabitants are the *Green Mountain Boys*.

KENTUCKY.—An Indian word, "signifying," says J. H. Trumbull, "at the head of a river." The popular name of the State is the *Corn-cracker State*; its inhabitants are often called *Corn-crackers*.

TENNESSEE.—An Indian word signifying *river of the big bend*. Tennessee has been called the *Volunteer State*, from the fact that during the war of 1812, and the wars against the Seminoles, it furnished large numbers of volunteer soldiers.

OHIO.—An Indian word, meaning *beautiful*. Ohio is called the *Buckeye State*, from the buckeye tree, which abounds there; and its inhabitants are called *Buckeyes*.

LOUISIANA was named in honor of Louis XIV., of France (p. 48). It

is called the *Creole State*, the descendants of the original French and Spanish settlers being a large part of the inhabitants.

INDIANA.—This name was first applied in 1768 to a grant of land north of the Ohio River, which a company of traders obtained from the Indians. Indiana is known as the *Hoosier State*, and its inhabitants as *Hoosiers*. "The word is said to be a corruption of *husher*, formerly a common term for a bully throughout the West."

MISSISSIPPI.—An Indian name, signifying the *great and long river*. Because of its numerous bayous or creeks, Mississippi is known as the *Bayou State*.

ILLINOIS.—The first part of this word, signifying *men*, is of Indian origin; the other part, *ois*, meaning *tribe of men*, is from the French. This State, in allusion to its wide-spread and beautiful prairies, is known as the *Prairie State*.

ALABAMA.—An Indian word, said to signify *here we rest*.

MAINE.—Authors do not agree as to how Maine received its name. One writer says: "It was called the *Main* land, to distinguish it from the islands along the coast, which were valuable for fishing purposes." Varney, in his *History of Maine*, says: "In 1639 Gorges procured a royal grant of land extending from the Piscataqua to the Kennebec. The name of the territory under the new charter was changed to *Maine*, in honor of the queen (Henrietta Maria, wife of Charles I.), whose patrimonial estate, as Princess of France, was the French province of *Mayne*." Maine is the *Lumber State*, the inhabitants being largely engaged in cutting and rafting lumber.

MISSOURI.—This Indian name, signifying *muddy*, was first applied to the river.

ARKANSAS.—Kansas, an Indian word, signifies *smoky water*. The prefix *ar* (*arc*), meaning *a bow*, is French. Because of the number of bears that infested its forests, Arkansas is often called the *Bear State*.

MICHIGAN.—Trumbull says: "The word is Indian, signifying *a weir for fish*." Michigan is known as the *Lake State*, it bordering on four great lakes; also as the *Wolverine State*, because of the great number of wolverines formerly abounding there. The inhabitants are sometimes designated as *Wolverines*.

FLORIDA was discovered on *Pascua Florida* day, hence its name (p. 30). Its pet name is the *Peninsula State*.

TEXAS.—"The name was derived from a small tribe of Indians that inhabited a village called *Texas*, meaning friendly." Another authority says that, "when the first Europeans landed on its shores, the Indians met them saying, *Tekas*, meaning welcome. By easy transition, *Tekas*

became Texas." Texas is called the *Lone Star State*, the Texas flag, before the admission of the State into the Union, having a single star.

IOWA.—This, according to Trumbull, is "the French form of an Indian word signifying *the drowsy or the sleepy ones*." Iowa is called the *Hawkeye State*, after an Indian chief (note on p. 262).

WISCONSIN.—This State takes its name from a tributary of the Mississippi discovered by Marquette, and called by him Masconsin (*wild, rushing channel*). Masconsin became changed to Ouisconsin, and finally to Wisconsin. Owing to the great number of badgers that were formerly in the State, it became known as the *Badger State*.

CALIFORNIA.—A romance was published in Spain, in 1510, in which the word California, applied to an imaginary island, for the first time occurs. Cortes had read the book, it is supposed, and when he sailed along the west coast of Mexico, in 1535, he called the country California. It has been suggested that the root of the word is Arabic, meaning *caliph*. California is known as the *Golden State*, it being the most important gold-producing region in the world.

MINNESOTA.—This name is from two Indian words, signifying *sky-colored water*. Minnesota is the *North Star State*.

OREGON.—"This name," says Trumbull, "comes from an Indian language, with which the traveler Carver had been for many years familiar, and it is the accurate translation into that language of the name by which, as Carver had reason for believing, the 'Great River of the West' was designated by the tribes that lived near it." Owing to a peculiarity of the climate of Oregon—dry months in the summer and early autumn, and excessive rain in the winter—the State, particularly that portion lying west of the Cascade Mountains, has been called the *Web-foot Country*. The inhabitants are called *Web-foots*.

KANSAS.—An Indian word, signifying *smoky water*. The name *Garden of the West* is often given to this State.

WEST VIRGINIA.—West Virginia, because of its grand mountain scenery, is called the *Switzerland of America*. The term is also applied to New Hampshire.

NEVADA.—This State was named from the mountain range on the west of it, called the Sierra Nevada. The two words, *Sierra Nevada*, are Spanish, the former meaning serrated or saw-toothed, the latter, snowy.

NEBRASKA.—The word is of Indian origin, signifying *shallow water*. It was first applied to the Platte River, which runs through the State.

COLORADO.—This word is Spanish, meaning *red or ruddy*. Colorado is called the *Centennial State* (p. 333).

## THE PRESIDENTS AND VICE-PRESIDENTS.

No.	PRESIDENTS.	RESIDENCE.	INAUGURATED.	VICE-PRESIDENTS.
1	George Washington..	Virginia .....	April 30, 1789..	John Adams.
2	John Adams.....	Massachusetts....	March 4, 1797..	Thomas Jefferson.
3	Thomas Jefferson....	Virginia.....	March 4, 1801	Aaron Burr. George Clinton. George Clinton.* Elbridge Gerry.*
4	James Madison .....	Virginia.....	March 4, 1800	
5	James Monroe .....	Virginia.....	March 4, 1817..	
6	John Q. Adams.....	Massachusetts....	March 4, 1825..	Daniel D. Tompkins.
7	Andrew Jackson.....	Tennessee.....	March 4, 1829	John C. Calhoun.
8	Martin Van Buren....	New York.....	March 4, 1837..	John C. Calhoun.†
9	William H. Harrison *	Ohio .....	March 4, 1841..	Martin Van Buren.
10	John Tyler.....	Virginia.....	April 6, 1841..	Richard M. Johnson.
11	James K. Polk.....	Tennessee.....	March 4, 1845..	John Tyler.
12	Zachary Taylor* ....	Louisiana .....	March 5, 1849.	George M. Dallas.
13	Millard Fillmore.....	New York.....	July 10, 1850..	Millard Fillmore.
14	Franklin Pierce.....	New Hampshire..	March 4, 1853..	William R. King.*
15	James Buchanan.....	Pennsylvania ....	March 4, 1857..	John C. Breckinridge.
16	Abraham Lincoln* ...	Illinois.....	March 4, 1861	Hannibal Hamlin. Andrew Johnson.
17	Andrew Johnson.....	Tennessee.....	April 15, 1865.	
18	Ulysses S. Grant.....	Illinois.....	March 4, 1869	Schuyler Colfax. Henry Wilson.*
19	Rutherford B. Hayes.	Ohio .....	March 5, 1877..	
20	James A. Garfield*...	Ohio .....	March 4, 1881..	William A. Wheeler.
21	Chester A. Arthur....	New York.....	Sept. 20, 1881..	Chester A. Arthur.
22	Grover Cleveland.....	New York.....	March 4, 1885..	Thomas A. Hendricks.*
23	Benjamin Harrison...	Indiana.....	March 4, 1889..	Levi P. Morton.
24	Grover Cleveland.....	New York.....	March 4, 1893..	Adlai E. Stevenson.
25	William McKinley....	Ohio .....	March 4, 1897..	Garret A. Hobart.
26				
27				

\* Died in office.

† Resigned.

## THE PRESIDENTS.

NAMES.	WHEN AND WHERE BORN.	WHEN AND WHERE DIED.	SOBRIQUETS.
Washington.	1732, Virginia.....	1799, Virginia. ....	Father of his Country. <sup>1</sup>
John Adams.	1735, Massachusetts...	1826, Massachusetts...	Colossus of Debate. <sup>2</sup>
Jefferson ....	1743, Virginia .....	1826, Virginia.....	Sage of Monticello. <sup>3</sup>
Madison ....	1751, Virginia.. .....	1836, Virginia.....	Father of the Constitution. <sup>4</sup>
Monroe .....	1758, Virginia .....	1831, New York City..	
J. Q. Adams	1767, Massachusetts...	1848, Washington City.	Old Man Eloquent. <sup>5</sup>
Jackson .....	1767, North Carolina..	1845, Tennessee.....	Old Hickory. <sup>6</sup>
Van Buren..	1782, New York.....	1862, New York.....	Sage of Kinderhook. <sup>7</sup>
Harrison ....	1773, Virginia .....	1841, Washington City.	Hero of Tippecanoe. <sup>8</sup>
Tyler.....	1790, Virginia .....	1862, Virginia.....	1st Accidental Pres. <sup>9</sup>
Polk .....	1795, North Carolina..	1849, Tennessee.....	Young Hickory. <sup>10</sup>
Taylor .....	1784, Virginia .....	1850, Washington City.	Old Rough and Ready. <sup>11</sup>
Fillmore ....	1800, New York.....	1874, New York.....	2d Accidental Pres't. <sup>12</sup>
Pierce.....	1804, New Hampshire.	1869, New Hampshire.	
Buchanan...	1791, Pennsylvania....	1868, Pennsylvania ....	Bachelor President. <sup>13</sup>
Lincoln.....	1809, Kentucky.....	1865, Washington City.	Honest Old Abe. <sup>14</sup>
Johnson ....	1808, North Carolina..	1875, Tennessee.....	3d Accidental Pres't. <sup>15</sup>
Grant .....	1822, Ohio.....	1885, New York.....	Unconditional Surrender. <sup>16</sup>
Hayes .....	1822, Ohio.....	1893, Ohio.....	
Garfield .....	1831, Ohio.....	1881, New Jersey.....	Teacher President. <sup>17</sup>
Arthur .....	1830, Vermont .....	1886, New York City..	4th Accidental Pres't. <sup>18</sup>
Cleveland...	1837, New Jersey.....		
B. Harrison.	1833, Ohio.....		Hoosier President.
McKinley...	1843, Ohio.....		

1. See the History, p. 228.—2. Hist., p. 162.—3. Hist., p. 240.—4. Hist., p. 206.—5. After his presidential term he was a member of Congress, where his eloquence in favor of the "right of petition" gained him the title. For a long time Congress refused to have read petitions for the abolition of slavery.—6. So called by the soldiers under his command in the second war with England. At first they said that he was as "tough as hickory."—7. He was born and he died at Kinderhook, N. Y.—8. Hist., p. 242.—9. Hist., p. 273.—10. It was said that he looked and acted like Old Hickory (Jackson).—11. A term of affection applied to him by his soldiers in the Mexican War (p. 282).—12. Hist., p. 283.—13. He never was married.—14. Hist., p. 296.—15. Hist., p. 327.—16. Hist., p. 309.—17. Hist., p. 329.—18. Hist., p. 340.

## ACQUISITION OF TERRITORY.

(See Map 8.)

**Original Territory.**—The territorial limits of the United States at the close of the Revolution extended to the Mississippi on the west and the great lakes on the north, but not to the Gulf of Mexico (p. 200).

**The Louisiana Purchase.**—The first acquisition was a vast domain stretching from the Mississippi to the Rocky Mountains, purchased of France in 1803 (p. 233). All the present States of Louisiana, Missouri, Arkansas, Iowa, Nebraska, Montana, North Dakota and South Dakota, with the greater part of Minnesota and Kansas, and a small portion of Colorado and Wyoming, belonged to it. The part of Minnesota east of the Mississippi belonged to the original territory.

**Florida.**—The second acquisition was Florida. This was made in 1819–21, by purchase from Spain (p. 262).

**Oregon.**—The region west of the Rocky Mountains, north of California, was long known as Oregon. It was claimed by the United States and Great Britain. The claim of the United States had for its basis discovery, exploration, settlement, and a title acquired from Spain (p. 297). In 1846 Great Britain abandoned her pretensions to all south of the 49th parallel (p. 298). This region, from that parallel to California, includes the States of Oregon, Washington, and Idaho.

**Texas, California, etc.**—Texas was acquired by annexation (p. 275), and the immense tract now belonging to the United States between that State and the Pacific, was afterward acquired from Mexico by conquest and purchase (pp. 280, 285). All the present States of California, Nevada, and Utah, and the Territories of New Mexico and Arizona, with such portion of Kansas, Colorado, and Wyoming as was not included in the Louisiana Purchase, belonged to the region acquired by annexation, or by conquest and purchase, from Mexico.

**Alaska.**—This territory, formerly known as Russian America, was purchased of Russia in 1867 (p. 329).

TERRITORY.	ACQUIRED.			Extent in sq. m.	Cost.	Who was President.
	When.	How.	From whom.			
1. Original .....	1783	Conquest...	England	833,744	(See p. 200.)	
2. Louisiana .....	1803	Purchase...	France...	925,269	\$15,000,000	Jefferson.
3. Florida .....	1819	Purchase...	Spain ...	59,268	5,000,000	Monroe.
4. Texas .....	1845	Annexat'n	Texas...	274,356	(See p. 262.)	Tyler, Polk.
5. Oregon .....	{ 1789 1846	Explorat'n occ'p'ncy, etc. ....	{ ..... {	251,562	{ (See p. 297.) }	Washington to Polk.
6. California, Ne- vada, etc. ....	{ 1846 1848	Conquest & purchase.	{ Mexico.	636,760	\$18,000,000	Polk.
7. Gadsden Tract..	1853	Purchase...	Mexico...	45,535	10,000,000	Pierce.
8. Alaska .....	1867	Purchase...	Russia...	577,390	7,200,000	Johnson.

## NOTES.

---

[*The references refer to the pages of the history.*]

1. **The City of Mexico**, when Cortes entered it, in 1519 (p. 30), contained about 60,000 houses and 500,000 inhabitants, and was supplied with pure water by means of "an aqueduct that was carried over hill and valley for several miles on huge buttresses of masonry." One of the houses, a palace of stone, was large enough to hold the entire army of the Spanish conqueror. The most remarkable building was a religious temple, five stories high, coated with hewn stones. Its roof was a large area paved with uniform flat stones. On it were two great towers. The Mexicans were then very skilful in casting metals, engraving, carving, and weaving cotton cloth. They also made beautiful garments of the feathers of birds. From the curious little insect, the cochineal, they procured a rich crimson dye for their cotton fabrics. In their market-place in the city of Mexico, where their fairs were held every fifth day, were displayed bananas, maize, ornaments of gold, carved vases of gold and silver, vessels made of an alloy of tin and copper, knives and scissors of this alloy, sculptured images, utensils of earthenware, cups of painted wood, and many other things. Their traffic was carried on partly by barter and partly by money in the shape of quills filled with gold dust, of bits of tin, and bags of grain. It is not to be supposed that Cortes, with his Spanish soldiers alone, conquered the Aztecs, the ruling Mexican power. He was aided by tribes of Indians who hated the Aztec rule.

2. **Montezuma** (p. 30).—Pretending to be friendly, Cortes, with some of his officers, went to Montezuma's palace and treacherously made a captive of him. The monarch was kept a prisoner seven months till his people, maddened by the wrongs to which they were subjected, rose against the Spaniards. Cortes thought that if the excited people could see their monarch, and hear his words advising them to disperse, the outbreak would be brought to an end. Accordingly, Montezuma was induced to come out of his prison, and from its battlement address his subjects; but his appeal in behalf of the white men maddened them still



more. They threw stones at him, one of which struck him on the head with so much force as to knock him senseless to the floor. He was carried back to his prison apartment, but as he persisted in tearing off the bandages that were applied to his head, and would take neither medicine nor food, he died after lingering a few days (June, 1520).

3. **King Charles** (referred to on page 36) was crowned King of Spain, as Charles I., in 1516, and Emperor of Germany, as Charles V., in 1520. By the latter title he was generally known, even in Spain. On his mother's side, he was the grandson of Isabella (p. 21); on his father's side, of Maximilian, Emperor of Germany. He was the most powerful monarch of his time in Europe, his rule being over Germany, Austria, Spain, the Netherlands, and a boundless empire in America. He boasted that the sun never set on his dominions. Depressed by illness and disappointed in his plans, in 1556 he abdicated the throne of Germany and resigned all his kingdoms, to end his days in a monastery in Spain. There he died in 1558. Before his death he had all the ceremonies of his funeral performed, "he being, during the ceremonies," says Robertson, "in the coffin which had been prepared by his orders for his body after his death."

4. **Florida.**—St. Augustine was captured by Drake in 1586, but he held it only a few days (p. 47). More than a hundred and fifty years later, the Spaniards of Florida being in the habit of giving shelter to runaway slaves from the English colonies, Oglethorpe tried to capture St. Augustine, but its garrison was strong and he was repulsed (p. 105). In 1763 Florida was ceded to Great Britain in exchange for Cuba, which the English had then recently taken. Soon after, the region was divided into East and West Florida, the Appalachian River being the boundary between the two Floridas. A treaty made in 1783 returned the whole of the Florida region to the keeping of Spain, thus restoring to Spain the entire control of the shores of the Gulf of Mexico. By our treaty that year with Great Britain (p. 200), the boundary between Florida and the United States began on the Mississippi River at the 31st degree of latitude, and ran eastward on that line of latitude to the Chat-tahoochee River (maps 4, 5), thence down that river to its junction with the Flint River, thence straight to the head of St. Mary's River and thence down the St. Mary's to the Atlantic Ocean; and this boundary was confirmed by our treaty with Spain two years later. Under the treaty of 1803 (p. 233) the United States claimed the region west of the Perdido River (map, p. 263), also a large part of what is now the State of Texas, but by the treaty of 1819 (p. 262) the claim as regards Texas was abandoned. It has been asserted that Texas was then given up in ex-

change for Florida, but we have seen that the United States paid \$5,000,000 for Florida (p. 261).

**5. Hudson and the Dutch Governors.**—Hudson's explorations of New Netherland (p. 62) were made for the Dutch East India Company. In 1621, another company, the Dutch West India Company, was chartered by Holland, with the exclusive right of trading with the Indians and planting colonies in New Netherland. Peter Minuit, the first Governor of New Netherland appointed by this new company, was in office from 1626 to 1631. It was during his administration that Manhattan Island was bought of the Indians (p. 63), and a large ship carrying thirty guns was built. Being deprived of his office, he went to Sweden, offered his services to the government there, and returned to America as the leader and guide of the Swedes in their movement to begin the colony of New Sweden (p. 63). The rule of Van Twiller, Minuit's successor as Governor of New Netherland, lasted only four years. With him came "Dominie" Bogardus, the first clergyman in the colony. The Dutch called their clergymen "dominies." Bogardus did not like Van Twiller, whom he described as a "child of the devil." The rule of Van Twiller gave to our Washington Irving the opening chapters of his burlesque *History of New York from the Beginning of the World*, a satire that greatly offended the Dutch families of Irving's time. The third governor, William Kieft, waged war for two years against the Indians, during which sixteen hundred red men were killed and many homes of the whites were destroyed. Being removed from office, Kieft sailed for Holland on the ship *Princess*, carrying with him \$160,000, which he had managed to gain by hard bargains. The money never bought for him as much as a pipe of tobacco. On the coast of Wales the *Princess* was dashed to pieces, and Kieft, with "Dominie" Bogardus, and eighty others, was drowned. Stuyvesant succeeded Kieft as governor.

**6. The Boundary Line between New Netherland and Connecticut,** the treaty of 1650 (p. 64) said, should not approach the Hudson River nearer than ten miles. Massachusetts would not agree to this, because her charter extended her domain west to the Pacific Ocean. Connecticut obtaining a royal charter afterward (p. 97), which also extended her limits to the Pacific (1662), repudiated the treaty made in 1650, and claimed not only all the land on the west of the colony as far as the Hudson, but all Long Island as well. Under the grant to the Duke of York (p. 88), Long Island was declared to belong to New York, as was also the entire region as far east as the Connecticut River. So much of the region as now belongs to Connecticut, Massachusetts and Vermont (p. 217) was afterwards given up by New York. When first seen by the Dutch,

Long Island contained thirteen tribes of Indians. Dutch families began to make homes on it, at Brooklyn, as early as 1632. Eight years later a few English families went to the east end of the island (p. 90).

7. *New Hampshire's connection with Massachusetts* (p. 72).—During the greater part of a hundred years New Hampshire was united with Massachusetts. The first union took place in 1642, by the voluntary act of the New Hampshire settlers. This was done because of the vexatious claims put forth by the Rev. John Wheelright and others to New Hampshire lands. The connection continued until 1680, when by act of the king (Charles II.) it was dissolved, and New Hampshire was made a royal province, the first in New England (p. 97). Again and again, for a few years, New Hampshire was annexed to Massachusetts; and, later, though the colony had a legislature of its own, it was under the same governor as Massachusetts, during a period of more than forty years, until 1741. Then a separate governor was appointed over each colony.

8. *Delaware*, as granted to Penn, comprised the "three lower counties on the Delaware," embracing New Castle and twelve miles around it, with "the land to the south as far as the sea (p. 94)." In the difficulty of tracing the circle around New Castle (see map No. 2) was the origin of the work of Mason and Dixon (note, p. 264). For twenty years Delaware was governed as a part of Pennsylvania. Its people becoming dissatisfied with the connection, Penn granted them a legislative assembly of their own, but until the Revolution they were under the same governor as the people of Pennsylvania. (See note 23).

9. *The Tuscaroras*, according to tradition, separated from the tribes of New York at an early period, and went to North Carolina (p. 107). There they became involved in hostilities with the white settlers, and in two battles lost about a thousand warriors. Most of the survivors made their way to New York, and were formally admitted as a sixth nation into the Iroquois league (1715). In the year 1887 four hundred and fifty of their descendants were living on their reservation in the State of New York. The other nations of the Iroquois were the Mohawks, the Oneidas, the Onondagas, the Cayugas, and the Senecas (see map 1).

10. *Battle of Long Island* (p. 164).—Washington had assigned to Greene the task of defending Long Island, and that general constructed a line of intrenchments and redoubts about a mile from what was then the village of Brooklyn. The main works were on a hill. This hill is now known as Fort Greene. It is a part of Brooklyn's Washington Park.\* A few days before the battle (p. 164), Greene became ill of a raging fever, and his place was at first given to Sullivan, and then, after the British had landed on the island, to Putnam. Putnam's rank was

\* In 1896 the name was changed to Fort Greene Park.

second to Washington's. Some writers have thought that if Putnam had fully understood Greene's plan of defence and been familiar with the surrounding country, he would not have been defeated. Bancroft says that "the extent of the disaster was due to the incapacity of Putnam." The battle was a series of terrible skirmishes. Sullivan, after a combat of two hours, was taken prisoner. General Stirling, commonly known as Lord Stirling, commanding two regiments, one from Maryland, the other from Delaware, fought with obstinate bravery, but was compelled to surrender.

11. **Battle of Oriskany** (p. 176).—"The patriots fell back to better ground, and renewed the fight against superior numbers. There was no chance for tactics in this battle of the wilderness. Small parties fought from behind trees or fallen logs; or the white man, born on the banks of the Mohawk, wrestled single-handed with the Seneca warrior, like himself the child of the soil. Herkimer was badly wounded below the knee, but he remained on the ground, giving orders to the end. The battle raged for at least an hour and a half, when the Americans repulsed their assailants. In the opinion of Washington, 'Herkimer first reversed the gloomy scene of the northern campaign.' Before Congress had decided how to manifest their gratitude, the hero of the Mohawk Valley died of his wound."—*Bancroft*.

12. **France and Franklin** (p. 180).—In the summer of 1776, about \$200,000 were contributed from the treasury of France for the patriots in America. Part of this money bought a cargo of powder, which was sent to Boston. Later in the year Congress selected Dr. Franklin, Arthur Lee, and Silas Deane to ask the French king for his alliance and support. Franklin reached France in December. On a house at Passy, then a suburb of Paris, in which he lived nine years, he put up the first lightning-rod in Europe. No other American was ever so popular in France. At an entertainment given to him, "the most beautiful woman of three hundred was selected to place a crown of laurels upon the white head of the American philosopher, and two kisses upon his cheek." Thousands of medallions of him were made, which found ready purchasers. "Some were set in the lids of snuff-boxes, and some were so small as to be worn in rings." The money that Franklin's wonderful influence drew out of the king's treasury for his struggling country reached into millions of dollars. Unfortunately, the money was soon needed by France herself in her war with England, and in her terrible Revolution. That Revolution, indeed, may be regarded as "among the first fruits of the Revolution in America." The struggle of the Americans excited the admiration of the French, and the people of "Sunny France" also de-

sired to be independent of kingly rule. One revolution began (p. 225) six years after the other ended (p. 200).

**13. The National Flag.**—Before it was adopted (p. 180) the colonies in revolt against Great Britain used a variety of flags, on which, generally, were patriotic mottoes. It is not known what flag, if any, was hoisted by the patriots in the Battle of Bunker Hill. The armed vessels of Massachusetts at one time used a "white flag with a green pine tree," and flags like it were for a time carried by national vessels. The first flag used by Washington in the war (p. 158) was like our present flag, except in place of the stars were the crosses of St. George and St. Andrew. Esek Hopkins, commonly known as Admiral Hopkins, before he was appointed to command the American fleet (Dec., 1775), displayed on a ship commanded by him a yellow flag on which was painted a rattlesnake in the attitude of striking, with the motto "Don't tread on me." The national flag adopted in 1777 (p. 181) was, it is supposed, first carried across the Atlantic by Paul Jones (p. 187). In 1795 the flag was made to consist of 15 stripes and 15 stars, to correspond with the number of States (15) then in the Union. In 1818, Congress decided that the flag should have 13 stripes, one for each of the 13 original States, and should also have as many stars as there were States in the Union, a new star being added on the 4th of July next succeeding the admission of each new State.

**14. Greene and Whitney.**—After the surrender of Cornwallis (p. 199), Greene retired to a plantation in Georgia, which the State had presented to him as a mark of gratitude for his services during the war, but he lived to enjoy it less than a year. While walking one hot day in June (1786), he was prostrated by the heat. A few days later he died. His widow becoming acquainted with Eli Whitney, and seeing that the young man was sickly and needed rest, offered him an asylum in her Georgia home (p. 223). There Whitney made toys for the widow's children and an embroidering frame for the widow; and there he invented his cotton-gin. A rude log hut was built for the machine, in which it was placed. Rumors of the great invention quickly spread in every direction, and the leading men of the State hurried to examine it. One dark night the log house was broken open, and the gin was carried away. Without regard to the inventor's rights, the stolen machine served as a model for the construction of thousands of like machines. The wronged man, poor in purse, returned to New England, and directed his attention to the making of improvements in fire-arms. From his factory in Connecticut he sent supplies of guns to the government arsenals and the army, and reaped a fortune for his reward.

**15. New York's claim to Western Lands** rested mainly upon a treaty

made in 1684 between the English and the Iroquois, and upon the money (near \$2,000,000) spent by the colony to enforce the English claim to such lands (p. 218). By the revolt from Great Britain the State succeeded to the rights of the crown within her borders, and naturally to the control of the Iroquois and to the vast territory west of the Alleghany Mountains which the Iroquois had conquered, and over which they held sway. The claim was supported by the unanimous report of a committee of Congress, which declared that the "sole title to the lands in question was in New York (1792)." The claims to western lands put forth by Virginia, Connecticut, and Massachusetts, were based on charters which had been annulled. New charters had been accepted by these three colonies in place of their former charters.

16. *The Ordinance of 1787* (p. 218).—In the year 1786 a number of persons, mostly former soldiers of the Revolution, met in Boston, and formed the Ohio Company. Its object was to plant a colony north of the Ohio—a colony without slavery. Its chief directors were Manasseh Cutler, Rufus Putnam, and Samuel H. Parsons. Cutler was a clergyman. Putnam and Parsons had fought in the French and Indian War and the War of the Revolution, and each was a general. These three men, acting for the company, applied to Congress for the purchase of a tract of land. The application quickened Congress to pass *The Ordinance of 1787*, for the government of the Northwest Territory and to pass it with the clause against slavery (July 13). In October, all the land sold that year, nearly 5,000,000 acres, was sold by act of Congress, 1,500,000 acres being taken by the Ohio Company. Marietta (p. 219) was the first child of the company.

17. *Western Migration* (p. 219).—A noted migration started from the eastern part of Tennessee near the close of 1779. It comprised nearly 400 persons, 200 of whom, all men, under the lead of James Robertson, went by land; the rest, mostly women and children, under the care of John Donelson, spent four months in flat boats and canoes going down the Holston and Tennessee rivers and up the Ohio and Cumberland, a thousand miles, on some waters never before navigated by white men (map 5). With Donelson went his daughter, who (in 1791) became the wife of Andrew Jackson. Thirty-one of Donelson's party were left by the way, butchered by Indians. The two parties united began the settlement of Nashville. Next year 600 immigrants in 300 flatboats, went down the Ohio, and made a settlement to which the Virginia Legislature gave the name "The Town of Louisville at the Falls of the Ohio," in honor of Louis XVI. of France, whose soldiers were then (1780) aiding the Americans to gain their independence. In that same year two block

houses were built on the north side of the Ohio, around which grew the town of Losantiville, the name of which was changed by St. Clair (p. 175) (first governor of the Northwest Territory) to Cincinnati, in honor of the Cincinnati Society (p. 202), of which Washington and his associate officers of the Revolution were members. Chicago, in 1831, contained only 12 families, beside the garrison of its fort, Dearborn.

18. **Troubles with France** (p. 227).—After the French had captured a number of American vessels our government authorized the commanders of our war ships to capture French cruisers wherever they might be found (July, 1798). Privateers were also authorized to prey upon French commerce. During the hostilities, which continued about three years, the United States frigate *Constellation* had two stubborn fights. The first was with one of the finest frigates in the French navy, which the *Constellation* fairly captured. The second fight, a night contest, lasted five hours. The *Constellation* was again victorious, but just in the moment of victory her mainmast fell, and her antagonist, a large and powerful frigate, was thus enabled to escape. When hostilities were ended, it was found that more than fifty well-armed French privateers, besides national ships and merchantmen, had been captured and brought to the United States.

19. **First in War** (p. 228).—On the death of Washington, Henry Lee, a member of the House of Representatives from Virginia, prepared resolutions, which were adopted by the House. As adopted, they read: "First in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his fellow-citizens." They were afterwards changed by Lee (as given on p. 228), in an address delivered by him before Congress. Lee was one of the most active and successful soldiers of the Revolution, ranking with Marion, Sumter, and Pickens (p. 190). Because of his rapid and daring movements as the leader of a partisan corps, he was often called "Legion Lee" and "Light Horse Harry." His *Memoirs of the War* are among the most valuable and interesting records of the Revolution. He was the father of Robert E. Lee (p. 320).

20. **The Lewis and Clarke Expedition** (p. 234) started in 1803, intending to winter at the highest settlement on the Missouri River. At St. Louis, in December, Lewis and Clarke took command of the expedition, but the Spanish governor there would not let it proceed. He said that he had not been officially informed that the territory had been sold to the United States. (Jefferson's message, proposing the expedition, was sent to Congress in January, 1803. The treaty by which France sold the territory was signed in Paris, April 30, 1803.) Lewis and Clarke, with their men, crossed to the east side of the Mississippi (Illinois), whence

they began to ascend the Missouri on the 14th of May, 1804. All that summer they sailed, poled, and dragged their boats up the swift stream. On the 22d of September, 1806, they arrived at St. Louis, having finished their task. They had travelled more than 9,000 miles. Meanwhile Lieutenant Pike explored the sources of the Mississippi. In a second expedition (1806-7), Pike explored the region from the mouth of the Missouri to the upper waters of the Rio Grande.

21. *Old Ironsides* (p. 246), as the frigate *Constitution* was fondly called, was launched at Boston in 1772. For a long time, both before and after the Civil War (p. 300), she was a school ship, attached to the Naval Academy at Annapolis, Md. During the Civil War she continued to be a school ship, but was stationed at Newport, R. I. In 1876 she was anchored in the Delaware River, where she was visited by thousands of persons during the nation's Centennial (p. 332). Two years later she was sent across the Atlantic with contributions from American exhibitors for the World's Fair in Paris. She is now (1889), at the Portsmouth, N. H., Navy Yard, where she is used as a receiving ship, meaning a ship in which the crews of our national vessels live while their own vessels are undergoing repairs.

22. *The Monroe Doctrine* (p. 262).—The United States had kept out of the quarrels of Europe, and meant to continue that policy. In return, the powers of Europe were asked not to interfere with the affairs of the American governments. Mexico and the countries of South America, that had so long been ruled for the sole benefit of Spain's kings and aristocracy, had just succeeded in throwing off the oppressive yoke (p. 274). They were now free, and the powers of Europe were admonished not to attempt to deprive them of their freedom. Any attempt on the part of those powers "to extend their system to any part of this hemisphere would be regarded," so Monroe declared, as "dangerous to our peace and safety," and would therefore be resisted. Existing colonies, or dependencies of foreign powers, would be tolerated, but no new ones would be permitted.

23. *Mason and Dixon* arrived from England in 1763 (p. 264). They had been employed there to go to America and settle the dispute between Lord Baltimore and William Penn respecting the boundary line between the domains of the two proprietors. The two surveyors, Mason and Dixon, protected by an escort of Iroquois, ran the line to the distance of 244 miles from the Delaware River, 36 miles short of the task assigned to them, when they were compelled to stop in consequence of the opposition of the Indians. They had planted a stone at the end of every fifth mile, graven with the arms of the Penn family on one side and of Lord Baltimore on the other. The intermediate miles were marked with



smaller stones, having a P on one side and an M on the other. All the stones were sent from England. Afterwards other surveyors ran the 36 miles left unfinished by Mason and Dixon.

24. **The Abolitionists** (p. 275), with James G. Birney as their candidate for President, for whom they cast 62,300 votes, were known as the Liberty Party (1844). A few hundred Abolitionists, under the lead of Garrison, did not vote. They asserted that the features of the Constitution respecting slavery were compromises (p. 288), that these compromises were immoral, and that in consequence it was sinful to support the Constitution or to hold office or vote under it. They declared that the union of the States was "an agreement with hell and a covenant with death." Wendell Phillips was their most eloquent orator (p. 335). He advocated disunion as the only road to freedom for the slaves. During the Great Civil War he changed his course, and supported the government, believing that the success of the North would be the death of slavery.

25. **The Mormons** (p. 285).—Smith declared that "an angel appeared to him and informed him that God had a work for him to do, and that a record written upon gold plates was deposited in a particular place in the earth." This record, as translated by Smith, is the *Book of Mormon*. It purports to be an addition to the Bible. Smith was born in Vermont (1805). The first church of the Mormons was in Manchester, N. Y. (1830). Their largest church, "The Tabernacle," is in Salt Lake City. It has seating room for 15,000 persons. In Nauvoo, Smith had a "revelation," so he asserted, in favor of polygamy, meaning the doctrine that permits a man to have more than one wife. Afterwards the Mormons avowed, defended, and practiced polygamy; and this brought them in conflict with the general sentiment of the American people and with laws of Congress, and operated against the admission of Utah as a State into the Union. Smith was succeeded by Brigham Young. The present head of the church is Wilford Woodruff (1889).

26. **John Brown**, in Kansas, was accompanied by four of his sons, one of whom and others of his adherents were killed in the strife there (p. 287). Near Ossawatimie, Kansas, though he had less than 20 men with him, he resisted a force of 500 men, inflicting severe loss in killed and wounded, and gaining for himself the sobriquet of "Ossawatimie Brown." At Harper's Ferry he compelled six or eight negroes to join his standard (p. 296). One negro who refused was shot as he was in the act of escaping. Several prominent citizens were killed or wounded by Brown's party in the contest. The song, "Old John Brown," was a favorite of the Union Army during the Civil War. In it occur the words: "John Brown's body lies a-mold'ring in the grave, his soul is marching on."

**27. Northwestern Boundary** (p. 298).—By treaty between the United States and Great Britain in 1818, it was agreed that the 49th parallel of north latitude, from the Lake of the Woods (between Minnesota and Canada) to the Rocky (then called Stony) Mountains, should be the boundary line between the possessions of the two parties. The region west of the mountains being in dispute, the treaty declared that it should be "free and open for ten years to the vessels, citizens, and subjects of the two powers." In 1927 this agreement as to the joint occupation of the disputed territory was renewed, to continue indefinitely with right to terminate it on notice of one year by either party. By the treaty of 1846 the boundary line was continued westward on the 49th parallel "to the middle of the channel which separates the continent from Vancouver Island, and thence southerly through the middle of said channel and of Fuca's Straits, to the Pacific Ocean" (pp. 298, 330). Vancouver Island (about twice as large as Massachusetts), which Spain had surrendered to Great Britain in 1792, was thus left by the treaty in possession of the English (map, p. 330).

**28. The Confederate States of America** (p. 299).—The first meeting of the delegates took place February 4, 1861. They adopted a provisional Constitution (February 8), and elected Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, to be President, and Alexander H. Stephens, of Georgia, to be Vice-President (February 9), before the delegates from Texas arrived. On the 18th, Texas being then represented, the inauguration of Davis took place. Next month (March 11) a permanent Constitution was adopted. Montgomery, Alabama, was then the capital. The change to Richmond was made about four months later. Delegates from thirteen States, including Missouri and Kentucky, were admitted to the Confederate Congress, though the two States named did not pass secession ordinances.

**29. First Events of the Great Civil War** (p. 301).—While Buchanan was President, the seven States that were then the "Confederacy" (p. 299) seized arsenals, custom-houses, navy yards, and forts within their borders,—all this property belonging to the general government,—without any effort being made by Buchanan to prevent the seizures. Only Fort Sumter, Fort Pickens at Pensacola, Florida, and two forts on Florida islands, remained in the hands of the Unionists. In their efforts to get possession of Fort Pickens, the Secessionists were foiled by Lieutenant Slemmer. Twenty-five hundred troops in Texas, about half the military force of the United States, were surrendered by their commander to the State of Texas, without giving them an opportunity to strike a blow (February 18, 1861).

**30. The Dred Scott Decision**, as announced by Chief-Justice Taney, did not meet the approval of two of his associate justices (p. 296). They stated, in substance, that when the Constitution was adopted, colored men had as much right to vote in five of the States as white men. Being then citizens of some of the States, and thus a part of the people of the United States, the colored men were among those by whom, for whom, and for whose posterity the Constitution was ordained and established (Appendix, p. 9). At the outbreak of the Revolution, of the three persons killed by British soldiers in the Boston Massacre, one was a negro (p. 148). In the Battle of Bunker Hill, no men fought with more daring and courage against the king's troops than nine negroes (p. 155). More than seven hundred negroes, including a number of Virginians, helped Washington to victory at Monmouth (p. 182). A negro pointed Wayne to victory at Stony Point (p. 186). Maryland sent black soldiers into regiments with white soldiers. New York raised two regiments of blacks. A Hessian officer writing of the Americans in 1777, said: "There are no regiments to be seen in which there are not plenty of negroes."

**31. Battle of Shiloh or Pittsburgh Landing** (p. 309).—"With a suddenness we had not learned to guard against, Johnston falls upon our army. The onset is full of fire. It bears our lines back. We have been taken unawares. Grant is, for the moment, absent. Sherman struggles to hold Shiloh Church, but it is wrenched from his grip. Our Prentiss, with his four regiments, is surrounded and captured. Sherman, with McClernand to back him, fights desperately. Johnston is killed. Success has demoralized the Confederate ranks. All is not lost. We have massed a number of heavy guns at the Landing. The advance brigade of Buell's army puts in an appearance. Every fifteen minutes during the night our gun-boats drop a shell within the Confederate lines. The second day dawns. Buell is able to put his fresh and hardy Army of the Ohio in array against the wearied Confederates. An order for a general advance is given. Victory shifts to the Stars and Stripes."

**32. Destructive Fires** (p. 333).—In October, 1871, Chicago was the scene of one of the most destructive conflagrations of modern times; and at about the same time a fire swept over a great part of Michigan and the eastern part of Wisconsin. Hundreds of human beings, and property worth \$200,000,000, were destroyed. Villages and even whole townships were swept bare. In Chicago alone near 18,000 buildings were burned (note 17). A little more than a year later Boston, in the business part of the city, was visited by a conflagration that destroyed about eight hundred buildings, many of which were of granite five or six stories high. The loss was about \$80,000,000.

**33. The Mound Builders** (p. 12).—Mounds in America have been compared with mounds in Europe to show that the peoples who made them were very much alike in their religious views and ceremonies, and in their means of defense against attacks from enemies. From this showing the conclusion has been drawn that the Mound Builders of America, or their ancestors, came from Europe. The remarkable resemblance between the earthwork in Ohio, known as the Serpent Mound, and the Loch Nell Serpent Mound, of Scotland, is regarded as the best evidence for that conclusion. Both are in the form of serpents with curves, and at the open mouth of each is an oval, intended, it is supposed, to represent an egg. The Ohio oval is 120 feet long and 4 feet high. The length of the serpent there is 1,254 feet; its width is 20 feet. It decreases in height from 5 feet at the head to 1 foot at the tail. Nearly 70 acres of land about this mound are laid out as the Serpent Mound Park, and this beautiful resort is protected by the laws of Ohio. There is abundant evidence to prove that serpent worship prevailed among the peoples of the Old World in ages past, and to this day lingers in India and Africa.

**34. The Norsemen in New England.**—According to the sagas, Leif Erikson, commonly called Leif, was the first European who trod on the American continent (p. 17). The sagas further relate that after his return to Greenland, his brother Thorwald went to Vinland, where he was killed in a skirmish with the natives. More than 800 years later a "skeleton in armor," was dug up near Fall River, which, some persons were inclined to believe, was that of Thorwald Erikson. Concerning this skeleton, our poet Longfellow wrote a poem in 1841, beginning with the words :

"Speak! speak! thou fearful guest!"

What is called the "Dighton Writing-Rock Inscription" is cited to prove that the Norsemen were the first Europeans in New England. The rock is washed by the Taunton River. On it are marks, or "strange figures," which Danish writers assert are words and signs, which, as translated by them, declare that "one hundred and fifty-two Norse seafaring men took possession of the land." Other writers assert that these marks were made by the action of the waters.

**35. Date of the Landing of the Pilgrims.**—With the Romans, by direction of Julius Cæsar, began our present arrangement of having three years of 365 days each, followed by one of 366 days. The error in this arrangement consists in giving to the year a length of  $365\frac{1}{4}$  days, which is about 11 minutes too much. In 1582 the error amounted to 10 days. To correct it, in that year Pope Gregory ordered that the 5th of October should be

called the 15th, and that all centurial years not multiples of 400 should not be leap years. Hence 1600 was a leap year. The English were slow to adopt this style of reckoning. Their Parliament did not sanction it before 1752. According to the Julian year (so called from Julius Cæsar), or old style of reckoning, the Pilgrims landed on the 11th of December. When the practice of celebrating that event began in 1769, 11 days, instead of 10, were by mistake added to the recorded date, and this led to the error alluded to on page 69.

**36. Bishop Berkeley's Project** (p. 132).—With a view to the "converting of savage Americans to Christianity," George Berkeley, an Irish prelate, formed a plan for a college to be located on one of the Bermuda Islands, where men would be trained for pastoral work among the colonists and for missionary work among the Indians. With this scheme in his head, and anticipating from it the most happy results, Berkeley wrote his poem "On the Prospect of planting Arts and Learning in America," in which occur the oft-quoted lines :

"Westward the course of empire takes its way ;  
The four first acts already past,  
A fifth shall close the drama with the day ;  
Time's noblest offspring is the last."

In 1728 Berkeley left England to carry out his project, but this, for want of funds, never had any practical beginning. Next year he bought a farm near Newport, R. I. (map, p. 69). After residing there two years he returned to England, and was made a bishop. A large painting representing the thought contained in his poem was placed in our national capitol, and there it is seen by thousands of visitors who every year pass in and out of that beautiful building.

**37. The Livingstons.**—Robert came from England, and, in 1686, obtained from Governor Dongan, of New York, the grant of a large tract of land, which is still known as the Livingston Manor, though most of it long ago passed out of the hands of Robert's descendants (p. 64). His grandson, Philip, was a member of the congress that adopted the Declaration of Independence (Appendix, p. 6). William, a brother of Philip, was Governor of New Jersey, and one of the framers of the Federal Constitution (p. 203). Robert R., a great-grandson of Robert, though a member of the committee that prepared the Declaration of Independence (p. 162), did not have an opportunity to sign it owing to his necessary absence from Philadelphia. He was the first Chancellor of the State of New York, and, while such, had the honor of administering the oath taken by Washington on first assuming the duties of President (p. 214).

(See p. 233.) His brother, Edward, represented the city of New York in Congress, and was afterward its mayor. Removing to Louisiana, Edward prepared a valuable law work, which gave him great celebrity. He represented Louisiana in the lower house of Congress, then in the upper house, and was Secretary of State in Jackson's cabinet. Other members of the Livingston family were in like manner distinguished.

**38. Howe's Letter to Washington.**—Shortly after Admiral Lord Howe's arrival at Staten Island (p. 163), he sent a letter to General Washington, offering in the name of king and parliament to pardon Washington and his soldiers for their "rebellious conduct" if they would at once submit to the authority of King George. The letter was addressed to *George Washington, Esquire*. It being addressed to him as a private man, instead of to him as the commander of the American Army, hence evading to recognize his military rank, and, further, as Washington had no authority from Congress to enter into a correspondence with the king's commissioner, he declined to receive the communication; and Congress, applauding his course, declared that he "acted with dignity becoming his station." Howe's roundabout attempt to communicate with Congress, he not being willing to recognize the political existence of that body, also met with rebuff. The British officers, looking upon the American officers as rebels without valid commissions, would not address them by their military titles. The latter resented this affront. They were only fighting for what they considered their rights. As they had committed no fault they needed no pardon.

**39. Ticonderoga and St. Clair.**—The outlet of Lake George, about four miles long, is at the northern end of the lake (map, p. 174). Over rocks, down this outlet, forever tumble in cascades the sparkling waters that, flowing on, reach Lake Champlain. Near this outlet, and overlooking the latter lake, are the stone-wall ruins of the once famous Ticonderoga, the largest and best of the forts built by the French within the present limits of the United States (p. 107). Its builders called it *Carillon*, meaning a chime of bells, in allusion to the music of the waterfalls near it. It had an eventful history. From it expeditions were sent against the English; under its walls Abercromby's army was repulsed (p. 114); twelve months later, after being besieged, it was abandoned to the English; and sixteen years further along it fell into the hands of Allen's Green Mountain Boys (p. 154). In 1777, Arthur St. Clair (born in Scotland), commanding it, wrote to Schuyler: "Should the enemy attack us, they will go back faster than they came." Five days later, 500 of Burgoyne's men took hold of a long rope, and dragged cannon through the woods to the top of Mt. Defiance. St. Clair looked up, saw the frowning battery, and

in the darkness of night hurried to get away (p. 175). In 1787 he became the President of Congress ; and by that body was elected the first Governor of the Northwest Territory, holding the position till Ohio was taken from the territory (p. 232). An expedition which he commanded against the Miami Indians in 1791 was surprised and cut to pieces (p. 220). In 1818 he died, aged 84 years.

**40. Jefferson and the Constitution.**—When Franklin was about to leave France to end his days in his own country (Appendix, p. 45), Jefferson was appointed to the position which the American philosopher had filled with so much honor and usefulness (1785). France was then on the eve of the great Revolution that was destined to shake all Europe ; and Jefferson was soon in hearty sympathy with the “ French Reformers ” in their aspirations for larger liberty ; and he witnessed the first violent outbreak in that Revolution (p. 225). He returned to America in 1789, more than ever “ adoring,” as he wrote to Monroe, “ its soil, its climate, its equality, liberty, laws, people, and manners.” We observe that he took no part in forming the Constitution (p. 203). While his letters do not show that he was opposed to it, they point to what he considered serious objections in it. He wanted “ to make the States one as to everything connected with foreign nations, and several as to everything purely domestic.” When Washington became President (p. 215), Jefferson was still in France. When he left that country, it was to attend to his private affairs in Virginia, his intention being to go back as soon as possible to watch the progress of the Revolution there. Washington invited him to a seat in his Cabinet, and Madison and others urged him to accept the invitation, but not before March, 1790, did he enter upon the duties of the position (p. 215). Before he became President, he declared that the Constitution did not give to the United States any authority to acquire more territory : later, as we have seen (p. 233), he put that declaration behind him. To him, it may be said, belongs the entire credit of the Louisiana Purchase.

**41. Impressment of American Seamen.**—When our second war with England began (p. 243), 2,500 sailors, claiming to be American citizens, and refusing to fight in the British Navy against their country, were imprisoned in Dartmoor Prison, England. At a later period the number of such prisoners was increased to 5,693. All who were there on the 4th of July, 1813, joined in celebrating, as best they could, their national anniversary. Having procured two American flags, they hung them outside the prison walls ; and, in two columns, they marched up and down the prison yard, singing patriotic songs, whistling patriotic tunes, and cheering the stars and stripes. The keeper of the prison and his armed

guards tried to stop the celebration, but with only partial success. At evening, being taunted for their meanness, the guard fired upon the Americans, wounding two. At another time the prisoners were fired upon, and more than 60 were killed or wounded.

**42. The Fayal Battle in 1814** (p. 256).—This has been pronounced one of the "most extraordinary, brilliant, and bloody battles on the seas." The *Armstrong* was a privateer with only 7 guns and a crew of 90 men. Though Fayal was a port belonging to Portugal, the British, in violation of the rules of warfare pertaining to neutral ports, attacked the American brig, which was at anchor there. Three times the little crew of Americans repulsed their assailants, killing or wounding more than 300. At last, seeing that further resistance would be useless, they reluctantly scuttled their vessel and went ashore. This combat derives its chief importance from its consequences. The British fleet was on its way with troops to aid in the attack on New Orleans (p. 255). The injury done to it by the *Armstrong* required ten days for repairs, and for burying the dead. The detention gave General Jackson time to put the threatened city in a state of defense.

**43. War of Texas for Independence** (p. 274).—After several battles, and the armed forces of Mexico had been driven out of Texas, Santa Anna (p. 277) at the head of a large army entered Texas, bombarded for eleven days the Alamo (*ah'-la-mo*), a strong fortress near San Antonio, carried it by storm, and put to the sword every man of the garrison. Of the fort's inmates (of about 170 persons), only 3—a woman, a child, and a servant—were spared (March 6, 1836). Later in the month a party of Texans, commanded by Colonel Fannin, was overtaken by a force of the enemy, and, after a brave defense, surrendered on promise of being treated as prisoners of war. The promise was cruelly violated. By Santa Anna's orders his prisoners, 357 in number, were fired upon, and less than 30 succeeded in making their escape (Goliad, March 27). The leader in this revolution against Mexico was Samuel Houston (p. 274). With about 800 troops "he turned like a lion upon twice that number of Mexicans, whom he caught in the very act of crossing the San Jacinto. His unconquerable Texans clubbed their muskets (they had no bayonets), and rushed upon the foe. The Mexicans fled in helpless rout (April 21), their commander, Santa Anna, was captured, and Texas was free. The grateful Texans elected General Houston president of the republic which he had thus saved," and on the 22d of October he was inaugurated. The loss of Santa Anna's leg (p. 279) was caused by an injury to it while he was engaged in the defense of Vera Cruz against an attack of the French in 1837. (The San Jacinto flows into an arm of Galveston Bay. Map 8.)



**44. The Telegraph and Prof. Henry.**—When Fremont was on his exploring expeditions (p. 277), the Indians sent intelligence of his progress by means of fires on hills and mountains. The Indians, in early times, had a way of sending information across plains by means of "smoke-signals," these being from fires so regulated or disturbed as to make a great deal of smoke, or to make it at long or short intervals, in accordance with their wishes. The practice is still kept up among certain tribes. The beginning of our present method of sending telegraph messages may be traced to Franklin's success in drawing electricity from the clouds (p. 334). To Prof. Joseph Henry, "whose mission was to work for others, not for himself," is due the credit of first sending signals by electricity through long wires. Thirteen years before Morse's first telegram was sent from Baltimore (p. 281), Henry sent signals through a wire one mile long. Henry was the secretary of the Smithsonian Institution from its organization (in 1846) till his death (in 1878). This institution, having for its object the increase and diffusion of knowledge, was established in Washington, D. C., by act of Congress, to carry into effect the will of James Smithson.

**45. The Finances in the Great Civil War** (p. 338).—"If I were to designate the man whose services, next to Lincoln's, were of the greatest value to the country from March, 1861, to July, 1864, I should unhesitatingly name Salmon P. Chase, the Secretary of the Treasury. When he was appointed secretary the public credit was lower than that of any other great nation. The Government was without credit, the Treasury without money (p. 301). It was by his advice that taxes were imposed and loans were authorized. It was by him that the most important negotiations were accomplished. The people were patient under very burdensome taxes, taxes to which they were entirely unaccustomed, taxes direct and indirect (Appendix, p. 15), taxes upon almost everything that they consumed."—*McCulloch's Men and Measures of Half a Century*.

**46. The Statue of Liberty Enlightening the World** (p. 342) was made in Paris, after a model prepared by M. Bartholdi. It is made of copper plates, the copper shell being supported by a framework of iron. Before its sections were put together in Paris, 26 persons sat down to breakfast in one of them. Forty persons can stand in its head. Its forefinger is 8 feet long. At night the electric light in its torch guides the ships from their ocean voyages into the capacious harbor. Its total cost was nearly \$1,000,000. So much of this sum as paid for the statue, without its pedestal, came in small contributions from the people of France. So much as paid for the massive pedestal came, in like manner, from the people of the United States.

# INDEX.

[For Topical Study and Recitation.]

## A

Ab'er-crom-by, 114.  
Abolitionists, 275, 284.  
A-ca'di-a, 51, 102, 112.  
Adams, John, 151, 162, 200, 214, 225, 266.  
Adams, John Quincy, 260, 265.  
Adams, Samuel, 151, 206.  
Al-a-ba'ma, 262, 299.  
Alabama Claims, 330.  
Alabama, steamer, 307, 322, 330.  
A-las'ka, purchase of, 329.  
Al'ba-ny, 62, 63, 89, 174.  
Al'be-marle Colony, 93.  
Al-giers', war against, 257.  
Allen and Sedition Laws, 229.  
Allen, Ethan, 154, 216.  
Allston, W., 335.  
Amerigo Vespucci (*ah-ma-re'go ves-poot'-chee*), 27.  
Anderson, Major, 299, 301.  
André (*an'drē*), Major, 193, 195, 196.  
An'dros, Sir Edmund, 97.  
An-nap'o-lis, 202.  
Antietam (*an-te'-lam*), battle of, 313.  
Ap-po-mat'tox Court-House, 325.  
Ar-i-zo'na Territory, 287, App. 40.  
Ar-kan'sas, 274, 300.  
Arnold, Benedict, 133, 154, 159, 176, 192, 193, 195, 196.  
Arthur, Chester A., 340, App. 39.  
Articles of Confederation, 180, 202.  
Astor, John Jacob, 234.  
As-to'ri-a, 234.  
Astrolabe, 20, 21.  
At-lan'ta, 320, 321, 323.  
Atlantic Cable, 244.  
Augusta, Ga., 185.

## B

Bacon's Rebellion, 87.  
Bainbridge, Captain, 256.

Bal-bo'a, 31, 106.  
Bal'ti-more City, 180, 254.  
Baltimore, Lord, 81.  
Bancroft, George, 335.  
Bank of the U. S., 216, 268, 287.  
Banks, General, 312, 319.  
Beauregard (*bo're-gard*), Gen., 300, 309.  
Bell, John, 298.  
Bem'is Heights, 179.  
Ben'ning-ton, battle of, 178.  
Berk'eley, Lord, 90.  
Berkeley, Sir William, 87, 88.  
Black Hawk War, 262.  
Blaine, James G., 341.  
Books, 133, 334.  
Boone, Daniel, 219.  
Boston, 74, 148, 149, 159, 166.  
Braddock, General, expedition of, 111.  
Bradford, William, 70.  
Bragg, General, 309, 317.  
Brandywine, battle of, 171.  
Breckinridge, John C., 296.  
Breed's Hill, battle of, 155.  
Brooklyn, 164, 165, 195.  
Brown, General, 247, 252, 256.  
Brown, John, 287, 296.  
Bryant, William C., 47, 191, 335.  
Bu-chan'an, James, 295-300.  
Buell, General D. C., 309.  
Buena Vista (*bwa-nah vees'tah*), battle of 277.  
Bull Run, battles of, 304, 313.  
Bunker Hill, 155.  
Burgoyne, General, 174, 179.  
Burnside, General, 313, 314, 319.  
Burr, Aaron, 135, 230, 235.  
Butler, B. F., General, 310.

## C

Cab'ot, John and Sebastian, 28, 29.  
Cabrillo (*cab-reel'yo*), 33, 44.

- Cal-houn', John C., 266, 268, 270, 271, 275.  
 Cal-i-for'ni-a, 33, 277, 278, 280, 282, 283, 284.  
 Cal'vert, Leonard, 63.  
 Campbell, Colonel, 196, 212.  
 Cambridge, 131, 133, 158.  
 Canada, 39, 117, 159.  
 Canals, 267.  
 Ca-non'i-cus, 70.  
 Cape Cod, di-covery of, 50, 62.  
 Capitals of the U. S., 180, 213, 235.  
 Car'te-ret Colony, 98.  
 Carteret, Sir George, 90.  
 Cartier (*car-te-d'*), 39.  
 Carver, John, 68, 70.  
 Cedar Mountain, battle of, 313.  
 Census of the U. S., 269, 333.  
 Centennial Anniversary, 332.  
 Cerro Gordo (*aér-ro gor'do*), battle of, 279.  
 Chad's Ford, battle of, 171.  
 Chambersburg, burning of, 322.  
 Champlain (*sham-plane'*), 39, 60, 108.  
 Champlain, Lake, battle of, 253.  
 Chancellorsville, battle of, 316.  
 Charleston, 93, 180, 189, 301, 325.  
 Charlestown, 156.  
 Charter Oak, 98.  
 Chat-ta-noo'ga, battle of, 317.  
 Chemung (*she-mung'*), battle of, 183.  
 Cherry Valley, massacre at, 183.  
 Chesapeake Bay, exploration of, 52, 55.  
 Chesapeake, frigate, 239, 243, 256.  
 Chicago, 346. App. 48.  
 Chick-a-man'ga, battle of, 317.  
 China, treaty with, 338.  
 Chip'pe-wa, battle of, 252.  
 Christian Commission, 314.  
 Churches, early, 54, 57, 129.  
 Cincinnati, map 4, App. 48.  
 Clarendon Colony, 93.  
 Clark, General G. R., 184.  
 Clay, Henry, 271, 275, 282, 285.  
 Clayborne, William, rebellion of, 63.  
 Cleveland, Grover, 341.  
 Clinton, De Witt, 267.  
 Clinton, Sir Henry, 160, 174, 178, 181, 189.  
 Coddington, William, 80.  
 Colleges, in the Colonies, 132.  
 Colorado, 333.  
 Columbia, S. C., capture of, 324.  
 Columbia College, 132.  
 Columbia R., 231, 234, 298.  
 Columbus, Christopher, 19, 20, 22, 24, 25, 27, 106.  
 Concord, battle of, 152, 153.  
 Confederate States, organization of, 299.  
 Confederation, Articles of, 180.  
 Congress, colonial, 145; first Continental 150; second Continental, 157, 161.  
 Connecticut, 75, 80, 97.  
 Constitution of the U. S., 205.  
 Constitution, frigate, 243, 245, 246, 256.  
 Cooper, Ashley, 92.  
 Cooper, novelist, 334.  
 Corinth, 309, 317.  
 Cornwallis, Lord, 166, 170, 190, 197, 198, 199.  
 Coronado (*ko-ro-nah'do*), 14, 44, 47.  
 Cor'tes, 30, 106, 221.  
 Cotton, 24, 221.  
 Cotton-gin, 223.  
 Cowpens, battle of, 196, 212.  
 Creeks, war with the, 251.  
 Crogan, Major, 247, 265.  
 Crown Point, 175.  
 Custer, General, 333.
- D
- Da Gama, 26.  
 Dakota, North and South, 348, App. 40.  
 Davenport, John, 80.  
 Davis, Jefferson, 300, 327.  
 De Ayllone (*ile'yone*), 120.  
 De-ca'tur, 256, 259.  
 Declaration of Independence, 161.  
 Deerfield, attack on, 102.  
 D'Estaing (*des-lang'*), Count, 185, 186.  
 De Kalb, Baron, 191.  
 Delaware, Lord, 56.  
 Delaware, 63, 94, 126.  
 De Le-on', Pon-ce, 29, 106.  
 De Soto, expedition of, 35, 106.  
 Detroit, 184, 227, 244.  
 Dieskau (*des-ko'*), Baron, 111, 114.  
 Din-wid'die, Robert, 103.  
 Dorr Rebellion, 274.  
 Douglas, Stephen A., 296.  
 Dover, N. H., 72.  
 Draft Riot in New York, 319.  
 Drake, Sir Francis, 33, 47, 49.  
 Dred Scott Decision, 296.  
 Duel between Burr and Hamilton, 235.  
 Dustin, Hannah, 99.
- E
- Early, General, 321, 322.

Eaton, Theophilus, 80.  
 Education in the Colonies, 181.  
 Electro-Magnetic Telegraph, 281.  
 Elliot, John, 132.  
 Elizabethtown (now Elizabeth), 90.  
 Emancipation Proclamation, 315.  
 Embargo, the, 240.  
 Emerson, R. W., 336.  
 Erie, Lake, 249.  
 Eutaw Springs, battle of, 197, 212.

## F

Faneuil (*fan'-el*) Hall, 147.  
 Far-ra-gut, Admiral, 310, 323.  
 Federalists, 205-260.  
 Field, Cyrus W., 281.  
 Fillmore, Millard, President, 283.  
 Fishery Question, 50, 201, 331.  
 Five Forks, battle of, 325.  
 Flag of U. S., adoption of, 180.  
 Flamboro' Head, battle of, 188.  
 Florida, 29, 47, 261, 299, App. 42.  
 Foote, A. H., 308, 310.  
 Fort Amsterdam, 62.  
     Carolus, 46.  
     Donelson, 308.  
     Duquesne (*dukane*), 111, 115.  
     Griswold, 198.  
     Henry, 308.  
     McAllister, 324.  
     McHenry, 255.  
     Meigs, 247, 256.  
     Mims, 251.  
     Moultrie, 160, 299.  
     Necessity, 111.  
     Orange, 63, 89.  
     Oswego, 114.  
     Pillow, 310.  
     Pitt, 115.  
     Schuyler, 176.  
     Sumter, 299, 325.  
     Ticonderoga, 114, 154, 159, 175.  
     Washington, 166.  
     William Henry, 114.  
 France, treaty with, 180; hostilities of, 226.  
 Franklin, Benjamin, 108, 146, 151, 162, 180, 187, 200, 203, 333, App. 6, 45.  
 Fredericksburg, battle of, 314.  
 Free Soil Principles, 281.  
 Fremont, John C., 277, 295, 304, 312.  
 Frenchtown, 247, 256.

French and Indian War, 106.  
 Fugitive Slave Law, 284.  
 Fulton, Robert, 237.

## G

Gadsden Purchase, 286.  
 Gage, General, 149, 151, 154, 159.  
 Gaspee, capture of the, 148.  
 Garfield, James A., 339, 340.  
 Garrison, W. L., 275, 335.  
 Gates, General, 157, 178, 191, 197.  
 Georgia, 91, 103, 104, 106, 299.  
 Germantown, settlement of, 97; battle of, 172.  
 Gettysburg, battle of, 316.  
 Ghent, Treaty of, 257.  
 Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 47.  
 Gold, excitement in Virginia, 55; discovery of, in California, 282.  
 Gor'ges, Ferdinando, 72.  
 Gos'noid, Bartholomew, 50, 53.  
 Grant, Ulysses S., 308, 317, 320, 321, 325, 326, 329-341, 376.  
 Gray, Captain, 221.  
 Great Meadows, battle of, 110.  
 Greeley, Horace, 332.  
 Greene, Nathaniel, Gen., 154, 157, 181, 197.  
 Greenville, 220.  
 Gua-da-lu'pe Hi-dal'go, 280.  
 Guerriere (*gare-e-are*), capture of, 246.  
 Guilford Court-House, battle of, 197, 212.

## H

Hale, Nathan, Captain, 165, 195.  
 Halleck, General, 313.  
 Hamilton, Alexander, 203, 205, 215, 216, 235.  
 Hamilton, Governor, 184.  
 Hancock, John, 142, Appendix 5.  
 Hancock, W. S., General, 339.  
 Harlem Heights, battle of, 166.  
 Harper's Ferry, 296, 303, 313.  
 Harrison, Benjamin, 343, Appendix 39.  
 Harrison, Wm. H., 241, 272, 273, App. 39.  
 Hartford, 75, 244.  
 Harvard College, 131.  
 Haverhill, 99.  
 Hawthorne, Nathaniel, 100, 335.  
 Hayes, Rutherford B., 337.  
 Hayne, Robert Y., 270, 271.  
 Hendricks, Thomas A., Appendix 38.  
 Henry, Patrick, 123, 143, 150, 205.

Her'ki-mer, General, 176.  
 Hessians, 163, 164, 182.  
 Hobkirk's Hill, battle of, 197, 212.  
 Holmes, O. W., 244, 336.  
 Hood, General, 321, 323.  
 Hooker, Joseph E., General, 315, 318.  
 Hooker, Rev. Thomas, 75.  
 Houston (*hu'stun*), Samuel, 274.  
 Howe, Elias, 334.  
 Howe, Sir Wm., 156, 159, 163, 171, 181.  
 Hubbardton, battle of, 175.  
 Hudson, Henry, 60, 62.  
 Hnguenots, 45.  
 Hull, Captain, 245, 256.  
 Hull, General, 244.  
 Hutchinson, Mrs., 80.

## I

Iceland, discovery of, 16.  
 Idaho, 349, Appendix, 33, 40.  
 Illinois, 184, 263.  
 Impres-ment, 239, 243.  
 India, route to, 19, 26.  
 Indiana, 186, 260.  
 Indians, 13, 14, 15.  
 Indian War in Virginia, 87; with the Pequods, 76; with King Philip, 77; in New Netherland, 64; during the French War, 99; with Pontiac, 118; during the Revolution, 183; on the Western Frontier, 220, 262, 333; in the South, 251, 261; in Florida, 261, 262.  
 Inventions, 239.  
 Iowa, 281, App. 33, 37.  
 Iroquois (*bro'-quah*), 14, 107, 108.  
 Irving, Washington, 335.

## J

Jackson, Andrew, 251, 261, 268-271.  
 Jackson, T. J., General, 312, 316.  
 Jamestown, 52-88.  
 Japan, exp. dition to, 287.  
 Jasper, Sergeant, 160.  
 Jay, John, 200, 205, 215, 225, 227.  
 Jefferson, Thomas, 162, 205, 215, 230-266.  
 Johnson, Andrew, 327, 328, 329.  
 Johnston, A. S., General, 309.  
 Johnston, J. E., General, 312, 320, 325, 327.  
 Joliet (*zho-le-d'*), 41.  
 Jones, John Paul, 187.

## K

Kansas, 236, 287, 298.  
 Kansas-Nebraska Bill, 286.  
 Kaskaskia, 184.  
 Kearny (*kar-ne*), General, 277.  
 Kennebec River, 52.  
 Kentucky, 219.  
 Key, Francis S., 255.  
 Kidd, Captain, 91.  
 King George's War, 103.  
 King Philip's War, 77.  
 King William's War, 96.  
 King's College, 132.  
 King's Mountain, battle of, 196, 212.  
 Knox, General, 202, 215.  
 Knoxville, battle of, 319.  
 Kosciusko (*kos-se-us'ko*), Thaddeus, 179.

## L

La Fayette (*lah fa-yet'*), 171, 181, 199, 265.  
 Lancaster, 180.  
 La Salle (*sai*), 42.  
 Lawrence, Captain, 243, 256.  
 Ledyard, Colonel, 193.  
 Lee, Charles, General, 157, 166, 180, 181, 182.  
 Lee, Richard Henry, 151, 161, Appendix 6.  
 Lee, Robert E., General, 312, 314, 316, 320, 325, 326.  
 Leisler (*lice'ler*), Jacob, 99.  
 Lexington, battle of, 152.  
 Leyden, 67, 70.  
 Lewis and Clarke, exploration by, 234.  
 Liberty Bell, 162.  
 Liberty Tree, 145.  
 Lincoln, Abraham, 293-326.  
 Lincoln, General, 186, 199.  
 Livingston, Robert R., 162, 223.  
 Locke, John, 92.  
 London Company, 51.  
 Longfellow, Henry W., 153, 335.  
 Long Island, battle of, 164.  
 Lookout Mountain, battle on, 318.  
 Louisburg, 103, 115.  
 Louisiana, 43, 247, 299.  
 Louisiana Territory, 232.  
 Lowell, J. R., 336.  
 Lundy's Lane, battle of, 252, 256.  
 Lyon, General, 304.

## M

McClellan, Geo. B., General, 308, 311, 313.

McCrea (*kra*), Miss, 175.  
 MacDonough, Commodore, 253.  
 McDowell, General, 304, 412.  
 Macomb (*ma-koom'*), General, 254, 256.  
 Madison, James, 203, 205, 240-260.  
 Magellan (*ma-jel'lan*), 32.  
 Maine, 52, 264, 274.  
 Man-hat'tan Island, purchase of, 63.  
 Marietta, 219.  
 Mariner's Compass, 20.  
 Marion, General, 190, 191.  
 Marquette (*mar-ket'*), 40.  
 Marshall, John, 229.  
 Maryland, 81, 83, 84, 302.  
 Mason and Dixon's Line, 264.  
 Mason and Slidell, seizure of, 306.  
 Mason, John, 72.  
 Massachusetts, 56, 68-103.  
 Mas-sa-soit, 70, 78.  
 Mat-a-mo'ras, taking of, 276.  
 Mather, Cotton, 101, 183.  
 Mayflower, sailing of the, 63.  
 Meade, George G., General, 316, 320.  
 Memphis, taking of, 310.  
 Mercer, General, 170.  
 Merry Mount, 72.  
 Mesilla (*ma-seel'yah*) Valley, 285.  
 Mexico, 30, 274-285.  
 Mexico (city), occupation of, 280.  
 Michigan, 244, 274.  
 Müller, Colonel, 253.  
 Minnesota, 297.  
 Mississipp, 262, 299.  
 Mississippi River, 35, 38, 41, 42, 306, 317.  
 Missouri, 232, 264, 304.  
 Missouri Territory, Appendix 40.  
 Monterey (*mon-ta-rä'*), battle of, 276.  
 Mon-te-zu'ma, 30.  
 Montgomery (city), 300.  
 Montgomery, R., General, 115, 157, 159.  
 Montreal, 159.  
 Morgan, General Daniel, 159, 196, 197.  
 Mormons, 285.  
 Morris, Robert, 166, 169. App. 6.

Morristown, 170.  
 Morse, Professor, 281.  
 Motley, John C., historian, 335.  
 Moultrie, Colonel, 160.  
 Mound Builders, 12, 185.  
 Mount Vernon, 202.  
 Murfreesboro, battle of, 317.

## N

Narvaez (*nar-vah'-eth*), 14, 35.  
 Nashville, battle of, 323.  
 Navigation Act, 126, 141.  
 Nebraska, 329.  
 Nevada, 329.  
 New Albion, 34.  
 New Amsterdam, 62, 89.  
 Newburgh, 201.  
 New England, its name, 56, 65.  
 Newfoundland (*nu'fund-land*), 29, 48, 50.  
 New France, 51, 115.  
 New Hampshire, 72, 154.  
 New Haven, 80.  
 New Jersey, 63, 90, 91, 125.  
 New Jersey, College of, 132.  
 New London, burning of, 198.  
 New Mexico, 14, 277, 284, 287.  
 New Netherland, 62, 88 ; customs in, 129.  
 New Orleans, 247, 255, 310.  
 Newport, 80.  
 Newport, Christopher, Captain, 53, 55.  
 Newspapers, 133, 334.  
 New Sweden, 63, 64.  
 New York, 60, 88, 145, 165, 201, 213, 319.  
 Norfolk, 303.  
 Normans, or Norsemen, 16.  
 North Carolina, 48, 93, 140, 216, 300.  
 Northwest Territory, 218.  
 Nova Scotia, 39, 51, 112.  
 Nueces (*nu'd'seez*) River, 275.  
 Nullification, 271.

## O

Oglethorpe (*o'gl-thorp*), James, 103, 120.  
 Ohio, 232.  
 Ohio Company, 107.  
 O-kee-cho'bee, battle of, 262.  
 Oliver, Andrew, 145.  
 Oregon, 220, 297, Appendix 40.  
 Oregon River, exploration of, 231, 234.  
 O-ris'ka-ny, battle of, 176. App. 45.  
 Os-ce-o'la, 262.  
 Otis, James, 144, 336.

## P

Pacific Ocean, discovery of the, 81, 82.  
 Paine, Thomas, 161.  
 Pakenham (*pak'n-am*), Sir Edward, 255.  
 Palfrey, John G., historian, 18, 335.  
 Palo Alto (*pah'lo ah'l'lo*), battle of, 276.  
 Palos (*pah'los*), 22, 25.  
 Paoli (*pa'-o'-le*), battle of, 172.  
 Paris, treaty of, 117.  
 Parkman, Francis, historian, 335.  
 Pa-troons', 64.  
 Paulding, John, 194.  
 Penn, William, 91, 93, 95, 127.  
 Pennsylvania, 63.  
 Pennsylvania, University of, 132.  
 Pen-sa-co'la, 255, 261.  
 Pequod War, 76, 120.  
 Perry, M. C., expedition to Japan, 287.  
 Perry, Oliver H., Captain, 249.  
 Petersburg, 346.  
 Petroleum, 123.  
 Philadelphia, 96, 127, 150, 157, 161, 172, 180, 181, 225, 332.  
 Philip, war with King, 77, 120.  
 Phillips, Wendell, 335.  
 Pickens, Colonel, 186, 190.  
 Pierce, Franklin, President, 235.  
 Pike, General, 247, 256.  
 Pilgrims, the, 67, 68, 69, 70, 75.  
 Pinckney, Charles C., 238.  
 Pitcairn, Major, 152.  
 Pitt, William, 115, 145.  
 Pittsburgh, 110.  
 Pittsburgh Landing, battle of, 309.  
 Plattsburg, battle of, 253.  
 Plymouth, settlement of, 69; council of, 71.  
 Plymouth Company, 51.  
 Po-ca-hon'tas, 55, 59.  
 Poe, Edgar A., 91 (note), 334.  
 Polk, James K., 275-281.  
 Polo, Marco, 19.  
 Pontiac's War, 118.  
 Pope, General, 310, 313.  
 Porter, Captain, 245, 256.  
 Porter, D. D., Admiral, 319.  
 Port Hudson, 317.  
 Port Royal, 39, 51, 100.  
 Portsmouth, N. H., 72.  
 Pow-ha-tan', 55.  
 Prescott, Colonel, 155.  
 Prescott, W. H., historian, 334.

Prevost, General, 256.  
 Princeton, 132; battle of, 168, 170.  
 Printing, 133, 334.  
 Providence, 79.  
 Pueblo (*pu'd'-blo*) Indians, 14.  
 Pulaski (*pu-las'kee*), 171, 196.  
 Puritans, the, 65, 73, 85.  
 Putnam, Israel, General, 154, 157, 164.

## Q

Quakers, the, 85, 94.  
 Quebec, 39, 115, 117.  
 Queen Anne's War, 102.  
 Queenstown, 245, 256.

## R

Railroads, 266, 281.  
 Raleigh (*raw'le*), Sir Walter, 47, 49, 50, 124.  
 Randolph, Edmund, 205, 215.  
 Randolph, Peyton, 150.  
 Rawdon, Lord, 197, 212.  
 Reconstruction of the Union, 328.  
 Red River Expedition, 319.  
 Resaca de la Palma (*ra'-sak'-kah dā lah pahl'-mah*), battle of, 276.  
 Rhode Island, 79, 216, 274.  
 Ribault, (*re-bo'*), 45.  
 Rice culture, 120.  
 Richmond, 198, 237, 306, 325.  
 Rio Grande (*re'-o grahn'da*), 275, 280.  
 Roanoke Island, 48.  
 Robinson, John, 87, 70.  
 Rochambeau (*ro-sham-bo'*), 199.  
 Rolfe, John, 59.  
 Rosecrans, General, 309, 317.

## S

St. Augustine, 47, 92.  
 St. Clair, General, 175, 220.  
 St. Lawrence River, discovery of, 39.  
 St. Leger (*le'jer*), 174, 176.  
 St. Louis, 232, 304, 317.  
 Salem, 73, 78.  
 Salem Witchcraft, 100.  
 Sam'o-set, 70.  
 Sanders Creek, battle of, 191.  
 San Francisco, 33, 233.  
 Sanitary Commission, 314.  
 San Juan Question (boundary), 330.  
 Santa Anna, 277, 279.  
 Santa Fé, 47, 277.

Saratoga, battle of, 179.  
 Savannah, 104, 185, 324.  
 Saybrook, 75.  
 Sche-nec'ta-dy, massacre at, 99.  
 Schofield, General, 323.  
 Schools, in the Colonies, 181.  
 Schuyler, General, 157, 159, 175, 178.  
 Scott, Winfield, Gen., 252, 271, 277, 285, 304.  
 Sem'i-noles, war with, 261, 262.  
 Semmes (*sems*), Captain, 322.  
 Sew'ard, W. H., 327, 329.  
 Sewing-Machine, 334.  
 Shays, Daniel, rebellion of, 203.  
 Shen-an-do'ah Valley, 321.  
 Sheridan, Philip H., General, 322, 325.  
 Sherman, Roger, 162.  
 Sherman, W. T., General, 318, 320-325.  
 Shiloh, battle of, 309.  
 Simms, W. G., novelist, 325.  
 Slavery, 119, 218, 223, 264, 275, 280, 288, 284, 296, 298, 295, 296, 315, 328.  
 Smith, John, 53, 56, 59, 69.  
 Smith, Joseph, 285.  
 South Carolina, 45, 93, 271, 299, 300.  
 South Mountain, battle of, 318.  
 Stamp Act, 143.  
 Staten Island, 163, 171.  
 Standish, Miles, 70, 72.  
 Stanton, E. M., 321.  
 Stark, General, 154, 178.  
 Star-Spangled Banner, song, 255.  
 State Rights, 230, 271, 299.  
 Statue of Liberty, 342.  
 Steamboats, 237, 266.  
 Steuben, Baron, 182.  
 Stillwater, battles of, 179.  
 Stony Point, capture of, 186.  
 Stowe, Mrs., 335, 336.  
 Stuyvesant (*sti've-sant*), Peter, 64, 88.  
 Sullivan, General, 183.  
 Sumter, General, 190, 212.  
 Sunbury, 185.  
 Swedes, settlement by, 63.

## T

Tallmadge, Major, 195.  
 Tariff Law, 215, 241, 269, 271, 352, 354.  
 Tarleton, Colonel, 197, 212.  
 Tarrytown, 194.  
 Taylor, Zachary, 262, 276, 277, 282, 283.  
 Tea, tax on, 147.

Te-cum'seh, 241, 242, 244, 251.  
 Telegraphs, 281.  
 Telephones, 281.  
 Tennessee, 219, 300.  
 Texas, 43, 274, 275, 299, 329.  
 Thames (*temz*), battle of, 250.  
 Thomas, Geo. H., General, 309, 317, 323.  
 Tilden, Samuel J., 337.  
 Tip-pe-can-oe', battle of, 242.  
 Tobacco, 123, 124.  
 To-ho-pe'ka, battle of, 251.  
 Tories, 160, 178, 183, 201.  
 Travelling, in the colonies, 134.  
 Trenton, battle of, 167, 214.  
 Trip'-o-ll, war against, 257.  
 Tunis, war against, 257.  
 Tyler, John, 273, 274, 275.

## U

Useful Inventions, 239.  
 Utah, 284, 354, App. 40, 50.

## V

Valley Forge, 172.  
 Van Bu'ren, Martin, 271, 272.  
 Van Wart, Isaac, 194.  
 Vera Cruz (*krooz*), taking of, 278, 279.  
 Vermont, 154, 175, 178, 216.  
 Verrazzani (*ver-rat-tsah'ne*), voyage of, 61.  
 Vicksburg, 317.  
 Vincennes, 185.  
 Vinland, 17.  
 Virginia, 33, 48, 52, 56, 71, 87, 300.  
 Virginia and Monitor, battle between, 311.

## W

Wampum, 124.  
 Ward, General, 154, 157.  
 Warner, Seth, 178, 216.  
 Warren, General, 157.  
 Washington, George, first public employment, 108, 110, 111, 112, 151; Commander-in-Chief, 157; at Boston, 159; at Long Island, 164; at Trenton, 168; at Princeton, 170; at Brandywine, 171; at Germantown, 172; at Monmouth, 181; at Yorktown, 199; after the war, 201; in Constitutional Convention, 208; President, 211-225; death of, 228.  
 Washington (city), 230, 254.  
 Washington (State), 348, Appendix 40.  
 Wayne, General, 172, 181, 186, 220.



Webster, Daniel, 265, 271, 273.  
Wesley, John and Charles, 105.  
West Point, 193.  
West Virginia, 308.  
Wethersfield, settlement of, 75.  
Whipple, E. P., 336.  
Whisky Insurrection, 225.  
White, John, 49.  
White Plains, battle of, 166.  
Whitefield (*kwit'-feeld*), George, 105.  
Whitney, Eli, 223.  
Whittier, John G., 335, 350.  
Wilderness, battle of the, 321.  
Wilkes, Captain, 306.  
Williamsburg, battle of, 312.  
William and Mary College, 132.  
Williams, David, 194.

Williams, Roger, 76, 78.  
Wilmington, Del., 63, 127.  
Willmot Proviso, 280.  
Winchester, battle of, 322.  
Windsor, 75.  
Winslow, Captain, 322.  
Winthrop (2), John, 73, 75.  
Wisconsin, 281.  
Witchcraft, Salem, 100.  
Wolfe, General, 115.  
Wy-o'ming, massacre at, 183.  
Wyoming, 349, Appendix, 33, 40.

## Y.

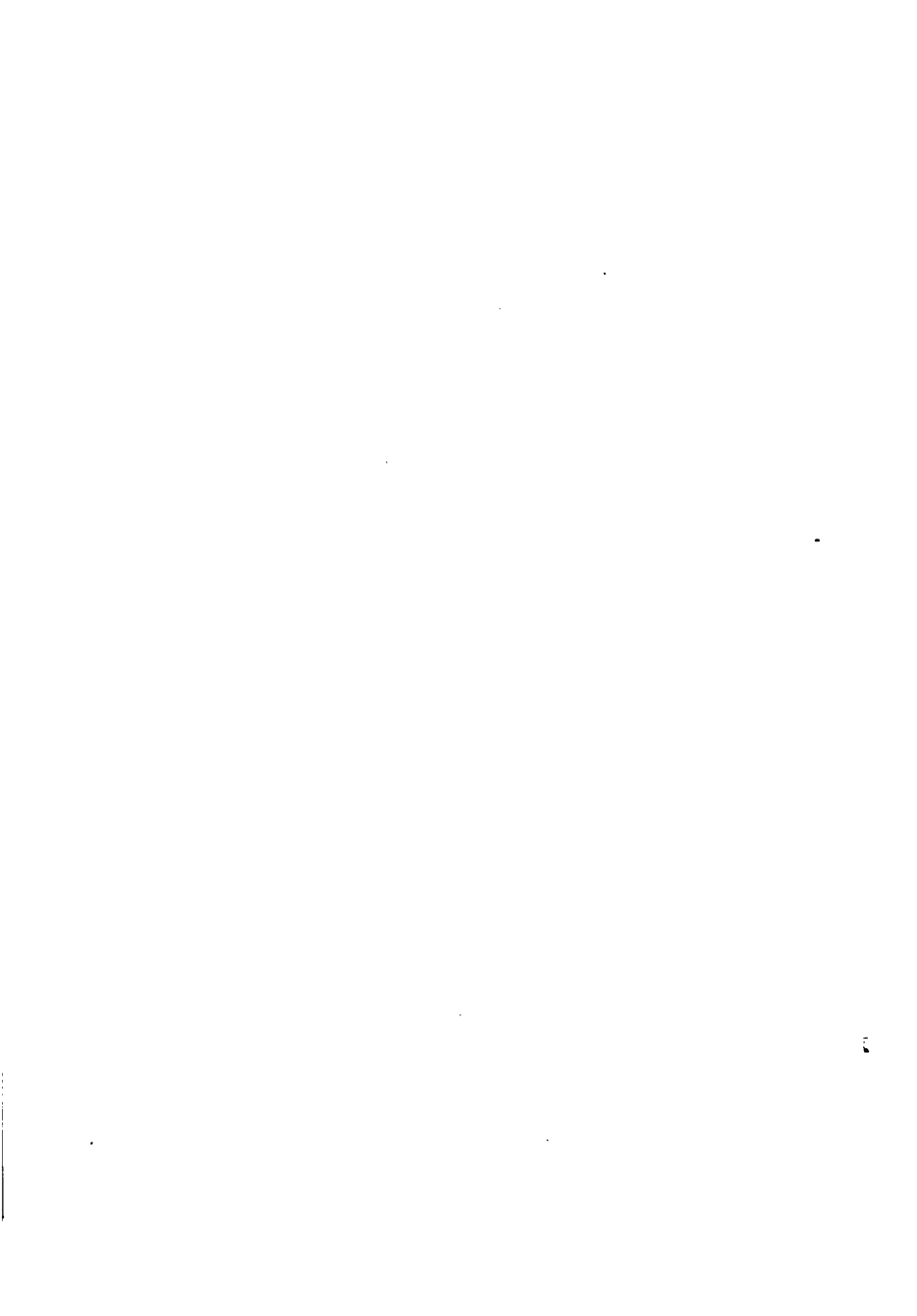
Yale College, 132, 165.  
York, 180, 247, 256.  
Yorktown, 199, 312, 346.

Press of WALBRIDGE & COMPANY  
17-27 Vandewater Street,  
New York.











To avoid fine, this book should be returned on  
or before the date last stamped below

10M-6.40

DEC 0 2 1997

[illegible]

IX  
973.1  
A547a

~~TX 3.1~~

[illegible]

LIBRARY. SCHOOL OF EDUCATION. STANFORD.

610046

**610046**



